# **Intermediate Persian**

A Grammar and Workbook

## Saeed Yousef

assisted by Hayedeh Torabi



# INTERMEDIATE PERSIAN: A GRAMMAR AND WORKBOOK

Intermediate Persian: A Grammar and Workbook comprises an accessible grammar and related exercises in a single volume. Each of the fourteen units deals with a particular grammatical point and provides associated exercises to help learners reinforce and consolidate their knowledge. There are additionally four appendices covering colloquial, polite, literary and journalistic styles.

#### Features include:

- a clear, accessible format
- many useful language examples
- clear, jargon-free explanations of grammar
- abundant exercises with full answer key
- units covering different levels of language
- a glossary of Persian-English terms that includes all Persian simple verbs and their roots
- a subject index

*Intermediate Persian* reviews many of the principal elements presented in its sister volume, *Basic Persian*, and introduces more advanced features and structures of the language. The two books form a compendium of the essentials of Persian grammar.

User-friendly and engaging, *Intermediate Persian* is suitable for both class use and independent study, making it an ideal grammar reference and practice resource for students and learners with some knowledge of the language.

**Saeed Yousef** is Senior Lecturer of Persian at the University of Chicago, USA. He is also a poet and has published books of literary criticism and translations.

**Hayedeh Torabi** was a Lecturer of Persian at the University of Chicago, USA. She is a published writer, essayist and translator.

#### Other titles available in the Grammar Workbooks series are:

Basic Cantonese Intermediate Cantonese

Basic Chinese Intermediate Chinese

Basic German Intermediate German

Basic Irish Intermediate Irish

Basic Italian

Basic Japanese Intermediate Japanese

Basic Korean Intermediate Korean

Basic Persian

Basic Polish Intermediate Polish

Basic Russian Intermediate Russian

Basic Spanish Intermediate Spanish

Basic Welsh Intermediate Welsh

Basic Yiddish

# INTERMEDIATE PERSIAN: A GRAMMAR AND WORKBOOK

Saeed Yousef Assisted by Hayedeh Torabi



First published 2014 by Routledge

Published 2015 by Routledge

2 Park Square, Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon OX14 4RN

Simultaneously published in the USA and Canada by Routledge

711 Third Avenue, New York, NY 10017 USA

Routledge is an imprint of the Taylor & Francis Group, an informa business

© 2014 Saeed Yousef and Havedeh Torabi

The right of Saeed Yousef and Hayedeh Torabi to be identified as authors of this work has been asserted by them in accordance with sections 77 and 78 of the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced or utilised in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publishers.

Trademark notice: Product or corporate names may be trademarks or registered trademarks, and are used only for identification and explanation without intent to infringe.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data

A catalog record for this book has been requested

ISBN: 978-0-415-61653-9 (hbk)

ISBN: 978-0-415-61655-3 (pbk)

ISBN: 978-0-203-75946-2 (ebk)

Typeset in Times Ten and B Lotus by Graphicraft Limited, Hong Kong

# **CONTENTS**

	Introduction	vii
1	Indirect speech	1
2	'Self': emphatic, reflexive and possessive usages of <i>khod</i> Objective pronouns	14
3	Definite and indefinite, singular and plural: review and expansion Vocative case	24
4	Persian equivalents of English modal verbs More on subjunctive	37
5	More on conditionals  If, unless; otherwise, as if	53
6	Causative form Optative mood Past participle as verb Deleting a similar verb Regulars on the march!	61
7	Impersonal forms	69
8	Position of verbs in the sentence Verbs of state Putting on and taking off clothes To want, to be able to, to know	77
9	More on compound verbs Ways to avoid passive	86
10	Nouns and adjectives made from verbs Some prefixes and suffixes	92

#### Contents

11	Exclamative for More on adject Comparison of Ezāfe	ctives/adverbs	109
12	Correlative co More on subo A review of tā	rdinate clauses	126
13	How to use <i>di faghat/tanhā</i>	gar, hanuz, ham,	141
14	Remember/for Arrange, chan Meaning and	ge, difference	151
	Appendix I	Language of politeness and courtesy	164
	Appendix II	Colloquial Persian/Tehrani	169
	Appendix III	Literary, poetical, archaic	178
	Appendix IV	Good, bad and ugly Persian Common mistakes	183
	Key to exercis	es	188
	Persian-Englis	sh glossary (including all Persian simple verbs)	220
	Index		278

## INTRODUCTION

This book is the follow-up to Basic Persian. While introducing some new categories and structures that have not been covered in the Basic volume, it expands on those already covered by giving new details and showing the usage nuances. The focus is standard modern Persian of Iran, although millions more use and understand Persian in different countries of Central Asia and beyond. With its abundant examples and exercises, *Intermediate* Persian is designed to assist learners of Persian at an intermediate or advanced level. Many of the subtleties and nuances of the language are being treated for the first time, especially having learners who are English speakers in mind. The book can be used independently (with answer keys supplied), but instructors of the language will also find it an indispensable complementary book for practicing grammar while using other texts for reading. Students can be asked to turn to this book (as well as to Basic Persian) as a source of reference and practice for each new grammatical subject, and each exercise is capable of being used in different ways to make it still more challenging. For instance, the students can be asked to translate the sentences back into the other language, change the tenses, and so on.

Units 1 to 14 are designed to bring the learners to a level beyond which only more work on vocabulary building and idioms will be necessary. The four appendices deal with different styles and levels of language (colloquial, polite, literary – and even 'journalistic' Persian). And throughout the book, whenever students need to be reminded of some basic rules (like tenses, etc.), they can always refer to the *Basic* volume. References to *Basic Persian* are given in the style '(see I/13.3)'. The glossary includes all the words used in the two volumes, but it has a bonus feature also: it includes all the Persian simple verbs (printed bold to be found more easily), whether used in the book or not.

As in the previous volume, in translations from Persian into English you might find *he* or *she* at random (when the antecedent is not specified), since there is no gender in Persian.

Introduction

## **Transcription:**

#### Vowels:

а	as a in banner	ā	as a in bar
e	as e in belly	i	as i in machine
0	as o in border	и	as u in Lucy

## Diphthongs:

ow as ow in bowl	ey as ey in prey	
------------------	------------------	--

#### Consonants:

b	as b in boy	m	as m in mouse
ch	as ch in chair	n	as n in nose
d	as d in day	p	as p in pen
f	as f in fine	r	like r in Italian Roma
g	as g in goose	S	as s in sun
gh	like r in French Paris	sh	as sh in shy
h	as h in horse	t	as t in toy
j	as j in joy	$\nu$	as v in vase
k	as k in key	y	as y in yes
kh	like ch in German Achtung!	Z	as z in zoo
l	as <i>l</i> in <i>lamb</i>	zh	like <i>j</i> in French <i>jour</i>

Note: The glottal stop will be shown by an apostrophe (but is left out when in initial position).

## Abbreviations (used mainly in the glossary):

adj. (adjective)	<i>intr</i> . (intransitive)	prep. (preposition)
adv. (adverb)	lit. (literary; literal)	pres. (present)
col. (colloquial)	masc. (masculine)	sg. (singular)
conj. (conjunction)	n. (noun)	so. (someone)
fem. (feminine)	neg. (negative)	sth. (something)
form. (formal)	perf. (perfect)	subj. (subjunctive)
gr. (grammar)	pl. (plural)	temp. (temporal)
imp. (imperative)	poet. (poetical)	tr. (transitive)
interj. (interjection)	pr. (pronoun)	wrt. (written)

# UNIT ONE | ۱ فصل انقلِ قولِ غيرِ مستقيم المالة

## Indirect (or reported) speech

Indirect (or reported) speech in Persian has a golden rule that you should always remember: it is not how the sentence starts (i.e., the tense of the 'reporting verb') that determines what tense you should use – it is rather the tense of the verb in the *original* sentence, as you think it was *originally* said.

After the reporting verb you need 45 ('that'), which, as in English, can be dropped.

Similar to English, though not as strictly observed, there can be changes in adverbs – like the change from انجا ('there') to انجا ('there'), and the like.

## 1.1 Reporting present tense statements

When reporting some statement that was originally in the present tense, don't change the tense at all, even if the sentence starts with a past verb like 'she *said*....' What needs to be changed is the *person* (if you are not citing yourself) and, if necessary, some adverbs of time and place, and occasionally verbs like 'come/bring' to 'go/take.'

Examples:

Direct speech:

Reported speech (when cited by me):

## 1.2 Reporting past tense statements

When reporting statements that originally used the past tense, not a *backshift* of tenses (as in English), but a *change* of tenses would be necessary – and this again regardless of the tense of the reporting verb that starts the sentence. Persian has some straightforward and easy rules here; some of the tenses used have been developed specifically for this function and are used in indirect speech only.

## 1.2.1 Narrative or reporting tenses

The present perfect tense has traditionally been called ماضي نقلى ('narrative past') in Persian (see I/13.3), a fact that shows how closely this tense is related to reported or indirect speech. Apart from this tense and its progressive form, which are used independently also as tenses, there are one or two tenses used exclusively in reported speech: these are the narrative forms of past perfect (and past perfect progressive – a tense scarcely used), in which the past participle of the main verb is followed by the present perfect tense of the verb بودن (the auxiliary used to form perfect tenses). In Table 1.1 you see the tenses to be used in indirect speech when the original verb (in 'direct speech') is in one of the past tenses:

Table 1.1: Reporting a past statement

Direct Speech	$\rightarrow$	Indirect Speech
SIMPLE PAST  (ماضی ساده) گذشتهٔ ساده (ماضی ساده) مینا: 'به آنجا رفتم.' Mina: 'I went there.'	$\rightarrow$	PRESENT PERFECT (= 'NARRATIVE PAST') حال کامل (گذشته یا ماضی نقلی) مینا می گوید/گفت (که) به آنجا رفته (است) Mina says/said (that) she had gone there. (In Persian: 'has gone'!)
PAST PROGRESSIVE  (ماضی استمراری)  مینا: 'به آنجا میرفتم.'  Mina: 'I was going/used to go there.'  مینا: 'داشتم به آنجا میرفتم.'  Mina: 'I was going there.'	$\rightarrow$	PRESENT PERFECT PROGRESSIVE  حال کامل استمراری (گذشته یا ماضی  نقلی استمراری)  مینا می گوید/گفت (که) به آنجا می رفته (است)  Mina says/said (that) she had been going there.  مینا می گوید/گفت (که) داشته (است) به آنجا می رفته (است)  Mina says/said (that) she had been going there.  Mina says/said (that) she had been going there.  Mina says/said (that) she had been going there.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> As you see here, داشتم, though part of the progressive structure, has been regarded as 'simple past' (for lack of رماشته است) and the tense has changed to present perfect (داشته است).

**Table 1.1** (*cont'd*)

Direct Speech	$\rightarrow$	Indirect Speech
PAST PERFECT  گذشتهٔ کامل (ماضی بعید) مینا: 'به آنجا رفته بودم.'  Mina: 'I had gone there.'	$\rightarrow$	NARRATIVE PAST PERFECT  (ماضی بعید نقلی)  مینا می گوید/گفت (که) به آنجا رفته بوده است  Mina says/said (that) she had gone there.  (This tense is used in indirect speech only.)
PAST PERFECT PROGRESSIVE  گذشتهٔ کامل استمراری (ماضی بعید استمراری) مینا: 'می توانسته بودم با کس دیگری ازدواج کنم.' Mina: 'I could have married someone else.'  (Not a very common tense; usually past progressive is used instead.)	$\rightarrow$	NARRATIVE PAST PERFECT PROGRESSIVE  گذشتهٔ کامل نقلی استمراری  (ماضی بعید نقلی استمراری)  مینا می گوید/گفت (که) می توانسته بوده  راست) با کس دیگری ازدواج کند  (است) با کس دیگری ازدواج کند  Mina says/said (that) she could have married someone else.  (A tense possible in indirect speech only.)

And here again a table of all tenses, present and past, with short examples of reported speech:

Table 1.2: Reported speech in different tenses (+ subjunctive)

PRESENT	PAST	FUTURE	SUBJUNCTIVE			
	Simple					
'میبینی'	'دیدی'	'خواهي ديد'	'شاید ببینی'			
گفت میبینی	گفت دیدهای	گفت خواهی دید	گفت شاید ببینی			
	Progre	essive				
'[داری] میبینی'	'می دیدی'					
گفت [داری] میبینی	گفت میدیدهای					
	Perf	ect				
'دیدهای'	'دیده بودی'		'شاید دیده باشی'			
گفت دیدهای	گفت دیده بودهای		گفت شاید دیده باشی			
Perfect progressive						
'می دیدهای	(not common!)					
گفت میدیدهای	'می دیده بودی'					
	گفت میدیده بودهای					

1

Indirect speech Two observations here:

- All the tense changes occur in the past column; absolutely no change of tense in other columns.
- 2) The *present perfect tense* and *present perfect progressive tense* are seen here on both the *present* column (as independent tenses; no change in reported speech because *present*) and on the *past* column as the reported forms of respectively *past tense* and *past progressive tense*.

## 1.3 An understandable exception

Sometimes Persian uses the past tense in subordinate clauses (mainly *time clauses* and conditional *if clauses*) in a present sense. (See *Basic Persian*, Units 16 and 18.) Example:

Here اَمد ('came') is not really functioning as the *past* tense but rather is the same as the present subjunctive بيايد, and for this same reason is treated as such: in indirect speech, the tense does not need to change to the *narrative past*, and you only change the person:

The same thing happens with past progressive or past perfect tenses when used in *conditional* (کاش) sentences. (See examples under 1.10 below.)

#### 1.4 Questions

سؤال کردن and پرسیدن (both meaning 'to ask') or simply verbs like گفتن ('to say'/'tell') and the like.

Be careful when translating 'if' in indirect questions: the word  $\Im$  (agar) in Persian is used only in the sense of conditional if and not for indirect questions. For if (= whether) in indirect questions use the word  $\Im$  ( $\bar{a}y\bar{a}$ ), the universal word that can introduce all questions (less common, though, when a question word is present).

The word & ('that') can still be used in indirect questions after the reporting verb, as in indirect statements, with or without b, or can be dropped. Therefore, you might have & or lb or (less commonly) both – or neither of them.

Examples:

Imperative and subjunctive, conditionals and wishes

# 1.5 Imperative and subjunctive, conditionals and wishes

- The *imperative* is only possible in *direct speech*; in reported speech it has to change to the subjunctive.
- The *subjunctive* has no tense to change (remember: like the *infinitive* in English); it remains unchanged.
- No change of tense required for conditionals and wishes.

Of course, other necessary changes (person, time adverb) have to be made. The reporting verb can be گفتن or verbs like (از کسی) ('to ask [so. to do sth.]'), خواهش کردن (khāhesh kardan, 'to request'), دستور دادن (dastur dādan, 'to order'), and the like.

You will see in the following examples that the tense of the reporting verb plays no role:

```
'(به من): 'روى اين كاغذ ننويس!' (Mina [to me]: 'Don't write on this paper!')
```

مینا به من گفت/مینا از من خواست (که) روی آن کاغذ ننویسم. 
$$\leftarrow$$

مینا از معلم خواست/مینا از معلم خواهش کرد (که) تکرار کند. 
$$\leftarrow$$

'.نمی توانی امشب به اینجا بیائی.' (Mina [to Bābak]: 'You can come here tonight.')

مینا به بابک گفت که می تواند آن شب به آنجا برود. 
$$\leftarrow$$

(Mina [to her مینا (به پدرش): 'کاش این را زودتر به من گفته بودی!' (Mina [to her father]: 'I wish you had told me this sooner.')

مینا به پدرش گفت کاش این را زودتر به او گفته بود. 
$$\leftarrow$$

1 Indirect speech

# 1.6 Statements understood and treated as reported speech

Many verbs that deal with knowing, perceiving, realizing, assuming, claiming, and so on, are understood as verbs that introduce some reported speech and are treated as such; the above rules apply to all of them.

Consider a sentence like: 'When the car drew near, I noticed that there were four people inside.' Persian does not care about the verb *noticed* (past tense) and wants to know what passed your mind at the time of perception. At that time, you certainly said to yourself: 'There are four people inside the car.' Since that verb was originally in the present tense, Persian does not change it:

Other examples:

## 1.7 Implied reported speech

The 'narrative' tenses used in indirect speech are sometimes used in Persian merely for a distanced narration of a story ('as it is said ...,' 'as far as we know ...'), or to show that you are not entirely certain about some past event. What you say then, using the narrative form, could carry a neutral to slightly 'disclaimerish' meaning:

- by saying 'مینا دیروز آمد' you are simply stating a fact;
- by saying 'مینا دیروز آمده است' you are saying the same thing with some distance, like something you just heard.

## 1.8 Subject: keep it or drop it?

If the subject of the reporting verb (the person who *says*) is the same as the subject of the sentence that immediately follows, the second one is usually dropped – especially in the third person. Keeping it would usually imply a change of subject (from one third person to another). Compare:

مینا گفت نخواهد آمد. 'Mina said she wouldn't come.' Here 'she' is usually understood as Mina herself.)

is ساد نخواهد آمد. ('Mina said he/she wouldn't come.' Here او is more likely to be understood as not Mina, but someone else.)

Some examples of longer sentences with multiple verbs, or reporting reported speech

# 1.9 How to translate certain tenses used in indirect speech

Consider this sentence in English: *Pari said that she had written the letter*. Based on the above sentence, Pari originally could have said:

- a) I wrote the letter, or
- b) I have written the letter, or
- c) I had written the letter.

And based on what we learned earlier, the Persian translation for both (a) and (b) would be:

and for (c) it would be:

Or consider this sentence: We listened to his story, but we knew that he was lying. You must have been saying to yourselves at the time: 'He is lying!' So the Persian translation should use a present tense:

# 1.10 Some examples of longer sentences with multiple verbs, or reporting reported speech

Only the translation for the sentence in direct speech will be given here.

- (Akbar: 'Nāser said he اكبر: 'ناصر مى گفت شما را اصلاً نمى شناسد.' doesn't know you at all.')
- اکبر گفت ناصر می گفته است مرا اصلاً نمی شناسد.  $\leftarrow$
- پرویز: 'به من گفتند کتابی را که دیروز گم کرده بودم پیدا کردهاند.' (Parviz: 'They told me that they had found the book that I had lost yesterday.')
- پرویز گفت به او گفتهاند کتابی را که دیروز گم کرده بوده است پیدا کردهاند. →
- (Puyān: على گفت كاش به مادرش نگفته بوديم كه دير ميآيد.) 'Ali said he wished we hadn't told his mother that he would be coming late.')
- پویان گفت علی گفته است کاش به مادرش نگفته بودیم که دیر میآید. →
- مریم: 'اگر به من خبر داده بودید که امروز می آئید خانه را تمیز می کردم.' (Maryam: 'If you had let me know that you were coming today, I would have cleaned the house.')
- مریم گفت اگر به او خبر داده بودیم که امروز می آئیم خانه را تمیز می کرد.  $\leftarrow$

#### **Exercises**

#### Exercise 1.1

#### Simple statements

Change to indirect speech, using a past reporting verb.

## Example:

مينا (به نيما): 'امروز خواهم آمد.'

Mina (to Nimā): 'I'll come today.'

→ مینا به نیما گفت که امروز خواهد آمد.

Mina said to Nimā that she would come that day.

(In Persian, however: will come today in indirect speech also.)

١. مينا (به من): 'فردا من و مادرم به بيمارستان خواهيم رفت.'

Mina (to me): 'Tomorrow my mother and I will go to the hospital.'

۲. مادرم (به دوستم): 'من خانواده تان را خیلی خوب می شناسم.'

My mother (to my friend): 'I know your family very well.'

حسن (به معلم انگلیسی): 'خیلی تند حرف میزنید و من نمیفهمم.'

Hasan (to English teacher): 'You speak too fast and I don't understand.'

Exercises

ان. برادر بابک (به بابک): 'می دانم که درسهایت را خوب نمی خوانی.' Bābak's brother (to Bābak): 'I know that you don't study well.'

Parvin (to her mother): 'Yesterday I had no time to wash the dishes.'

We (to the police): 'This man wanted to steal our car.'

Police (to our neighbor): 'We have found your car in another city.'

Mother (to the doctor): 'He/she was coughing the whole day.'

Teacher (to Parviz): 'You had studied/had learned your lesson better yesterday.'

Parviz (to Dārā): 'Today we are going on a trip.'

#### Exercise 1.2

#### **Questions**

Change to indirect speech, using a past reporting verb.

## Example:

Mina (to Nimā): 'Where is your house?'

Mina asked Nimā where his/their house was.

Mina (to me): 'Won't you go on a trip tomorrow with your friend?'

My mother (to my friend): 'Didn't you get to school late yesterday?'

Hasan (to English teacher): 'Why don't you speak more slowly so that we [can] understand?'

Mina's father (to Mina): 'Which store did you buy these shoes from?'

۵. پروین (به مادرش): 'با کی داشتی دربارهٔ من حرف میزدی؟'

Parvin (to her mother): 'Who were you talking to about me?'

We (to the police): 'Why hadn't you arrested the murderer earlier?'

Police (to our neighbor): 'Are you sure that he/she has not returned?'

Mother (to the doctor): 'Should he/she take these yellow pills also before the meal or together with the meal?'

Teacher (to Parviz): 'Do you know why I want to see your parents?'

Parviz (to Dārā): 'Didn't they say why they're not giving you a prize?'

#### Exercise 1.3

#### Orders and requests

Change to indirect speech, using a past reporting verb.

Example:

Mina (to Nimā): 'Don't tell anyone.'

Mina asked Nimā not to tell anyone.

Mina (to me): 'Don't put on these ugly clothes, please!'

My mother (to my father): 'Please don't kiss me on the street!'

Hasan (to English teacher): 'Tell us a little about London's weather!'

Teacher (to me): 'Don't ever put your bag there!'

Parvin (to her mother): 'Look, is the skirt I [have] bought pretty?'

Exercises

ما (به پلیس): 'لطفاً بگوئید چقدر طول می کشد؟'

We (to the police): 'Please tell [us] how long it is going to take.'

٧. پلیس (به همسایهمان): 'نگران نباشید؛ همینجا (/همینجا) بمانید.

Police (to our neighbor): 'Don't worry; stay right here!'

۸. مادر (به دکتر): 'خواهش میکنم آن قرصهای تلخ را دیگر به بچه ندهید!'

Mother (to the doctor): 'Please don't give the child those bitter pills again!'

٩. معلم (به پرویز): 'به پدر و مادرت بگو فردا به مدرسه بیایند!'

Teacher (to Parviz): 'Tell your parents to come to school tomorrow!'

۱۰. پرویز (به دارا): 'یک بار دیگر برای من توضیح بده!'

Parviz (to Dārā): 'Explain to me once more!'

#### Exercise 1.4

#### Conditionals and wishes

Change to indirect speech, using a past reporting verb.

## Example:

مينا (به نيما): 'كاش ديروز نميرفتي!'

Mina (to Nimā): 'I wish you hadn't gone yesterday!'

→ مینا به نیما گفت کاش او دیروز نمی رفت.

Mina told Nimā she wished he hadn't gone yesterday.

١. مينا (به من): 'اگر نمي تواني، بگذار من بكنم.'

Mina (to me): 'Let me do it if you can't.'

۲. مادرم (به دوستم): 'كاش موهايت را كوتاه نمى كردى!'

My mother (to my friend): 'I wish you hadn't cut your hair short!'

٣. حسن (به معلم انگلیسی): اگر آهسته تر حرف بزنید، می فهمم.

Hasan (to English teacher): 'I'll understand if you speak more slowly.'

۴. پدر آذر (به آذر): اگر این را به مادرت بدهی خوشحال میشود.

Āzar's father (to Āzar): 'Your mother will become happy if you give this to her.'

۵. پروین (به مادرش): 'کاش آن نامه را اصلاً نخوانده بودم!'

Parvin (to her mother): 'I wish I had not read that letter at all!'

ع. ما (به یلیس): 'اگر عجله نکنید، دیگر او را بیدا نخواهید کرد.'

We (to the police): 'If you don't hurry, you won't find him/her anymore.'

٧. پلیس (به همسایهمان): 'اگر فردا پول را به شما نداد، به ما خبر بدهید.'
Police (to our neighbor): 'Let us know if he/she doesn't give you the money tomorrow.'

۸ مادر (به دکتر): 'کاش این دوا را زودتر به او داده بودید.'

Mother (to the doctor): 'I wish you had given him/her this medicine sooner.'

٩. معلم (به پرویز): 'اگر این خط تو است، چرا نمی توانی بخوانی؟'
Teacher (to Parviz): 'If this is your handwriting, why can't you read [it]?'

۱۰. یرویز (به دارا): 'کاش من هم جرئت تو را می داشتم!'

Parviz (to Dārā): 'I wish I had your courage!'

#### Exercise 1.5

#### Time clauses and relative clauses

Change to indirect speech, using a past reporting verb.

#### Example:

''I bought the book you said.') مینا (به نیما): 'کتابی را که گفتی خریدم.' مینا به نیما گفت کتابی را که او گفته (است) خریده (است).  $\leftarrow$ 

- 1. 'غذا که خوردیم، برویم سینما.' ('After we eat, let's go to the cinema.')
- 2. 'When ) مادرم (به دوستم): 'وقتی آذر به دنیا آمد، قیافهاش عین فرشته بود.' . Āzar was born, she looked exactly like an angel [or: like Fereshteh].')
- 3. :حسن (به معلم انگلیسی): 3. 'معلمی که قبل از شما داشتیم نمی توانست اینها را توضیح بدهد.'
  ('The teacher we had before you could not explain these things.')
- 4. 'چرا همینکه عمویت آمد به اتاقت رفتی؟' . 'Why did you go to your room as soon as your uncle came?')
- 5. 'داشتم تنم را می شستم که آب سرد شد.' (I was washing my body when the water became cold.')
- 6. 'a, پلیس'): 'مردی که ما دیدیم کمی قدّش بلندتر بود.' 'The man we saw was a bit taller.')
- 7. 'آیا وقتی برگشتید تعجب نکردید که چرا در باز است؟' . (When you returned, weren't you surprised that the door was open?')
- مادر (به دکتر): 'چشمی که درد می کند، چشم راست من است، نه چشم چپم.' . (The eye which aches [/has pain] is my right eye, not the left one.')

Exercises

- 9. 'بپرس.' (Ask whatever you don't understand.')
- ('So long') پرویز (به دارا): 'تا وقتی زنده بود، هروقت مرا می دید از تو می پرسید.' as he/she was alive, he/she asked about you whenever he/she saw me.')

#### Exercise 1.6

#### Mixed sentences

Translate the quoted statements, then change to indirect speech, using a past reporting verb.

## Example:

آن پسر (به من): 'پدرم میخواهد با شما حرف بزند.'

→ 'My father wants to talk to you.'

آن پسر به من گفت (که) پدرش می خواهد با من حرف بزند.

- ۱. خدا (به موسی): 'فقط شش روز در هفته کار کن، چون من دنیا را در شش روز خلق کردم.'
  - ۲. فروغ: 'تمام روز در آئینه گریه می کردم.'
  - ٣. حافظ: 'لطفِ خدا بيشتر از جُرم ما ست.'
- ۴. گویندهٔ رادیو: 'می توانید این برنامه را در ساعت شش و نیم دوباره بشنوید.'
  - ۵. بچه (به مادرش): 'من توی شکم تو بیدار بودم یا خواب؟'
  - ع. دکتر (به من): 'فکر میکنم دیروز غذای بدی خورده بودید.'
  - ٧. مینا (به دوستش): 'قبول كن كه تو معنى این شعر را نفهمیدهای.'
    - دوست مینا (به مینا): 'اگر تو معنیاش را میدانی، به من بگو.'
  - ٩. پلیس (به من و دوستم): 'ماشینتان را اینجا بگذارید و با من بیائید.'
- ١٠. بابک (به پرویز): 'اگر من کمک نکرده بودم، چطور اینها را تنهائی میبردی؟'

# به شُتُرمُرغ گفتند بِپَر، گفت شترم، گفتند بار بِبَر، گفت مُرغم!

They told the ostrich ['camel-bird']: Fly! It said: I'm a camel! They said to him: Carry loads! It said: I'm a bird!

(Used for people who can always find some excuse.)

## UNIT TWO

'Self': emphatic, reflexive and possessive usages of *khod*Objective pronouns

فصل ۲

خود، خویش، خویشتن: کاربُردهای تأکیدی، انعکاسی و مِلکی ضمیرهای مفعولی

## [khod, 'self' or 'one's own'] خود

In less formal, casual Persian,  $\dot{}$  = [khod] is used with pronominal suffixes attached to it (the same set of suffixes you learned as possessive pronouns in I/4.2.2).

Table 2.1: خود ('self') for different persons

myself	[kho.dam] خودم
yourself	[kho.dat] خودت
himself/herself (itself)	[kho.dash] خودش
ourselves	[kho.de.mān] خودمان
yourselves	[kho.de.tān] خودتان
themselves	[kho.de.shān] خودشان

## has three different functions:

**A.** To emphasize some fact, or to show that someone does something alone and on his/her own.

#### Examples:

رمن) خودم بهتر از تو او را می شناسم. (I myself know him better than you do.) (You yourself gave it to me.)

خود [khod, 'self' or 'one's own']

. دخترم می خواهد خودش دربارهٔ آن به شما بگوید. (My daughter wants to tell you about it herself.)

بچه دوست دارد خودش غذایش را بخورد. (The child likes/prefers to eat [its food] [by] itself.)

In this *emphatic* function, instead of using the suffixes, sometimes the personal pronouns are used – or even nouns and names – all preceded, of course, by the connector  $ez\bar{a}fe$ .

Thus, instead of خود من [kho.dam], you can say خود من [kho.de man], or, similarly, خود تو [kho.de to] instead of خود تو [kho.dat], or you can say خود شَهر ('the city itself'), etc. (See Table 2.2 below.)

## Examples:

(You yourself came later than everybody else.) خود تو از همه ديرتر آمدی. (Why didn't they ask us [ourselves]?) چرا از خود ما نپرسيدند؟ (I've seen its movie, فيلمش را ديدهام، ولي خود كتاب را نخواندهام. but I haven't read the book itself.)

**B.** *Reflexive*: when the subject of the verb ('initiator') is the same as the object ('target').

## Examples:

بعد از سه روز خودم را در آینه دیدم. چرا تصمیم گرفتید خودتان را بکشید؟ این پیرمرد همیشه با خودش حرف میزند.

 $\mathbb{C}$ . *Possessive* (= one's own): to show possession with more emphasis, sometimes with more clarity.

#### Examples:

من هنوز قلمم را لازم دارم؛ قلم خودت را بردار. حتّی به برادر خودش هم اطمینان ندارد. مادر تو را بیشتر از مادر خودم دوست دارم.

In this *possessive* function, it can sometimes help avoid the ambiguity in third person possessive cases, already mentioned in I/4.6. (See also 2.2 below.) Compare:

i) مینا کتابش را آورد (Mina brought her book. – This *could* be her own book, but could also be someone else's, maybe even 'his'?)

'Self':
emphatic,
reflexive and
possessive
usages of
khod
Objective
pronouns

- ii) مینا کتاب او را آورد (Mina brought his/her book. This time we know that it was certainly someone else's book.)
- iii) مینا کتابِ خودش را آورد (Mina brought her [own] book. Here also no ambiguity.)

## in formal and colloquial Persian خود 2.2

In formal, written Persian (never spoken), خود [khod] is usually used alone (more often post-positioned, no  $ez\bar{a}fe$ ).

Table 2.2: خود ('self') – formal vs. informal

	LESS FORMAL/SPOKEN	FORMAL/WRITTEN
myself	[khodam] خودم or خود من [khod-e man]	[man khod] من خود
yourself	خودت [khodat] or خود تو [khod-e to]	[to khod] تو خود
himself/herself (itself)	خودش (general) خودش or خود او [khod-e 'u] (for humans)/ خود اَن (for non-humans)	['u khod] او خود [ān khod]
ourselves	[khodemān] خودمان or خود ما [khod-e mā]	[mā khod] ما خود
yourselves	[khodetān] خودتان or خود شما [khod-e shomā]	[shomā khod] شما خود
themselves	خودشان (khodeshān خودشان خود آنها khod-e ānhā]/ خود ایشان [khod-e ishān] خود ایشان	آنها خود [ānhā khod] ایشان خود [ishān khod]

Two notes about خود when used alone in this formal way:

• When خود is preceded by pronouns or by nouns/names, it can only be used for the subject, not for the object: من خود [man khod] is always I myself and never me myself.

Correct: من خود مينا را ديدم [man khod minā rā didam = I myself saw Mina.]

in formal خود and colloquial Persian

Wrong: You can't say من مينا خود را ديدم when you want to say 'I saw Mina herself.'

(Here خود مينا خود  $[khod-e\ minar{a}]$  with  $ezar{a}fe$  would be correct, but not مينا خود  $[minar{a}\ khod]$ .)

• When خود is used alone, usually the subject of the verb or the context shows which person is the antecedent. When you say به اتاق خود رفتم, this means 'I went to my [own] room.'

In written, more literary (or poetical) Persian, خویشتن [khish] خویشتن [khish.tan] can be used as synonyms of خود [khod]:

A line by the poet حافظ [Hāfez, Hafiz]:

ما آزمودهایم در این شهر بختِ خویش (We have tried our (own) luck in this town.)

## Compare:

```
روستم/دوستِ من (my friend) دوستِ خودم
(my [own] friend) دوستِ خودم
(دوستم خود (my friend him/herself) (formal: دوستم خود (my friend him/herself) خود دوستم خود دوستم
```

(Note that دوستِ خود by itself wouldn't show whose own friend we are talking about.)

More examples of خود with its different functions:

```
او خود کتاب را آورد. (He himself brought the book. – Here khod without ez\bar{a}fe; form.)
```

او خود کتاب را آورد. (He brought the book itself. – Here khod-e with  $ez\bar{a}fe$ .)

(He brought his [own] book. - form.) او كتاب خود را أورد.

(He brought his [own] book.) او كتاب خُودش را آورد.

(He himself brought the book.) او خودَش کتاب را آورد.

('Shame on you! - lit. 'Be ashamed of yourself!') از خودت خجالت بکش!

(He's even afraid of his own shadow.) از سایهٔ خودش هم می ترسد.

در آن شهر زیاد نماند و به سفر خود ادامه داد. (He didn't stay long in that city and continued his own trip [safar-e khod].)

You may ask) شاید شما از خود بپرسید که چرا زندگی بهتری ندارید. yourself why you don't have a better life.)

او هیچوقت سؤالهای خودش را فراموش نمی کرد. (He never forgot his own questions.)

2

'Self':
emphatic,
reflexive and
possessive
usages of
khod
Objective
pronouns

## 2.3 Objective pronouns

The same pronouns you have learned as *possessive pronouns* (here used as suffixes after *khod*-; see Table 2.1 above) can be used as *objective pronouns*, usually replacing the direct object, but sometimes the indirect object too, and sometimes used as the object of certain prepositions. This is common in both colloquial and formal Persian.

Important similarity: we remember that when used as possessive pronouns, suffixed pronouns cannot be used when some emphasis is needed. کتاب and من are both my book but only من in the first version can be used with emphasis, not in the second version. The same is true when these are used as objective pronouns: they are unstressed and without emphasis.

## 2.3.1 As direct object

The DDO-marker (= Definite Direct Object Marker) |, is dropped and the objective suffix is added to the verb, usually written joined:

Table 2.3: Examples for objective pronouns

OBJECTIVE SUFFIXES	SENTENCES WITH NOUNS AND PRONOUNS AS OBJECTS	OBJECTIVE SUFFIXES USED
[-am, me]	من را می شناسد man rā mi-shenāsad He/she knows me.	می شناسدم mi.she.nā.sa.dam He/she knows me.
ت _` [-at, you (sg.)]	تو را می بینم to rā mi-binam I see you [sg.].	می بینمت mi.bi.na.mat I see you [sg.].
ے ش` [-ash, him/her/it]	او را دید/مینا را دید/آن را دید قn rā did/minā rā did/'u rā did He/she saw him or her/Mina/it.	دیدش di.dash He/she saw him/her/it.
_ مان _ [-emān, us]	ما را مىبَرَند mā rā mi-barand They (will) take us.	می بَرَ ندمان mi.ba.ran.de.mān They (will) take us.
تان _ [-etān, you (pl.)]	شما را نمی کشیم shomā rā nemi-koshim We won't kill you [pl.].	نمی کشیمتان ne.mi.ko.shi.me.tān We won't kill you [pl.].
ب شان _ [-eshān, them]	آنها را بخر/کتابها را بخر ketābhā rā bekhar/ānhā rā bekhar Buy the books./Buy those/them.	بخرشان be.kha.re.shān Buy them.

Objective pronouns

#### Possible confusions

בער [didam] means 'I saw' – with '-am' being the conjugational ending for 1sg. But it can also mean 'He/she saw me' – this time '-am' being the objective pronoun and the verb being just בעל for 3sg. Or consider these:

می بینیم [mi-binim, we see], and می بینیم [mi-bini-am, you see me] – this one should preferably be written as می بینی (same pronunciation) to avoid this confusion.

#### **Compound verbs**

The objective suffixes can be attached to either the verbal or non-verbal part of the compound verb.

#### Examples:

باز کردَمَش or بازَش کردم 
$$\leftarrow$$
 (I opened it.) آن را باز کردم. پیدا کردیم من و را پیدا کردیم (We found you.) بیدا کردیم من و را پیدا کردیم و را پیدا کردیم برداشتند من و (They picked them up.) آنها را برداشتند. قبول کنش or برداشتند فتولش کن  $\leftarrow$  (Accept this.) این را قبول کن. قبول کنش or قبول کنش or قبول کنش or قبول کنش این را قبول کند. (I don't like you any more.) دیگر دوست ندارم حدیگر دوست ندارم حدیگر دوست ندارم حدیگر دوست ندارم

This is common in both colloquial and formal; attaching the suffixes to the non-verbal part is slightly more common in colloquial than in formal Persian.

## 2.3.2 As indirect object

Not as common, and not used for all indirect objects. Some of the occurrences involve verbs which are now used with indirect objects but in earlier times were used with direct objects and no preposition. For instance, the verb گفتن would normally use the preposition به او گفتن ('I said to him.'/'I told him.') In early modern Persian, however, this verb often used a direct object, i.e.: او را گفتم – a form still used in poetical language. Example:

Some verbs can have their object either direct or indirect:

'Self':
emphatic,
reflexive and
possessive
usages of
khod
Objective
pronouns

```
(م) به آن گوش کردم. (I listened to it.) (آن را گوش کردم: (dess common: گوشش کردم (گوش کردمش) (We continued it.) (آن را ادامه دادیم (or: (ادامه دادیمش) دادیم (ادامه دادیمش) (ادامه دادیمش)
```

With verbs that can have two objects (direct and indirect), using only these objective pronouns can lead to some ambiguity: گفتمش could be both 'I said it' and 'I told him/her.' Other examples:

```
دادمش. (= I gave it [to him] or I gave him [sth.]) دادمش (= I showed it [to him] or I showed him [sth.])
```

## 2.3.3 As object of prepositions

Though not possible with all prepositions and in all prepositional idioms, this is very common in Persian. Examples with براي ('for') and دربارهٔ ('about'):

Examples with some other prepositions:

نزدیکَم است 
$$\leftarrow$$
 نزدیکِ من است نزدیکِ من است خزدیکِ اتاقِ من است پیششان رفتیم  $\leftarrow$  پیشِ پدر و مادرِ تو رفتیم پیشِتان می مانم  $\leftarrow$  پیشِ تو و پدرت می مانم رویَش نشست  $\leftarrow$  رویِ آن نشست تو یش چه داری؟  $\rightarrow$  [here  $tu-ye=inside$ ] تویِ جیبت چه داری؟ پُشتِش یک باغ است  $\rightarrow$  پُشتِ خانهٔ ما یک باغ است کی کنارتان نشسته بود؟  $\rightarrow$  کی کنارتان نشسته بود؟  $\rightarrow$  کی کنار شما نشسته بود؟  $\rightarrow$  کی کنار بود  $\rightarrow$  کی کنار بود  $\rightarrow$  کی دیوار بود  $\rightarrow$  کی دیوار بود  $\rightarrow$  کی دیوار بود  $\rightarrow$  کی دیوار بود  $\rightarrow$  کی کنار کیفِ تو بود

In formal Persian, objective pronouns are not usually attached directly to prepositions like از با and several others. We shall see later (in Appendix II) how these are treated in colloquial/Tehrani Persian.

Exercises

#### Exercise 2.1

Which words in each of the following sentences would require  $ez\bar{a}fe$ ? Write these words and then translate the sentence into English. (If different readings – with or without  $ez\bar{a}fe$  – are possible, mention both.)

## Example:

مینا خود بابک را دید

- → a) khod-e, 'Mina saw Babak himself';
  - b) khod, 'Mina herself saw Babak.'

#### Exercise 2.2

Translate the following into Persian, using *khod*. When different forms are possible for *khod*, write all of them, starting with the less formal version(s). (Some of the words you can use have been given at the end of the exercise.)

## Example:

They saw their own father.  $\rightarrow$  a) آنها پدرِ خودشان را دیدند. b) آنها پدر خود را دیدند

- 1. My own brother's house was sold.
- 2. They knew nothing about the house itself.
- 3. Don't show yourselves to those young men.
- 4. I can't hide myself under this small table.
- 5. Dogs never forget their own owners.
- 6. I only want the shoelace, not the shoe itself.

'Self':
emphatic,
reflexive and
possessive
usages of
khod
Objective
pronouns

- 7. The man himself was not much better than his neighbor.
- 8. I used to buy my clothes myself when in high school.
- 9. She found the book but couldn't find her own glasses.
- 10. He killed himself two days after his son's suicide.

فروختن /دربارهٔ /هیچ /دانستن /جوان /نشان دادن /پنهان کردن /سگ /صاحب /فراموش کردن /فقط /بندِ کفش /همسایه /دبیر ستان /لباس /عینک /پیدا کردن /خودکشی /کشتن

#### Exercise 2.3

Add the appropriate form(s) of *khod* to the sentence, starting with the less formal version if there are two or more options.

## Example:

را بستم. (my own eyes) 
$$\rightarrow a$$
 (my own eyes) چشم خود را بستم (b, چشم خود را بستم ود بستم (b)

- (Mina herself) من مينا را خيلي خوب مي شناختم
- (we ourselves) ما چند روز در آن شهر ماندیم و بعد برگشتیم .2
- (that city itself) ما چند روز در آن شهر ماندیم و بعد برگشتیم .3
- (my little brother himself) برادر کوچک من آن یرنده را دید .
- (my own little brother) برادر کوچک من آن پرنده را دید .5
- (the bird itself) برادر کوچک من آن یرنده را دید .
- 7. على به من نگفته بود كه پدرش مرده است (Ali himself)
- (me myself) على به من نگفته بود كه پدرش مرده است .8
- (his own father) على به من نگفته بود كه پدرش مرده است.
- (his father himself) على به من نگفته بود كه پدرش مرده است

#### Exercise 2.4

Rewrite the following sentences by using objective suffixes for the words specified, then translate. (Write different versions if necessary.)

## Example:

ديروز شما را نديدم. (شما) ديروز شما را نديدمتان. 
$$\rightarrow$$
 (I didn't see you yesterday.)

Exercises

- ۵. خیلی زود ما را پیدا کردی. (ما)
- ع. قبل از آنکه به پلیس بگوید او را کشتند. (او)
- ۷. همینکه شما را می بیند از خوشحالی می رقصد. (شما)
- ۸ اگر ماشینتان را تعمیر کنید، آن را بهتر می خرند. (ماشینتان/آن)
  - ۹. می توانی آن را نگاه کنی، ولی به آن دست نزن. (آن/آن)
- ۱۰. كاش اسم او را فراموش نكرده بودم و به شما مي گفتم. (اسم او/شما)

#### Exercise 2.5

Change the objective suffixes to nouns and pronouns by using the clues given. If there are two objective suffixes for the same person, use a noun for the first one and a pronoun for the second one.

## Example:

برداشتمش و به مریم دادمش (قلم) قلم را برداشتم و آن را به مریم دادم 
$$\leftarrow$$

- ١. پارهاش نكن، لازمش دارم. (نامه)
- ۲. قبل از آنکه بخوابی، خاموشش کن. (چراغ)
  - ۳. دوستم ندارد و دروغ می گوید. (من)
- ۴. در کتابخانه ندیدمشان و به خانه برگشتم. (دوستانم)
  - ۵. غذایش دادم و صبر کردم تا بخوابد. (بچه)
  - ۶. کمکمان کنید تا این کار را زودتر تمام کنیم. (ما)
- ٧. مى خواستيم دعوتتان كنيم ولى شماره تلفنتان را نداشتيم. (شما)
- ۸ آن روز در خانهٔ برادرت تو را دیدم ولی بعد از آن دیگر ندیدمت. (تو)
  - ٩. همانجا گذاشتمش تا على راحت تر يبدايش كند. (كليد)
    - ۱۰. ممكن است مال همسايه باشد، بازش نكن. (بسته)

#### Exercise 2.6

Translate your answers to the previous exercise.

## كارد دستهٔ خودش را نمى بُرَد.

A knife wouldn't cut its own haft.

(= A will always support B.)

## **UNIT THREE**

Definite and indefinite, singular and plural: review and expansion

Vocative case

فصل ۳ معرفه و نکره، مفرد و جمع: مرور و تکمیل شکل ندائی

#### 3.1 A review of definite and indefinite

Units 6 and 7 in Basic Persian cover definite and indefinite in detail.

When nouns are used in a general or generic sense, Persian uses the noun in its absolute form (i.e., without any determiners for definite/indefinite or plural):

(Air is important.) هوا مهمّ است.

(The room has no air.) اتاق هوا ندارد.

اسب حيوانِ نجيبي است. (Horses are noble animals./A horse is a noble animal.)

(We don't eat horses.) ما اسب نمي خوريم.

Question: In the sentence اتاق هوا ندارد (The room has no air), how do we know that اتاق (room] is definite?

Answer: Through context. Do all rooms have no air? No. It is not 'room' in its general/generic sense.

**Moving from** *indefinite* (things encountered or mentioned for the first time) to *definite*:

روی یک درخت پرندهای دیدم؛ پرنده از میوههای درخت میخورد. (I saw a bird on [/in] a tree; the bird was eating from the fruit[s] of the tree.)

روی یک نیمکت مردی نشسته بود؛ کنار مرد روی نیمکت نشستم. (A man was sitting on a bench; I sat beside the man on the bench.)

A review of definite and indefinite

(I bought a book, **کتابی** خریدم ولی نویسندهٔ **کتاب را** نمی شناختم. but I didn't know the author of the book.)

It is the context that in many cases determines the use of the DDO-marker  $r\bar{a}$  (see I/7.3). This is what we know for sure:

- we don't use  $r\bar{a}$  if the verb is intransitive;
- we don't use  $r\bar{a}$  for an *indirect* object (our clue: *preposition*);
- we normally don't use rā for an indefinite object, though occasionally we do.

On the other hand,

• we have to use  $r\bar{a}$  for a definite direct object (= DDO).

Distinguishing a *direct object* is not very difficult (= an object for which we are not using a preposition), but how do we know that it is *definite* also? Some clues:

- it is a pronoun (like من or تو or);
- it is a proper noun or name (like اير ان or مينا);
- it is a noun modified by demonstrative or superlative adjectives (like
   ان کتاب or آن کتاب);
- it is a noun in the possessive case (like کتابی);
- also: most modified or plural nouns in the absence of indefinite determiners (like کتاب ارزان or کتاب).

There certainly remain some gaps here, some in-between cases where you are not quite sure whether to use  $r\bar{a}$  or not; the good news is: in most of such cases using  $r\bar{a}$  is optional.

Some examples of sentences both with and without definite/indefinite determiners:

## a) Uncountable nouns (here آب):

اب مهم است. (Water is important.) آب گرم است. (The water is warm.) آب گرم است. (Water is a vital element.) آب یک عنصر حیاتی است. (Water is a vital element.) آب رودخانه ها شیرین است. (The water of the rivers/river water is sweet.) بسیاری از ماهیها در آبهای شور زندگی می کنند. (Many fish live in salty waters.) این دستگاه آب شور را شیرین می کند. (We shouldn't drink cold water with warm food.)

## 3

Definite and indefinite, singular and plural: review and expansion Vocative case (We must boil or purify water before drinking.)

(I drink water before eating.) من قبل از غذا آب میخورم. (I drink water before eating.) من قبل از غذا آب میخورم. (I drink the water before eating.) من آب را قبل از غذا میخورم. (I poured water into the pot.) در قابلمه آب ریختم. (I poured the water into the pot.) آب را در قابلمه ریختم. (Don't drink [water] from this glass.) از این لیوان آب نخور. (Don't drink the water of this glass.) آب را نخور شنا نکن. (Don't dirty the water.) آب را کثیف شنا نکن. (Don't dirty the water.) آب را کثیف نده. (Pour out/empty that dirty/unclean water.) آب کشیف را دور بریز. (My friend gave me a bottle of water.) خواهرم آب خودش را به من داد. (My sister gave me her [own] water.)

#### b) Countable nouns:

(I saw a horse.) اسبى ديدم. (I saw a white horse.) اسب سفیدی دیدم./یک اسب سفید(ی) دیدم. (I saw the white horse.) است سفید را دیدم. (There are a lot of horses here.) اینجا است زیاد دارد. (I see white horses here a lot.) اینجا اسبهای سفید زیاد می بینم. (I don't see the white horses any more.) اسبهای سفید را دیگر نمی بینم. (I stayed in Tehran and translated books.) در تهران ماندم و کتاب ترجمه کردم. I stayed in Tehran and) در تهران ماندم و کتاب را ترجمه کردم. translated the book.) I stayed in Tehran and) در تهران ماندم و کتابها را ترجمه کردم. translated the books.) (I finished translating the book.) ترجمهٔ کتاب را تمام کردم. (I ate two apples.) دو سیب خوردم. (I ate a sour apple.) یک سیب ترش خوردم. (I ate the apple in the fridge.) سيب توى يخچال را خوردم. (I ate from the apples of the tree.) از سیبهای درخت خوردم. (I ate the apples of the tree.) سيبهاى درخت را خوردم. (I ate the apples of a tree.) سیبهای یک درخت را خوردم.

A review of definite and indefinite

As the last two examples show, the possessive case makes the *apples* definite, regardless of the *tree*, which can be definite or indefinite. Another example would be عکسی دیدم (I saw a picture) vs. عکسی دیدم (I saw a man's picture = I saw <u>the</u> picture of a man).

One more tip about  $r\bar{a}$  (when using  $r\bar{a}$  for an indefinite object is optional): you are much more likely to use it if the object is a person. Compare 'a book' and 'a man' in the following sentences:

```
روی زمین کتابی دیدم و آن را برداشتم. (I saw a book on the ground [/floor] and picked it up.)
روی زمین مردی را دیدم ولی نزدیکش نرفتم. (I saw a man on the ground [/floor] but did not go near him.)
```

In the latter sentence, using  $r\bar{a}$  after mardi is optional and you can drop it, but then you would be treating that man like some bag of potatoes (which is okay if that is really how you want to sound).

#### 3.1.1 Position of indefinite -i: some more limitations

When the noun is modified by an adjective, colloquial Persian would *always* add the indefinite -*i* to the adjective (e.g., کتابی خوبی), whereas in more formal Persian the -*i* can be added to the noun as well (e.g., کتابی خوب). In certain cases, however, this latter option would not be possible even in formal Persian.

With certain quantifiers that precede the noun, the indefinite -i (if needed) is added to the adjective (if present) and not to the noun. Some examples of such words are *har*, *chenin*, *hich* and *che* in the following sentences, all requiring -i to be added to the adjective:

```
الاد. الاد: هر کتابی قیمتی دارد. (Every book has a price.)

But: هر کتابِ خوبی قیمتی دارد (Every good book has a price.)

(I had never read such a book.)

But: هرگز چنین کتابی نخوانده بودم (I had never read such a good book.)

(I didn't see any book.)

But: هیچ کتابی ندیدم (I didn't see any interesting book.)

But: هیچ کتابی نوشته یادی (What book have you written?)
```

Definite and indefinite, singular and plural: review and expansion

#### 3.1.2 Using rā with certain verbs

Apart from all other factors, the nature of the action expressed by the verb plays a great role in making an object appear definite or not. Consider the verb کشتن (koshtan, to kill). A butcher can say:

(را) کشتم و گوشتش را فروختم. (قرصفندی (را) کشتم و گوشتش را فروختم. (I killed/slaughtered a sheep and sold its meat.)

For the butcher, using  $r\bar{a}$  after 'sheep' is optional, because he is only doing what he usually does. Not so for you if for some reason you have to kill/slaughter a sheep: you would certainly need  $r\bar{a}$  then, even if you are using the indefinite determiner as well. Killing a human being, fortunately, is never treated as something commonplace, even if it happens in battle, and you always use  $r\bar{a}$ :

در جنگ سربازی را کشت و هرگز این را فراموش نکرد. (He killed a soldier in the war and never forgot it.)

(A bear came out of the woods and killed a dog.)

Certain verbs seem to need a definite object in all cases: due to the intensity of the action, an indefinite object without  $r\bar{a}$  (which could sound 'casual') is hardly thinkable. Examples:

(They beat up a boy and ran away.) پسری را کتک زدند و فرار کردند. در خیابانِ ما دارند ساختمانی را تعمیر میکنند. (They are repairing a building on our street.)

(I had کتابی را فراموش کرده بودم و مجبور شدم به خانه برگردم. forgotten a book and had to go back home.)

ان مرد سگی را از رودخانه نجات داد. (That man rescued a dog from the river.)

ال usually prefer tea to coffee.) معمولاً چای را به قهوه ترجیح می دهم. (I usually prefer tea to coffee.) یک آپارتمان نو را به یک خانهٔ قدیمی ترجیح می داد. (He preferred a new apartment to an old house.)

#### 3.1.3 Other uses of indefinite -i

a) The unstressed, indefinite suffix -i can be used to refer to some small or insignificant amount or number; this is a meaning which is absent in (yek) when used alone for indefinite (not yek + -i). Very often

More on singular/plural

– though not always – it is the non-verbal part of a compound verb to which this suffix is added. Examples:

يه دخترم پول دادم که لباس بخرد. (I gave [some] money to my daughter to buy clothes.)

(I gave some [small amount of] به دخترم پولی دادم و به اداره رفتم. money to my daughter and went to the office.)

بعد از شنا نیم ساعت استراحت کردم. (I rested for half an hour after swimming.)

We took a short استراحتی کردیم و نزدیکِ غروب برگشتیم. rest there and returned close to sunset.)

(I looked from the window.) از پنجره نگاه کردم. (I threw a glance from the window.)

It can also be used to show indifference or carelessness, as when you do something in a slapdash fashion:

(I put on some shoes and ran **کفشی** پوشیدم و از خانه بیرون دویدم. out of the house.)

b) Unstressed -*i* is also used in the sense of *every*, *each* or *per* (similar to ,ه, *har*):

دو بار در روز or هر روز دو بار (twice a day) روزی دو بار (twice each day)
هر متر هزار تومان = (1,000 Tumāns per meter) متری هزار تومان (each meter 1,000 Tumāns)

#### 3.2 More on singular/plural

#### a) Compound nouns

When two or several words are treated as a single concept, the plural suffix is usually added to the last word; a different position can sometimes change the meaning:

تخته سیاهها در این مدرسه خیلی کهنهاند. (The blackboards in this school are very old.) – Here تخته سیاه is treated as a single concept. میخواهم. (I want the black boards [/planks] for the roof.)

Definite and indefinite, singular and plural: review and expansion

(All grown-ups have once been [= were once] children.) [From The Little Prince.] بیشترِ آدمهای بزرگ در اوّل زندگیِ سختی داشتهاند. (Most of the great people have had a difficult life in the beginning.) قد درازها باید در ردیفِ آخر بنشینند. (Tall guys should sit in the last row.)

(With these tall statures [of yours] [= as you are so tall] you cannot sit in the

With a number of compound nouns made from Arabic loan words, it is common in official and administrative language to use the Arabic broken

plural for the first noun, something of which not all writers approve:

**Table 3.1: Plural of compounds – some examples** 

first row.)

SINGULAR	BROKEN PLURAL	PERSIAN PLURAL
و کیل مدافع (vakil modāfe', attorney)	و کلای مدافع (vokalā-ye modāfe')	و کیلهای مدافع (vakil-hā-ye modāfe'), or و کیل مدافعها (vakil modāfe'-hā)
رئيس جمهور (ra'is[-e] jomhur, president [of a country])	رؤسای جمهور (ro'asā-ye jomhur)	رئيس جمهورها (ra'is[-e] jomhur-hā)
وسيلهٔ نقليّه (vasile-ye naghliyye, vehicle)	وسايل نقليّه (vasāýel-e naghliyye)	وسیلههای نقلیّه (vasile-hā-ye naghliyye)

### b) Some unavoidable Arabic broken plurals, the case of double plurals, and more

In official and administrative Persian, some Arabic broken plurals are as common as Persian ones; some of them are very common in colloquial Persian also. And with a few of the borrowings from Arabic you always use the broken Arabic plural even in colloquial Persian.

Examples of words almost always using the Arabic plural:

شخص (shakhs, person), pl. اشخاص ( $ashkh\bar{a}s$ , persons, people) فر (fard, individual), pl. افر اد (fard, individuals, people)

More on singular/plural

مال (māl, property), pl. اموال (amvāl, properties, belongings) اموال (ahl, native [of a place]), pl. اهل (ahāli, residents or inhabitants) اهالي (adabi) means literary and ادبيات (adabiyyāt, originally pl. of ادبية) means literature.

Sometimes the Arabic plural is used in a specific sense for which the Persian plural cannot be used. Examples:

- حق (hagh, right [n.]). In socio-political contexts, حقوق (hoghugh) is the common plural and not حقوق (hagh-hā), as in human rights (عقوق , hoghugh-e bashar). Additionally, hoghugh means 'salary'.
- انتخاب (*entekhāb*, selection or choice). انتخاب (*entekhābāt*) is the word used for *elections* and not انتخابها (*entekhāb-hā*), which means selections or choices.
- اصلاح ( $esl\bar{a}h$ , correction, improvement). Here also, although the Persian  $-h\bar{a}$  is possible, it is only  $esl\bar{a}h\bar{a}t$  which can be used in the sense of [political] reforms.
- دوا  $(dav\bar{a}, drug, medicine),$  دواها  $(dav\bar{a}-h\bar{a})$  means drugs and the broken plural ادویه (adviye) means spice[s].
- (matbu') is common only as an adjective ('pleasant') while مطبوعات (matbu'āt) means the press.
- اطراف means sides or parties while طرفها means sides or parties while اطراف
- مرسوم (marsum) is custom or customary, while the plural مراسم (marāsem) means ceremony and is usually treated as singular, allowing the use of the double plural مراسم (marāsem-hā, ceremonies).

The double plural is possible with some other plurals also, like ادویه الاویه الاویه ('spices'), etc. And occasionally an Arabic singular is hardly known or only seldom used in Persian, while the plural is a common word. Some examples:

رباب (arbāb, boss, master); والدين (vāledeyn, parents); اولاء (owlād, children [in relation to parents]); اراجيف (arājif, balderdash, baloney); اراجيف (nojum, astrology).

Definite and indefinite, singular and plural: review and expansion

c) Firstly, secondly, etc. – and some more ordinal numbers and fractions To say firstly, secondly, etc., add tanvin to Persian ordinal numbers (which would then change the -om to -oman). Understandably, this is common for only the first few numbers. Both Arabic and Persian versions are common for numbers 1–5:

Table 3.2: Firstly, secondly, etc.

	COMMON WORD	LITERARY
firstly	(av.va.lan) اوّ لاّ	(no.khost) نخست
secondly	(sā.ni.yan) ثانياً or (dov.vo.man) دوّماً	(do di.gar) دو دیگر
thirdly	(sēv.vo.man) or ثالثاً (sēv.sev.yo.man) سوّماً	(se di.gar) سه دیگر
fourthly	(rā.be.'an) رابعاً or (cha.hā.ro.man) چهارماً	
fifthly	(khā.me.san) خامساً or پنجماً	

Some of the Arabic fractions that are common in Persian (sometimes preceded by the Per

if or half-hours. نصف (nesf, half = نيم) – very common, but use نيم for half-hours.

نلث (sols, one-third = یک سوّم) – used especially for quarters/terms in academic year (excluding summer).

ربع (rob', one-fourth = ریک چهارم) – used especially for a quarter of an hour.

خمس (khoms, one-fifth = یک پنجم) – used mostly in an Islamic context for religious taxes.

عشر (oshr, one-tenth = ماریک دهم).

# 3.3 The stressed -e (or -i) suffix with quantities and time expressions

You must be familiar with the stressed -e added to سال ('year') for giving an age:

يک يسر دو ساله [yek pesar-e do sāle, 'a two-year-old boy'] (I/8.5/3)

This -e can be added to many *number* + *noun* combinations, especially those about time and age. (Another word you already know is دوباره [again, for the second time] made from دو بار [twice].)

Other examples:

```
يک بچّهٔ ده روزه (a ten-day old child) يک بچّهٔ ده روزه (a six-month journey) يک سفرِ شش ماهه (a two-engine plane/a twin-engine aircraft) يک هواپيمای دو موتوره (a bicycle) يک دو چرخه (a man with two wives)
```

The stressed -e (or -i) suffix with quantities and time expressions

If the word already ends in -e, then usually a stressed -i is added instead of another -e (written as  $\bigcirc$  with alef). Occasionally -i is added to some words ending in consonants and is written joined. This stressed -i should not be confused with the unstressed one discussed earlier in this unit (3.1.3). Examples:

```
(a five-minute conversation) یک صحبت پنج دقیقهای (a three-week journey)
```

To say by ones or by twos, etc., say:

```
یکی یکی یکی (by ones; one by one) یکی یکی یکی (tak tak, singly, one by one); more form.: یک به یک or یک به یک (yekāyek, each one, singly, every single one) یکایک (by twos, two by two) دو به دو or دوتا دوتا (by twos; also: the two of [us/you/them]) دوتائی (by threes; three by three) سه به سه تا سه تا (by threes; also: the three of [us/you/them])
```

#### Also compare the following:

```
(once) یک بار/یکبار (once) یک بار/یکبار (all at once, suddenly) یکباره (all at once, suddenly) برای بارِ اوّل/برای اوّلین بار (for the first time) دو بار (again) دوباره (for the second time) برای بارِ دوّم/برای دوّمین بار (three times) سه بار (threefold, thrice) برای بار سوّم/برای سوّمین بار
```

Definite and indefinite, singular and plural: review and expansion Vocative case

#### 3.4 The vocative case

The vocative is nothing but *direct address*, and the only thing which is required here is a shift of the stress: in direct address the stress, normally on the last syllable, has to shift to the first syllable. The names and titles on the last syllable as to shift to the first syllable. The names and titles (Mr. Irani) are normally pronounced with stress on the last syllable as  $Min\hat{a}$ , Ali,  $Parv\bar{a}n\acute{e}$  and  $\bar{a}gh\bar{a}ye$   $Ir\bar{a}n\acute{i}$ , but when you are calling/addressing them, the stress is on the first syllable:  $Min\bar{a}l$ , Alil,  $Parv\bar{a}nel$  and  $agh\bar{a}ye$   $Ir\bar{a}nil$ . In what now sounds either archaic or poetical, the nouns in the vocative case used to be preceded by the particle [ey, `O'] or occasionally suffixed by an unstressed  $-\bar{a}$  (and no change of stress). It can still be encountered in contemporary Persian when addressing [ey] [ey

#### **Exercises**

#### Exercise 3.1

In which of the following sentences could you consider  $r\bar{a}$  optional? Put that  $r\bar{a}$  in brackets after the word preceding it. Example:

روزنامهای را خریدم و خبرهایش را خواندم روزنامهای (را) خواندم (را) (The second  $r\bar{a}$  in this sentence is not optional!)

- ١. كمي بعد لباس مناسبي را انتخاب كردم و أن را خريدم.
- ۲. امروز لباس گرمتری بیوش چون باید برف را یارو کنی.
- ٣. آيا ممكن است شخصي يك شخص ديگر را بكشد و آن را فراموش كند؟
  - ۴. استاد دانشجوئی را برای آن کار انتخاب کرد.
  - ۵. نامهای برای استادم نوشتم و مقاله را برایش فرستادم.
    - ۶. نکتهای را درست نفهمیدم و بعداً از او پرسیدم.
  - ۷. با خواندن آن کتاب چیزهائی را فهمیدم که قبلاً نمی دانستم.
    - ۸. معنی کلمهای را نمی دانستم و آن جمله را نفهمیدم.
  - ۹. دخترها را نمی شناختم ولی پسری را شناختم و به طرفش رفتم.
- ۱۰. یلیس زنها را فوراً آزاد کرد ولی مردی را تا روز بعد در زندان نگه داشت.

Exercises 3.2

Translate the sentences from Exercise 3.1 into English.

#### Exercise 3.3

Give the plural of the following compound nouns (treated as single concepts with no  $ez\bar{a}fe$ ) by using  $-h\bar{a}$ ; then separate the words and change the first noun to plural. Translate each version into English. Example:

كتابخانه

 $\rightarrow$  a) كتابخانهها [libraries], b) كتابخانهها [books of the house]

#### Exercise 3.4

In which of the following sentences is the unstressed -i suffix used not just as indefinite determiner but to demonstrate the insignificance of some amount or careless/hasty treatment of something? Mention the words using such a suffix.

- ١. غروب زيبائي بود و ما نيم ساعتي در ساحل دريا غروب را تماشا كرديم.
  - ۲. اراجیفی را که او گفته است به کس دیگری نگو.
  - ۳. قبل از آنکه دیر شود باید سفری به آن شهر بکنیم.
- ۴. ایکاش قبل از امتحان توضیحی کوتاه میداد تا بدانیم از ما چه میخواهد.
- ۵. آقای دکتر توضیحی دربارهٔ آن دوا داد ولی من حرفهایش را فراموش کردهام.
  - ع. گریهای کرد و از ما خواست که او را ببخشیم.
  - ۷. با دوستش آشتی کرد و او را به مهمانی دعوت کرد.
  - ۸. هر روز چند دانشجوئی را در کلاس می بینیم و صحبتی می کنیم.
    - ٩. به ایران نرفتهام ولی چند کتابی دربارهٔ این کشور خواندهام.
  - ۱۰. مردی مسلمان از یک خانم آمریکائی آدرس نزدیکترین کتابخانه را می پرسید.

#### Exercise 3.5

Translate the sentences from Exercise 3.4 into English.

Definite and indefinite, singular and plural: review and expansion

#### Exercise 3.6

Write these in Persian.

1. A tricycle. 2. A six-finger hand. 3. A bilingual book. 4. A two-hour program. 5. A two-horse carriage. 6. A ten-second farewell. 7. A three-bed room. 8. A seven-room house. 9. A two-way (Persian: 'two-direction') street. 10. A two-day celebration.

Some words that could help:

کوه به کوه نمی رسد، آدم به آدم می رسد.

A mountain wouldn't reach another mountain, a man reaches another.

(Used when you unexpectedly encounter someone you know.)

# فصل ۴ | UNIT FOUR

Persian equivalents of English modal verbs افعال ناقصِ انگلیسی

More on subjunctive بازهم دربارهٔ التزامیِ

#### 4.1 English modal verbs (or some semi-modals) and their Persian equivalents

In Persian, it is only  $\lambda \cup [b\bar{a}yad, must]$  which is comparable to English modals in defectiveness: it has only one form and is not conjugated. (Some other forms like مي ايد [mi-bāyad], بايست [bāyest], مي بايد [mi-bāyest] or the rather archaic بایستی می بایستی [bāyesti/mi-bāyesti] are treated in contemporary Persian as synonyms for عليك with no distinction.) Another potential modal, شاید [shāyad], is used more like an adverb ('maybe') rather than the modal 'may/might.' The rest are adverbs or multi-word constructions with verbs that are conjugated in the normal way.

Table 4.1 will show where Persian would use the *subjunctive* and where perfect (or past) subjunctive for English modals and their perfect forms.

#### Shall, will and would

For shall and will you can usually use the Persian future tense, and you know that there is no 'future perfect' tense in Persian: you should use present perfect for shall have and will have.

Would is a different story. There being no future in the past in Persian, you would need to check the units on conditionals and reported speech. Would have appears usually in irrealis or counterfactual statements, which is again covered in units on conditionals and wishes.

For would used in polite requests, see *could* in Table 4.1.

For would rather you should simply use the verb ترجيح دادن (to prefer) and conjugate it as a normal verb, or use some expression like بيشتر دوست (to like better ['more']). In both cases use تا (not از not) for than and place the verb before تا آنکه or تا اینکه if a second verb is needed):

Table 4.1: English modals or some semi-modals and their Persian equivalents

mist/have to/	Present	Past
	obligation: They must go. (آنها) باید بروند/مجبورند (که) بروند/مجبور هستند (که) بروند	PAST OBLIGATION: They had to go. (آنها) باید میرفتند/مجبور بودند (که) بروند
	no obligation: They don't have to go. (آنها) مجبورنیستند (که) بروند/جباری ندارند (که) بروند/ لازم نیست بروند	no obligation in past: They didn't have to go. (آنها) مجبور نبودند (که) بروند/اجباری نداشتند (که) بروند/لازم نبود بروند
	неонівглом: They mustn't go. (آنها) نباید بروند/(آنها) اجازه ندارند بروند	PAST PROHIBITION: They weren't [allowed] to go. (آنها) نباید میرفتند/(آنها) اجازه نداشتند بروند
	conjecture/Guesswork: That must be Mina. آن باید مینا باشد	CONJECTURE/GUESSWORK FOR PAST: That must have been Mina. آن باید مینا بوده باشد
should/ought to/should have	obligation/propriety/recommendation: We should go. باید برویم	UNREALIZED PAST OBLIGATION OR PROPRIETY: We should have gone by now. تا حالا باید میرفتیم/لازم بود میرفتیم
need/need have	NECESSITY: You need to stay here. لازم است اینجا بمانی/باید اینجا بمانی	PAST NECESSITY: I needed to say that. لازم بود آن را بگویم
7	No NECESSITY: You needn't stay here. لازم نیست اینجا بمانی /مجبور نیستی اینجا بمانی	No NECESSITY IN PAST: You didn't need to say that./You needn't have said that. لازم نبود آن را بگوئی /مجبور نبودی آن را بگوئی
had better	PROPRIETY/RECOMMENDATION: You had better see him. بهتر است او را بیینید	PAST PROPRIETY (→ SEE 'SHOULD HAVE'): [You should have seen him.] بهتر بود او را می دیدید

may/may have/might/ might have	Possibility: He may/might come. شاید بیاید/مکان است بیاید/امکان دارد بیاید	PAST POSSIBILITY: He may/might have come. شاید آمده باشد/ممکن است آمده باشد/مکان دارد آمده باشد
	ASKING FOR PERMISSION: May I go? اجازه می دهید بروم؟/می توانم بروم؟/می شود بروم؟/ ممکن است بروم؟	
	GIVING PERMISSION: You may go now. حالا مي توانيل برويل	1
can/could/ could have/ be able to	ABILITY/INABILITY: I can [/I am able to] write./I can't [/I'm not able to] write.	PAST ABILITY/INABILITY: I could [/couldn't] write. می توانستم بنویسم/نمی توانستم بنویسم
	می توانم بنویسم /نمی توانم بنویسم	PAST ACCOMPLISHMENT/FAILURE TO ACCOMPLISH: I was able to [= managed to] write./I wasn't able to [= failed to] write. توانستم (/موفق شلام) بنويسم/توانستم (/موفق نشلام) بنويسم
	POSSIBILITY/IMPOSSIBILITY: It can [/can't]/could [/couldn't] get worse. مي تواند (/نمي تواند) بدتر بشود/ممكن است (/نيست) بدتر بشود	PAST POSSIBILITY/IMPOSSIBILITY: It can [/can²t]/could [/couldn't] have gotten worse. مي تواند (/نمي تواند) بدتر شده باشد/ممكن است (/نيست)
	SUGGESTION: We could pick another color. می توانیم رنگِ دیگری (را) انتخاب کنیم	SUGGESTION FOR PAST: We could have picked another color. می توانستیم رنگِ دیگری انتخاب کنیم
	ASKING FOR PERMISSION/REQUEST: Could I leave? اجازه می دهید بروم؟/می توانم بروم؟/می شود بروم؟!/ ممکن است بروم؟	
شود In this usage ا	الا In this usage عند (See also <i>impersonal</i> constructions in Unit 7.) ممكن است In this usage عند has the same meaning as است Always conjugated for third person.	igated for third person. (See also impersonal constructions in Unit 7.)

<sup>1</sup> In t

Persian
equivalents of
English modal
verbs
More on

subjunctive

I'd rather be a cat:

بیشتر دوست دارم (/ترجیح میدهم) یک گربه باشم.

I'd rather be a cat than a mouse:

I'd rather be on a trip than stay at home:

However, if you want to use the above verbs with nouns and not a second verb, you would need the prepositions برجیح دادن for respectively از and بیشتر دوست داشتن and بیشتر دوست داشتن

And how about *would* in a sense close to *used to* (repeated actions in the past)? In Persian you simply use the *past progressive*:

(Last year پارسال هر هفته به خانهٔ ما می آمد تا از مادرم فارسی یاد بگیرد. he would come/used to come to our house every day to learn Persian from my mother.)

او تندتر و تندتر پارو می زد، ولی قایق به ساحل نزدیک نمی شد. (He paddled/would paddle faster and faster, but the boat wouldn't get close to the shore.)

Could have also needs some attention:

• Sometimes it is closer to 'probability' (*may/might*), as when you say, 'Any student could have written that on the board.' The Persian translation would be:

 Sometimes it is about some very real possibility which was not realized, as when you say, 'Why did you talk to the officer like that? He could have arrested you.' Here you wouldn't use the past subjunctive, and 'He could have arrested you' should be translated as:

Finally, *let's*: For *let's* simply use 1*pl.*, *subj.* – although this can also be preceded by the imperative بیا/بیائید or بگذار/بگذارید (here گذاشتن in the sense of 'to allow'). Examples:

باید (bāyad) – different usages

```
. برویم شهر. (Let's go to the city.) برویم شهر (Let's not eat there any more.) دیگر آنجا غذا نخوریم. ([Come] let's watch this movie together.) بیا/بیائید این فیلم را با هم نگاه کنیم. (Let's ask him also.)
```

#### 4.2 شايد (shāyad) – with and without subjunctive

Since شاید can function as both an adverb (maybe/perhaps) and a modal (may/might), using the subjunctive after it is optional. The present tense would be almost the same as the subjunctive, and the perfect subjunctive would be pretty much the same as the present perfect tense; in both cases, however, using the subjunctive would slightly increase the uncertainty. Compare:

```
شاید نمی داند. (Maybe she doesn't know.) شاید نداند. (She may not know.) شاید رفته است. (Maybe she has gone.) شاید رفته باشد. (She may have gone.)
```

#### 4.3 باید (bāyad) – different usages

This is what we know so far about bāyad:

- A.  $b\bar{a}vad + subjunctive = \text{must/have to}$
- B.  $b\bar{a}yad + perfect subjunctive = must have$
- C.  $b\bar{a}yad + past progressive = had to$
- D.  $b\bar{a}yad + past progressive =$ should have
- E. See 7.2 for July in *impersonal* constructions.

(Note that C and D have the same form.)

Examples for the above usages:

- a) باید صورتش را ببینی تا شباهتها را بهتر تشخیص بدهی (You must see his face to better recognize/distinguish the similarities.)
- b) باید صورتش را دیده باشی چون درست جلو تو ایستاده بود (You must have seen his face, because he was standing right in front of you.)
- c) حتماً خوشحال نبودی از اینکه باید هرروز صورتش را می دیدی (You certainly weren't happy [with the fact] that you had to see his face every day.)
- d) وقتى كه خبر را شنيد بايد صورتش را مى ديدى! (You should have seen his face when he heard the news!)

Persian
equivalents of
English modal
verbs
More on
subjunctive

- a) باید به پلیس زنگ بزند و موضوع را بگوید (He has to call the police and tell/report the matter.)
- b) باید به پلیس زنگ زده باشد؛ الآن یک ماشین پلیس جلوِ در است (He must have called the police; a police car is in front of the door now.)
- c) برای چند هفته باید هرروز به پلیس زنگ میزد (For a few weeks he had to call the police every day.)
- d) باید به پلیس زنگ میزدی، چون تو مسئول بودی (You should have called the police, because you were responsible.)

#### 4.4 Some verbs after which you need the subjunctive

With only a few exceptions, almost all of these are verbs after which the infinitive (with or without *to*) is used in English. The most common of these verbs can be grouped in the following categories:

1. Verbs of needing, wanting, liking, preferring, being ready [to ...]: احتیاج داشتن، خواستن، دوست داشتن، ترجیح دادن، حاضر بودن نمی دانستم که می خواهد به ایران برود. احتیاج دارد [به اینکه] اقلاً هفته ای یک بار پدرش را ببیند.

2. Verbs of wishing, hoping, expecting, praying:

آرزو/امید/انتظار/توقّع داشتن، دعا/آرزو کردن، امیدوار/منتظر بودن آرزو میکنم هرگز در زندگی طعم خوشبختی را نچشند. دعا کنید که او زودتر از زندان آزاد شود. امیدوار بودم شما را هم در آن برنامه ببینم. آیا توقع داری همهٔ این حرفها را بشنود و هیچ چیزی نگوید؟

حاضر بود بميرد امّا زن آن مرد نشود.

The expression خدا کند (lit., 'may God grant it that ...') is practically the same (in meaning and usage) as I hope:

نكرده باشد (I hope he hasn't forgotten.) خدا كند فراموش نكرده باشد (I hope he won't find out.) خدا نكند بفهمد (= خدا كند نفهمد)

3. Verbs of trying, attempting:

سعى/تلاش/كوشش كردن، كوشيدن

رادیوی دشمن تلاش می کند با اخبارِ نادُرُست مردم را فریب بدهد. دویست سال قبل مردی در آلمان کوشید مثلِ پرندگان پرواز کند. چرا همهٔ مردم کوشش نمی کنند که شهر را تمیز نگه دارند؟ 4. Verbs of planning, deciding, intending:

قصد/خيال/در نظر داشتن، تصميم گرفتن

در نظر دارند اینجا یک مدرسهٔ خیلی بزرگتر بسازند. آیا قصد ندارید به نامهاش جواب بدهید؟ دولت تصمیم گرفت یاد گرفتن فارسی را برای اقلیّتها اجباری کند.

5. Verbs of arranging, being supposed to, being about to:

قرار گذاشتن/بودن، ترتیبی دادن، نزدیک بودن

در قرن گذشته چند بار نزدیک بود که جنگِ جهانیِ سوّم شروع شود. آیا قرار نبود مادرتان هم در این سفر با شماً باشد؟ ترتیبی دادیم که مادرش او را در فرودگاه ببیند.

6. Verbs of succeeding, managing, having the capability: توانستن (see also 4.1 above)، موفّق شدن، توفيق يافتن، قادر بودن/كردن

> وقتیکه عکس را دید، توانست همه چیز را به یاد بیاورد. هرگز این توفیق را نیافتم که پدرتان را قبل از مرگش ببینم. او قادر بود با هر دو دستش بنویسد.

7. Verbs of asking, requesting, pleading, demanding, commanding: خواهش کردن/داشتن، تقاضا کردن/داشتن، دستور دادن، التماس کردن

باید از او بخواهید که جلوِ خانمها حرفهای زشت نزند. خواهش می کنم دربارهٔ گذشتهام چیزی از من نپرسید. دولت نمی تواند به مردم دستور بدهد که خوشبخت باشند.

8. Verbs of suggesting, recommending, advising:

توصيه/پيشنهاد/نصيحت كردن

گربه توصیه کرد که موشها غذاهای سالم بخورند. پدرم پیشنهاد کرد بجای ادبیات، پزشکی بخوانم. خیلی نصیحتش کردیم که سیگار نکشد، ولی گوش نمی کرد.

9. Verbs of insisting, emphasizing:

اصرار کردن/داشتن، تأکید کردن

آنها اصرار دارند که او در آمریکا به دنیا نیامده است. اصرار نکن که حتماً شب به خانهٔ ما بیایند. خیلی تأکید کردم که دیرتر از ساعت ده برنگردد. Some verbs after which you need the subjunctive Persian equivalents of English modal verbs More on subjunctive

4

10. Verbs of encouraging, allowing, letting:

تشویق کردن، اجازه دادن/داشتن، مجاز کردن، گذاشتن

تو اجازه نداری با من اینطور حرف بزنی. شنیدنِ این خبر آنها را تشویق کرد که چند نامهٔ دیگر بفرستند. بگذار ببینیم دیگر چه دروغهائی دارد که بگوید.

11. Verbs of forbidding, banning, depriving:

منع/ممنوع کردن، محروم کردن (از)

The first three are the different ways you can say 'The mayor banned smoking in restaurants':

شهردار (این را) ممنوع کرد که کسی در رستورانها سیگار بکشد. شهردار این را که کسی در رستورانها سیگار بکشد ممنوع کرد. شهردار سیگار کشیدن در رستورانها را ممنوع کرد. معلم شاگردها را از نوشتن روی میز منع کرد. او را از تحصیل محروم کردند.

12. Verbs of convincing or being convinced, accepting, agreeing, approving, promising, swearing:

قانع کردن/شدن، تصویب کردن/شدن، موافقت کردن، قبول کردن، رضایت دادن، پذیرفتن، قسم خوردن

Note: with some of these verbs, the use of the subjunctive is not necessary if they are about some *fact* – and not *something that is to happen*.

قبول کرد/پذیرفت که غذا خوشمزه است. موافقت کردند که تا پنجشنبه بمانند. همسایهمان رضایت داد که دیوار را درست کند.

13. Verbs of deserving, being qualified, having the right:

شايسته/سزاوار/لايق بودن، شايستگى/لياقت داشتن، حق داشتن

او لیاقتِ آن را ندارد که دوست من باشد. شما حق دارید که این حرف را بگوئید. آیا سزاوار است که ما غذا برای خوردن نداشته باشیم؟ 14. Verbs of doubting, assuming, supposing, guessing:

شک کردن، شک/تردید داشتن، مطمئن نبودن، اطمینان نداشتن، تصور/گمان [نـ] کردن، حدس زدن

Note:

wouldn't need *subj*. when negative. And when شک is followed by شاید, it is شاید that determines whether *subj*. is needed or not (see شاید above, under 4.2).

and تصور, on the contrary, would always need *subj*. when negative, but sometimes when affirmative also.

can be followed by *subj*. or not, depending on the degree of uncertainty.

شک دارم/مطمئن نیستم/اطمینان ندارم که او مرده باشد. حدس نمیزدم که بخواهد آن کتاب را از من بگیرد. تصور/گمان میکنم که او این را گفته است (/گفته باشد).

15. Verbs of possibility and likelihood:

ممكن/غير ممكن بودن، امكان/احتمال داشتن، بعيد بودن

خیلی بعید است که او هنوز تو را به یاد داشته باشد. احتمال دارد که باز ازدواج کرده باشد. ممکن نست تا این ساعت بیدار باشند.

16. Verbs of obligation, urgency and necessity:

مجبور کردن/شدن، اجبار/الزام/لزوم/ضرورت داشتن، لازم/ضروری بودن

او را مجبور کردند که همهٔ کارها را با دست راستش بکند. شما اجباری ندارید که تا این ساعت بیدار بمانید. آیا واقعاً لازم/ضروری بود رنگ مویتان را تغییر بدهید؟

17. Verbs of remembering, forgetting, knowing/learning/teaching + how or other question words (the second verb subj. if English uses the infinitive; see Unit 14 for more details, see also Table 8.2):

به یاد آوردن، فراموش کردن، دانستن (که چطور/کجا/...)، یاد دادن/گرفتن، آموختن

به یاد آوردم که کتابش را به او بدهم. فراموش کردم گوشت بخرم. بچهها از او یاد گرفتند/آموختند که با دست غذا نخورند. Some verbs after which you need the subjunctive Persian equivalents of English modal verbs More on subjunctive

4

18. Verbs of beginning, starting:

شروع کردن، آغاز کردن

Note: using *subj*. is only one of the possible structures here; see below the different ways of saying 'The professor started to speak,' with *subj*. being the last choice:

استاد شروع به صحبت کرد. استاد صحبت را شروع کرد. استاد شروع کرد (به این) که صحبت کند.

19. Verbs of causing, leading to:

باعث/موجب/سبب (باعثِ.../موجبِ.../سببِ...) شدن، (به...) انجامیدن/ منجر شدن

اطلاعاتِ غلطِ او باعث/موجب/سبب شد که راه را گم کنیم. شکست این کشور در جنگ منجر به آن شد که رئیس جمهورش تغییر کند.

20. Verbs of daring, having the courage, or fearing, worrying, being too shy or feeling embarrassed:

ترسیدن، ترس داشتن، نگران بودن، خجالت کشیدن، جرئت کردن، جرئت داشتن

خجالت می کشد دربارهٔ آن موضوع صحبت کند. دانشجویان جرئت نکردند به استاد بگویند که زیپش باز است. نمی ترسی (که/از اینکه) او دوباره برگردد؟

21. Verbs of hastening, being in a hurry:

عجله کر دن/داشتن

هیچ عجلهای ندارم که همین امروز او را ببینم. عجله کردیم که او را زودتر به بیمارستان ببریم.

22. Verbs of getting used to, being easy or difficult:

(به...) عادت کر دن/داشتن، سخت/آسان بو دن

عادت دارد روزی چند ساعت با دوستش تلفنی صحبت کند. کار آسانی نیست که کسی در زمستان در این دریاچه شنا کند.

#### Too...to and enough to

#### 4.5 Subjunctive in certain adjectival clauses

In the last examples above (being easy/difficult to...) we have in fact adjectival clauses, and using the subjunctive in adjectival clauses is very common, especially with interrogative or negative general statements. Compare the following:

(All children are naughty.) همهٔ بچّهها شیطانند. (Is there any child who isn't naughty?) آیا بچّهای هست که شیطان نباشد. (There's no child who isn't naughty.) هیچ بچّهای نیست که شیطان نباشد. (I'm reading a book.) دارم کتاب میخوانم. (I have a book to read.) کتابی دارم که خیلی جالب است. (I have a book which is very interesting.) کتابی دارم که خیلی جالب است. (Give me a book which is more interesting.)

#### 4.6 Too... to and enough to

a) For 'too . . . to' in Persian you need: a comparative adj./adv. + از آن . . . که subj.

#### Examples:

او جوانتر از آن است که این چیزها را بفهمد. (He is too young to understand these things.)

.کند. (He is too smart to make او زرنگتر از آن است که چنین اشتباهی بکند.

او بهتر از آن من را می شناسد که دربارهٔ من چنین فکری بکند. me too well to think of me in such a way [/to have such thoughts about me].)

He knows) او بیش/بیشتر از آن دربارهٔ موضوع می داند که به پلیس نگوید. too much about that matter not to tell the police.)

(This bird این پرنده تندتر از آن پرواز می کند که بتوانم عکسش را بگیرم. flies too fast for me to be able to take its picture.)

Note: in this structure, if you don't use *subj.*, the meaning would totally change: in the English translation you would simply use a comparative adjective and no infinitive. Compare the following with the first two examples above:

او جوانتر از آن است که مادرش می گوید. (He is younger than [what] his mother says.)

.او زرنگتر از آن است که شما فکر می کنید. (He is smarter than [what] you think.)

Persian
equivalents of
English modal
verbs
More on
subjunctive

**b)** For '*enough to* . . .' in Persian you need: که + *adj./adv.* + a verb + اَنقدر.

Instead of به اندازهٔ کافی or آن اندازه or به اندازهٔ کافی) 'to the sufficient extent or amount').

In this structure, the verb takes the main stress, and that is why if you are using the verb *to be*, you would need its longer, 'hast' version (for emphasis). Without the stress on the verb, the meaning would change to 'so much that' or 'to the extent that' – and no subjunctive would then be necessary (nor the longer version of to be). Compare:

- او آنقدر زرنگ است که همه چیز را می فهمد. (He is so smart that he understands everything.)
- He is smart enough to) او آنقدر زرنگ هست که این چیزها را بفهمد. understand these things.)
- او آنقدر عاقل است که چنین اشتباهی نمیکند. (He is so wise that he wouldn't make such a mistake.)
- او آنقدر عاقل هست که چنین اشتباهی نکند. (He is wise enough not to make such a mistake.)
- (You have so شما آنقدر پول دارید که هر سال تابستان به سفر میروید. much money that you travel in summer every year.)
- You have enough) شما آنقدر پول دارید که تابستانِ امسال به سفر بروید. money to travel this summer.)

#### 4.7 Conjunctions that need the subjunctive

Some conjunctions – like the conditional if (I/16) and some of the conjunctions used in time clauses (I/18) – can be followed by the subjunctive; but there are some that always require the use of the subjunctive, like those meaning before (ij), see I/18.2), or those meaning in order to (see Unit 12 for different usages of ij). Here are a few more examples.

a) The prepositions بيجاى and بيدون (both meaning 'without') as well as بيجاى ('instead of') can all be used as conjunctions by adding أنكه (see I/17.2 for the rule) – and then they would always need the subjunctive. Examples:

او دو هفته بی غذا/بدونِ غذا زنده ماند. او دو هفته بی آنکه/بدونِ آنکه غذا بخورد زنده ماند. ما بجایِ تماشای فیلمِ جنگ و صلح، کتابش را خواندیم. ما بجایِ آنکه فیلمِ جنگ و صلح را تماشا کنیم، کتابش را خواندیم.

Exercises

**b)** The correlative conjunctions ...  $\Rightarrow [kh\bar{a}h ... kh\bar{a}h ...]$  and ...  $\Rightarrow [che ... che ...]$ , both meaning 'whether ... or ...,' would always need the subjunctive:

c) The same applies to (که) or ...(که) or ...(هر قدر (که) (and the more formal versions هر آنچه که or هر آنچه که all meaning 'whatever'/ 'no matter what/how' or 'however much that') when used for what is to happen next. Compare:

```
. no subj. here! هر چه گفت، هیچ جوابی ندادم. here subj.! - هرچه بگوئی به او خواهم گفت. هرقدر بخواهی، دارم.
```

#### **Exercises**

#### Exercise 4.1

Start the following sentences with ديروز and make the necessary changes in the verbs, then translate the sentence. Example:

او را تشویق می کنم که به ایران برگردد.  $\rightarrow$  Yesterday I encouraged him to go back to Iran.)

- ۱. پیشنهاد میکنم نامه را تمام کند.
- ۲. شاید با دوستش به کتابخانه برود.
- ۳. سعی میکنیم غذای خوشمزهتری درست کنیم.
- ۴. باید چهار صفحهٔ دیگر از آن کتاب را ترجمه کند.
  - ۵. ترجیح میدهم در خانه بمانم و درس بخوانم.
  - ع. دوست دارم چند ساعت در هوای آزاد راه بروم.
    - ٧. لازم است از دكترت دربارهٔ قرصها سؤال كني.
      - ۸ قرار است دوستم را به فرودگاه ببرم.
- ۹. می ترسم پدرم بگوید که پول دانشگاهم را نخواهد داد.
- ۱۰. رئیسم قصد دارد ما را دو ساعت زودتر به خانه بفرستد.

Persian equivalents of English modal verbs More on subjunctive

#### Exercise 4.2

In the following sentences change the first verb to negative (and make other changes if necessary); then translate. Example:

اطمینان دارم که خودش خبر دارد  $\rightarrow$  I'm not sure if he himself knows [about it].)

- ۱. در هفتهٔ اول ممكن است در شهر دیگری باشم.
- ۲. آیا از تو خواستهاند نامه را فقط بیاوری و خودت نخوانی؟
  - ٣. آيا مي دانيد دخترم چطور فارسي ياد گرفته است؟
    - ۴. فکر میکنم روزِ شنبه از ایران برمی گردند.
    - ۵. فكر مى كرد من هنوز با زنِ اوّلم زندگى مى كنم.
      - ع. شک داشتیم که بخواهند فقط دو روز بمانند.
        - ۷. آیا قبول دارید که کارتان اشتباه بوده است؟
  - ۸. خیلی سعی کردیم او را قانع کنیم که خودش را نکشد.
    - ۹. تردید دارم که هنوز در آن شهر باشد.
    - ۱۰. پدرش اوّل اجازه می داد آن دوستش را ببیند.

#### Exercise 4.3

Fill out the blanks by using the correct form of the verb in the question, then translate the answers only. Example:

'......?' – 'آن مقاله را نوشتی؟' – 'نه، قصد دارم مقالهٔ دیگری ......  $\rightarrow$  آبن مقاله را (No, I intend to write another article.)

- ۱. 'دخترتان گربه دارد؟' 'نه، و امیدوارم هرگز ..........
- ٢. 'غذا خوردهای؟' 'نه، ولي قرار است با مينا ..........
- ٣. 'كتاب را خواندى؟' 'هنوز نه، ولى هفتهٔ آينده آن را ...........
- ۵. 'با بابک حرف زدهای؟' 'امروز نه، ولی دیروز داشتم با او .............
  - ع. 'پروين ماشينت را خريد؟' 'نه، ولي شايد مينا آن را ...........
    - ٧. امكان دارد خانه نباشد؟ 'نه، حتماً امروز خانه ...........

#### Exercises

#### Exercise 4.4

Write the correct form of the verb based on the English translation. Example:

است (You should have بايد زودتر .....(اَمدن)، الأَن خيلي دير است come earlier; it's too late now.)

- می آمدی →
- 1. باید زودتر از ما ...... (آمدن)، ماشینش را می بینم (She must have come earlier than us; I see her car.)
- In) در این شغل جدید، باید صبحها خیلی زودتر به اداره ....... (آمدن) .2. this new job, he had to come to the office much earlier in the morning.)
- 3. (تمام کردن) .....(Tou have to finish your studies this year.)
- 4. يايد درست را ...... (تمام كردن) كه به ازدواج فكر مىكنى (You must have finished your studies as you're thinking about marriage.)
- 5. باید درست را ..... (تمام کردن) تا حالا راحت باشی (You should have finished your studies so that you could be at ease now.)
- 6. (تمام کردن)? (Did you have to finish your studies this same year?)
- 7. باید یک ساعت .....(شنا کردن) تا گرسنه شوید (You must swim for one hour to get hungry.)
- 8. أنجا اوّل بايد ...... (شنا كردن) و بعد درس مى خوانديم (There we had to swim first and then study.)
- 9. (شنا كردن) (She must have swum as far as the other side [/bank] of the river.)
- 10. باید (صبر کردن) تا هوا تاریک شود (You [sg.] have to wait until it gets dark.)
- 11. کار بدی کردی که زودتر رفتی، باید ............. (صبر کردن) که همه با هم (It was a bad thing you did that you left earlier; you should have waited for us all to go together.)
- 12. أيا هميشه بايد ...... (صبر كردن) تا به تو تلفن بزنند؟ (Did you always have to wait until they called you?)
- 13. (صبر کردن) ..... (صبر کردن) خسته به نظر می رسی، باید خیلی (You look tired; you must have waited a lot.)
- 14. حالا ديگر بايد ..... (فهميدن) كه آن حرفها دروغ بوده (You [pl.] must have understood by now that those words had been lies.)
- 15. تو که برادرش هستی باید ...... (فهمیدن) چرا این کار را می کند (You who are his brother should have understood why he was doing this.)

Persian equivalents of English modal verbs More on subjunctive

#### Exercise 4.5

Translate these sentences into English.

- . آنقدر زرنگ هست که زن خوبی پیدا کند.
  - ٢. هوا آنقدر سرد هست كه پالتو بپوشي.
- ۳. آنقدر نزدیک هستند که حرفهای ما را بشنوند.
  - ۴. آنقدر گرسنه هستم که غذا بخورم.
- ۵. آنقدر احمق هستی که این اشتباه را باز هم تکرار کنی.
  - ع. آنقدر ضعیف هست که نتواند راه برود.
    - ٧. بچه آنقدر خسته هست که بخوابد.
- ۸. من آن قدر پول دارم که برای دخترم یک ماشین بخرم.
  - ٩. آنقدر حرف زد که منظورش را بفهمیم.
  - ۱۰. آنقدر این خانه را دوست دارم که آن را نفروشم.
- ۱۱. آنقدر بچهاش را دوست دارد که برایش لباس نو بخرد.
  - ۱۲. آنقدر خودخواه هست که آن را باور کند.

#### Exercise 4.6

In the sentences from Exercise 4.5, change  $\bar{a}nghadr...ke$  ('enough') to bish  $az \ \bar{a}n...ke$  ('too') without changing the meaning (this will require changes in the affirmative/negative also). Then translate into English. Example:

- He has studied) آنقدر خوب درس خوانده است که در امتحان قبول شود. well enough to pass the test.)
- $\rightarrow$  بیش از آن درس خوانده است که در امتحان قبول نشود.  $\leftarrow$  studied too well to fail [/not to pass] the test.)

ماهی را هر وقت از آب بگیری تازه است.

Whenever you catch the fish, it's fresh.

(= It's not too late yet; don't give up/let's do it.)

## فصل ۵ | UNIT FIVE

اگر، مگر، وگرنه، انگار | If, unless; otherwise, as if

باز هم دربارهٔ شرطیها | More on conditionals

#### [ágar, if] اگر 5.1 Some substitutes for

in time clauses, وقتیکه While وقتیکه often appears to be little different from اگر we can have a stronger, more emphatic 'condition' by using conjunctions that mean provided that, namely:

They are not very common in the past ('irrealis') conditions – especially never placed at the beginning of the sentence - and they would always need the subjunctive.

The conjunction در صورتی که (in case, in the event that) is also very close to this group, though not as strong (and, therefore, the use of the subjunctive is not obligatory).

To say 'I'll buy you that shirt provided that you study well,' you can use one of the following forms:

> به شرطی که خوب درس بخوانی، آن پیرهن را برایت می خرم. آن پیرهن را به شرطی که خوب درس بخوانی برایت می خرم. آن ییرهن را به شرطی برایت می خرم که خوب درس بخوانی. آن پیرهن را برایت می خرم، به شرطی که خوب درس بخوانی.

در صورتی که can also be used in a similar way:

or it can be used as a synonym of در حالی که meaning whereas/while (see I/18.5) – and always at the beginning of the second clause in this sense:

# More on conditionals If, unless; otherwise, as if

5

#### [mágar, if not; unless] مگر

اگر or just مگر اینکه/آنکه) can be used as the negative of الاثناء) in conditional sentences. It has, however, one major difference from the English *unless*: it always introduces the second clause and is never at the beginning of a sentence when used in the sense of *unless*. Compare:

اگر تو بروی، من هم میروم. اگر تو نروی، من هم نمیروم. من نمیروم مگر اینکه تو هم بروی.

#### 5.2.1 Other uses of 🛼

a) is used in questions to show disbelief or surprise (or protest, indignation) – this means that you normally expect to hear the opposite of what you are saying (regarding affirmative/negative).

?means 'Was he there او آنجا بود؟

estill means 'Was he there?' although it is more like 'But was he really there?' and shows that you expect to hear: نه، نبود (No, he wasn't).

ا مگر او آنجا نبود؟ (Wasn't he there?) would have the opposite effect; it is closer to 'But he was there, wasn't he?' and you expect to hear: چرا، بود (Yes, he was). (For چرا، بود a negative question see I/4.8). Examples:

چرا جواب نمی دهی؟ مگر زبانت را گربه خورده است؟ چرا به پلیس ندارد؟ چرا به پلیس ندارد؟ چرا عصبانی می شوی؟ مگر من چه گفتم؟ همه دارند می دوند، مگر چه اتّفاقی افتاده؟

This usage of ﷺ is similar to a usage of ﷺ, and sometimes they are used for emphasis in two consecutive sentences which only differ in using affirmative and negative – the affirmative form of one has the effect of the negative form of the other, and vice versa:

مگر نیامد؟ او که آمد! (But didn't he come? He did come, alright?) او که نمی داند! مگر می داند؟ (But he doesn't know – or does he?)

The adverb آخر ( $\bar{a}khar$ ) is also close in certain ways to مگر /که when used as a filler to justify a situation. Examples:

مگر [mágar, if not; unless]

(But why didn't you ask me?) آخر چرا از من نپرسیدی؟ (I didn't go; it was already dark.) نوفتم، آخر دیگر تاریک شده بود.

b) The interrogative phrase (مگر نه [magar na] is used in colloquial Persian in a way similar to the English question tags.

او را می شناسی، مگر نه؟ (- بله، می شناسم./- نه، نمی شناسم.) You know him, don't you? (- Yes, I do./- No, I don't.)

این مقاله را نخوانده بودی، مگر نه؟ (- چرا، خوانده بودم./- نه، نخوانده بودم.) You hadn't read this article, had you? (- Yes, I had./- No, I hadn't.)

c) Sometimes مگر is simply a preposition meaning except or other than
– its synonyms being غير از ,جُز/بجُز and الاً – as in these examples:

همه آمدند مگر (/بجز/غیر از/الًا) پرویز. هیچ کاری نمیکند مگر (/بجز/غیر از/الًا) خوردن و خوابیدن.

It would be wrong to conclude from the equation 'مگر اینکه' except' that 'مگر اینکه' can always be used for except that: if you are using except that to show a difference (= with the difference that/but for the fact that), then the appropriate Persian equivalent would be: با این فرق که or با این تفاوت که Examples:

دُرُست مثلِ مادرش است، با این تفاوت که قدّش بلندتر است. هوای اینجا مثل تهران است، با این فرق که خیلی تمیزتر است.

In most of the other cases, *except that* can be translated into Persian as معند از اینکه الا ا

آنجا هیچ کاری نکردیم بجز اینکه (/غیر از اینکه/الّا اینکه) خوردیم و خوابیدیم. چیزی از او نخواستم بجز اینکه (/غیر از اینکه/الّا اینکه) درسهایش را بهتر بخواند.

And sometimes you can just use the word نتها (or تنها in more formal language, both meaning *only*) as in these examples:

مقالهٔ خوبی نوشته ای، فقط کمی طولانی است. قصد داشتم به شما بگویم، فقط پیدایتان نکردم.

Using مگر اینکه in the above examples would not be possible.

# More on onditionals

conditionals

If, unless;
otherwise,
as if

#### [va gar na, otherwise; if not so; or else] وگرنه

As in English, وگرنه [or اگر نه otherwise] is usually not used at the beginning of a sentence. Two common synonyms are  $[va\ el.l\bar{a}]$  and در غيرِ اين صورت  $[va\ el.l\bar{a}]$  and در غيرِ اين صورت  $[dar\ gheyr-e\ in\ surat]$ . Examples:

باید دستهایت را بشوئی، وگرنه اجازه نمی دهم غذا بخوری. بگو بچهها با کبریت بازی نکنند، وگرنه تمام خانه آتش می گیرد. باید کار را تمام کنی؛ در غیر این صورت، به تو پول نخواهند داد. باید صبح تا شب درس بخوانی، و الا قبول نمی شوی.

#### [engār, as if] انگار 5.4

and the more formal or literary. گوئی – do not need the subjunctive, because what is expressed after them is treated as some pseudo-fact:

طوری با من حرف می زنی انگار (که) من احمقم. آنقدر لاغر شده ای که انگار یک هفته است غذا نخورده ای. انگار حرفهای یک هفته پیشِ خودت را فراموش کرده ای. بعد از جنگ همه چیز را از نو ساختند، گوئی هیچ اتّفاقی نیفتاده است.

#### 5.4.1 To look as if

The verbs نمودن (all meaning 'to look, to seem, to appear') need the subjunctive when negative, but normally no subjunctive when affirmative, unless you want to decrease the likelihood when talking about what is going to happen next. (See also I/14.2.4.) Compare:

به نظر می رسد که حالت خوب نیست. به نظر نمی رسد که امشب غذای خوشمزهای داشته باشیم.

#### 5.5 More on tenses in counterfactual conditionals

We know that there are only two tenses that can be used in counterfactual conditionals: *past progressive* and *past perfect*. (See I/16.2.) We also learned that the *past progressive* is the more common of the two tenses, especially in the main clause. Here we can add that the *past perfect* is usually not used in the main clause if

Exercises

- it has the nature of some general statement (whether true or false);
- some frequency adverb (always, every day, etc.) is mentioned; or
- the tense of the first verb (in the if-clause) is *past progressive* and the action of the verb in the main clause could not have happened *before* that.

In the following examples of counterfactual conditionals, the tense of the verb in the main clause cannot be *past perfect*:

اگر خدائی میبود، اینهمه مردم در بدبختی زندگی نمی کردند. اگر میدانستم از ایران رفته (است)، هر روز به خانهاش تلفن نمیزدم. اگر در سفارتخانه را باز می کردند، مردم از دیوار بالا نمی رفتند.

#### **Exercises**

#### Exercise 5.1

Combine the two sentences by using مگر اینکه ('unless'); then translate. Example:

آن را می آورم. خیلی سنگین نیست. → مگر اینکه خیلی سنگین باشد. (I'll bring it unless it's too heavy.)

- ۱. فردا بر می گردد. مادرش اجازه می دهد.
- ۲. مادر بزرگ گفت به تو نخواهم گفت. نمی گذاری تو را ببوسم.
  - ۳. او انتخاب می شود. مردم عقل ندارند.
  - ۴. این غذا را نمی خورم. خیلی گرسنه نیستم.
  - ۵. برای او کار نمی کنم. خودش نمی خواهد.
  - ع. امروز در رستوران غذا میخورم. شوهرم آشپزی نکرده است.
- ۷. تو را دوست نخواهد داشت. هرچیزی که می گوید قبول نمی کنی.
  - ۸. در آن خانه زندگی نخواهیم کرد. مجبور نیستیم.
  - ٩. دیگر با او حرف نخواهم زد. از من عذرخواهی نمی کند.
  - ۱۰. به تو احترام خواهند گذاشت. نمی دانند که شغلت چیست.

#### Exercise 5.2

Translate the following into English.

- ۱. به تو اعتماد دارم، وگرنه این را به تو نمی گفتم.
- ۲. بچههایم کوچک هستند، وگرنه می توانستم کار کنم.

More on conditionals If, unless; otherwise, as if

- ٣. ديروز خبر نداشت، وگرنه آنقدر نمي خنديد.
- ۴. باید پنجره را باز بگذاری، وگرنه اتاق خیلی گرم می شود.
- ۵. باید میوه و سبزی بیشتر بخوری، وگرنه حالت بهتر نمی شود.
  - ع. ایرانیها آدمهای تنبلی هستند، وگرنه اینقدر شاعر نداشتند.
    - ۷. میخواهم به ایران بروم، وگرنه فارسی یاد نمی گرفتم.
  - ٨. أن مصاحبه را بخوان، وگرنه او را خوب نخواهي شناخت.
    - ٩. به ما دروغ گفته است، وگرنه خودش هم ميآمد.
    - ۱۰. مردم او را دوست دارند، وگرنه به او رأی نمی دادند.

#### Exercise 5.3

In the sentences from the previous exercise (5.2), begin the first clause with اگر ('if') and delete وگرنه ('otherwise'); other changes might also be necessary. Then translate. Example:

باید آن کار را به تو بدهد، وگرنه آدمِ احمقی است  $\rightarrow$  (If he doesn't give you that job, he is a stupid person.)

#### Exercise 5.4

Choose one of the words/conjunctions:

to fill in the blanks in the following sentences, then translate the sentence. Example:

 $\rightarrow$  انگار (It seems that tomorrow is going to be a very cold day.)

- ۱. .....وقت داری می گویم.
- ١. ماشينم خراب بود، .....ميآمدم.
- ٣. خيلي عصباني بود، ..... فهميده بود.
- ۴. من هم او را خواهم دید، .....اصلاً نیاید.
  - ۵. مىخواستم بگويم، ...... جرئت نكردم.

Exercises

- ع. .....نمى دانست چرا گفت مى داند؟
- ٧. من هم همان حرف شما را گفتم، ..... توهين نكردم.
  - ٨. امروز هم خواهم آمد، ...... كمي ديرتر.
  - ۹. باید به او کمک کنم ...... تمام نخواهد کرد.
    - ۱۰. .....نمی دانستی که او ازدواج کرده؟

#### Exercise 5.5

Provide the correct form of the verb, then translate. Example:

دیگر او را هرگز نخواهم دید، مگر اینکه او به خوابِ من ........... (آمدن) دیگر او را هرگز نخواهم دید، مگر اینکه او به خوابِ من (I'll never see him again unless he comes/appears in my dream.)

- اگر آن کتاب را ...... (نـ + خواندن، .2sg) بهتر است امروز به کلاس نروی.
- ۲. امیدوارم به او زنگ بزند، وگرنه برادرش هرگز ...... (نـ + فهمیدن).

  - ۴. این هیچ شباهتی به پارتی ندارد، مگر اینکه شما صدای موسیقی را بلندتر ............ (کردن).
  - ۵. اگر ...... (نـ + خواستن، .3sg) کتاب را بخرد، باید از کتابخانهٔ عمومی قرض می گرفت.
  - ۶. اگر تو را ندیده بودم، ...... (فکر کردن، Isg.) اتفاق بدی افتاده است.
- ٧. اگر خانه آتش مي گرفت، ...... (دانستن) چطور آن را خاموش كنيد؟
  - ۸. اگر ...... (در نظر داشتن، .2pl) با او ازدواج کنید، این کار را همین امسال بکنید.
- ۹. با او ازدواج نخواهم کرد، مگر اینکه خیلی ...... (اصرار کردن، .3sg).
  - ۱۰. اگر فردا شما طلاق ....... (گرفتن)، آیا بچّه از داشتنِ پدر یا مادر محروم نمی شود؟

More on conditionals If, unless; otherwise,

5

#### Exercise 5.6

Translate the following into Persian; some of the words you can use have been given at the end of the exercise.

- 1. Don't call me again if you hate me so much.
- 2. I won't write that letter unless he earnestly begs.
- 3. Unless you succeed in finding the mouse, I wouldn't dare sleep in this room.
- 4. They shouldn't drink this water if they haven't boiled it first.
- 5. He is a good person; otherwise he wouldn't have given you your money.
- 6. Is it bad if the color of one eye differs from that of the other?
- 7. My parents are not much different, except that they are younger.
- 8. How did you tell them what you wanted if you didn't know the language?
- 9. Don't tell her about it if you don't want everybody to know.
- 10. It looks as if they are encouraging him to go back to Iran.

اینقدر/بد آمدن/زنگ زدن/التماس کردن/موفّق شدن/موش/پیدا کردن/جرئت کردن/جوشاندن/نوشیدن/آدم/پول/دادن/رنگ/چشم/فرق داشتن/جوان/ زبان/دانستن/فهمیدن/همه/دربارهٔ/به نظر رسیدن/تشویق کردن

در خانه اگر کس است، یک حرف بس است.

If there's someone home, one word is enough.

(= I don't care if you don't follow my advice.)

#### UNIT SIX |

Causative form
Optative mood
Past participle as verb
Deleting a similar verb
Regulars on the march!

شکل سببی شکل دعائی اسم مفعول در مقام فعل حذف فعل مشابه پیشروی افعال باقاعده

#### 6.1 Causative form

This is a very common form used to make causative/transitive verbs from intransitive verbs (or occasionally to give a causative sense to an already transitive verb).

The formation is quite regular: you add the suffix علىن ( $-\bar{a}ndan$ ) to the present stem (sometimes these verbs have a more formal or literary version also with the suffix عليدن [ $-\bar{a}nidan$ ]). The resulting verb is also always regular. To get the present stem, you only drop -dan (or -idan) from the end of the new infinitive.

Note 1: Not all the verbs have this causative form.

Note 2: Not all the infinitives ending in  $-\bar{a}ndan$  are the causative form of another infinitive – which means that some can even be intransitive (like  $|m\bar{a}ndan|$ , to stay). But the great majority of them are.

Note 3: The verb نشستن (neshastan, to sit, pres. stem neshin) uses the shortened causative form نشاندن (neshāndan, to cause to sit). Also, in colloquial Persian you hear the causative/transitive form شكاندن (shekāndan) for the verb شكستن (shekastan, to break, both tr. and intr.).

#### Examples:

.سلام مرا (= من را) به خانواده تان برسانید. (Say hello from me./Give my greetings to your family.)

ا برنگرداند. (He returned yesterday but did not return my book.)

(Can you feed this food to the child?) مي تواني اين غذا را به بچّه بخوراني؟

Causative form
Optative mood
Past participle
as verb
Deleting a
similar verb
Regulars on
the march!

**Table 6.1: How causative verbs are formed** (from left to right)

Simple Infi (often intra			Causative Infinitive (always transitive)	
INFINITIVE	PRES. STEM	+ -ĀNDAN (-ĀNIDAN)	INFINITIVE	PRES. STEM
خوردن to eat	خور khor		خوراندن (خورانيدن) khorāndan (khorānidan), to feed; to cause to eat	خوران khorān
خوابیدن to sleep	خواب khāb		خواباندن (خوابانیدن) خ khābāndan (khābānidan), to put to bed; to cause to sleep	خوابان khābān
رسیدن to reach	رس res		رساندن (رسانیدن) resāndan (resānidan), to cause to reach; to deliver	رسان resān
برگشتن to return (intr.)	برگرد bargard		بر گر داندن bargardāndan, to [cause to] return (tr.)	برگردان bargardān
ایستادن to stand	ایست ist		ایستان <i>دن</i> <i>istāndan</i> , to cause to stand	ایستان istān
دو یدن to run	دو dow/dav		دواندن davāndan, to cause to run	دوان davān
پری <i>دن</i> to fly	پر par		پراندن parāndan, to cause to fly	پران parān
پوشیدن to wear	پوش push		پوشاندن <i>pushāndan</i> , to cause to wear; to cover	پوشان pushān
ترسیدن to fear	ترس tars		ترساندن tarsāndan, to scare	ترسان tarsān

#### 6.2 Optative mood

An outmoded mood now, it was used in early modern Persian as a form of prayer, for wishing and cursing. In poetical/archaic language you can still encounter examples of this, which mostly consist of changing the third

Past participle as verb

person -ad ending to - $\bar{a}d$ . Thus, دهاد ( $dah\bar{a}d$ ) and کناد ( $kon\bar{a}d$ ) would be the optative forms of respectively  $d\bar{a}dan$  and kardan.

The only verb whose *optative* mood is still widely used is the verb بو دن (to be), its irregular optative form being بادا  $(b\bar{a}d$ , sometimes بادا  $[b\bar{a}d\bar{a}]$  in poetry, meaning 'May [it] be . . .'), especially common in the expression 'Long live . . . :'

```
ازنده باد آزادی! (Long live freedom!) (نده باد آزادی! (proverb:] Come what may!/Whatever will be, will be!)
```

#### 6.3 Past participle as verb

Sometimes a past participle alone – without being part of a perfect tense or structure – is used as a verb.

#### is deleted است 6.3.1 When

In the third person singular of the present perfect tense, colloquial Persian always drops است – this happens often enough in more formal, written Persian as well – thus leaving the past participle behind: پدرم اَمده instead of پدرم اَمده (My father has come). This is probably the only case where using a single past participle as verb is acceptable in all levels of language and is not considered 'bad' or careless Persian.

#### 6.3.2 'Having not yet . . .'

Another 'acceptable' case is one in which the past participle is negative and is used in the sense of 'having not yet...' (which can also be seen as a shortened version of a Persian equivalent for *had hardly/scarcely...* when...; see 12.4).

In this usage, regardless of the negative *na*- that usually takes the main stress, the stress is on the last syllable of the past participle, and no  $\frac{1}{2}$  (and) follows it. Examples:

است. (Having barely opened the door, he shouted that he was hungry. Or: Scarcely had he opened the door when . . .)

هنوز الفبای کار را یاد نگرفته، می خواست به اندازهٔ تو حقوق بگیرد. (Having barely learned the ABCs of the job, he wanted to get a salary as high as yours.)

The following examples (still negative, with final stress, and no va) are very close to the ones above:

6

Causative form
Optative mood
Past participle
as verb
Deleting a
similar verb
Regulars on
the march!

(Where are you going without having eaten?) غذا نخورده کجا داری میروی؟

نمی گذارم پولِ من را نداده از اینجا برود. (I won't let him leave this place before he gives me [/not having given me] my money.)

#### 6.3.3 To be avoided: participial absolute

In written Persian, especially in official/administrative language, you often come across another usage of past participle (or *participial absolute*) as verb, a practice hated and avoided by writers of 'good' Persian.

In its most acceptable (or least hated) version, the rule is to change one or more verbs (of the same tense) in a longer sentence to past participles and only keep the verb at the end of the sentence in its finite form – which will also determine the tense and person of the past participles. It is recommended to drop the conjunction 'and' when a finite verb changes to a past participle, but this is often neglected, to make things worse. Example:

Normal sentence:

(We returned home and ate.) به خانه برگشتیم و غذا خوردیم.

After the change (not recommended!):

is what خوردیم خانه برگشته غذا خوردیم. (Same meaning; here خوردیم)

Still worse would be keeping the conjunction:

And still worse would be using this form when verbs are not of the same tense and/or person, which can be confusing as well.

#### 6.4 Deleting a similar verb

Here also you usually keep the finite verb at the end of the sentence and somehow 'shorten' or delete the verb(s) before it in longer sentences, which is done in two ways: deleting similar auxiliary verbs and deleting similar verbal parts of compound verbs. Deleting other verbs, or the verb at the end of the sentence, is much less common, and deleting verbs that are not similar is considered a grammatical mistake.

This is also a feature common in written Persian only – and not much loved even there.

Regulars on the march!

Examples (with deleted verbs in brackets):

```
او خیلی زودتر از ما آمده (بود) و غذا خورده بود.
آن نامه نوشته (شده است) و برای آنها فرستاده شده است.
آنها با همه صحبت (کردند) و دربارهٔ مشکلات تحقیق کردند.
بعداً پنجرهها باز (شدند) و اتاقها تمیز شدند.
پدرم به اصفهان (رفت) و از آنجا به شیراز رفت.
او به جنوب فرانسه رفت و از آنجا به ایتالیا (رفت).
```

#### 6.5 Regulars on the march!

In the course of its simplification, modern Persian has been moving away from simple, irregular verbs. The two main strategies have been:

- a) using compound verbs with only a few verbs mainly څدن and شدن ;
- b) making regular verbs out of the irregular ones.

The latter strategy requires adding *-idan* to the present stem of the verb. The irregular verb is then usually used in written/literary language only, and the present stem for both versions of the verb would be the same.

#### Examples for a):

```
آلودن [āludan, to pollute, to dirty] ألوده كردن/شدن → [āludan, to make or get dirty and polluted] ألودن [khastan, to wound (obsolete)] خستن [khaste kardan/shodan, to make or get tired]
```

#### Examples for b):

In the case of *kuftan/kubidan*, their past participles give the names of two famous Persian dishes: کوفته [*kufte*, ball of ground meat mixed with other ingredients, in other countries known as *kufta*, *kofta* or *köfte*] and کوبیده [*kubide*, skewer of ground meat kebab].

## Causative form

6

Optative mood Past participle as verb Deleting a similar verb Regulars on the march!

#### **Exercises**

#### Exercise 6.1

Provide the causative form of the same verb used in the first part of each sentence (all simple past tense, except one imperative and one subjunctive); then translate. Example:

موضوع را نمی فهمید، ولی من به او ..... ightarrow فهماندم (He didn't understand the subject, but I made him understand.)

- نمی خواستم برگردم، ولی او به زور مرا ......
- از همان غذائي كه خودش مي خورد به بيّه .....
- من معمولاً از سگ نمی ترسم، ولی این سگ خیلی مرا ...........
  - قبل از اینکه خودش بخوابد، همهٔ بچهها را .....
  - خیلی دیر رسیدند و بالاخره آن نامه را به من .....
    - ع. ابن سگ باید خیلی بدود تا تو را هم کمی ........
  - لباس گرمی بیوش و شب هم خودت را خوب .....
    - ۸. یدرم نشست و برادر کوچکم را روی پایش ............
- ٩. هفتهٔ اوّل خیلی سخت گذشت ولی (ما) هفتهٔ دوّم را راحت تر ...........
  - ١٠. خيلي مي خنديد و همه را .....

#### Exercise 6.2

Translate the following and say

- a) would you read the verb as ending in -ānd or -ānad?
- b) Which of the verbs are causative?

او مى داند :Example

 $\rightarrow$  He knows. (- $\bar{a}nad$ , not causative)

- ١. ديروز كتاب مي خواند.
- فردا در آن برنامه یک ترانه می خواند.
  - ٣. چرا يچه را روى ميز خواياند؟
- ممكن است با صداى بلندش همه را بترساند.
  - ۵. آیا بیشتر از پنج ساعت ماند؟

Exercises

- ۶. برای آنکه زود برسد، خیلی سریع راند.
- ٧. اگر او معلم باشد درس را خوب به شاگردان می فهماند.
  - ٨. مي گويد كه خواهد توانست ولي نمي تواند.
  - ٩. خوشحالم كه آمد و پيغام را به شما رساند.
    - ١٠. واقعاً حرفهايم شما را ترساند؟

#### Exercise 6.3

Re-write the following sentences by replacing the past participles with complete verbs (+ conjunctions if necessary), then translate. Example:

پروین به خانه رفته دوش می گیرد

 $\rightarrow$  پروین به خانه می (Parvin goes home and takes a shower.)

- ۱. بشقاب را برداشته به آشیزخانه بردم.
- ٢. كتاب را باز كرده تا صفحهٔ صد و هفده خواندم.
- ٣. أن خانم كيست كه أنجا نشسته هيچ نمي گويد؟
- ۴. پدر و مادرش به مدرسه رفته با معلم صحبت کردهاند.
  - ۵. دیگر او را هرگز ندیده با او حرف نخواهیم زد.
    - ۶. آن ماشین را فروخته ماشین بهتری بخرید.
- ٧. مى خواهد زبان فارسى را ياد گرفته به ايران سفر كند.
- ٨. او هرگز به مدرسه نرفته حتّی نمی تواند اسمش را بنویسد.
  - ٩. قبلاً به خانهٔ ما آمده با برادرم حرف زده بود.
    - ۱۰. باید آب را جوشانده چای درست کنید.

#### Exercise 6.4

Translate the following sentences.

- ۱. از ماشین پیاده شده به بیمارستان رفتند.
- ٢. ظرفها را نشسته نبايد جلو تلويزيون بنشيني.
- ۳. چند بار گربهاش را گم کرده و دوباره پیدا کرده بود.
  - ۴. غذایش را تمام کرده ولی هنوز نخوابیده.
- ۵. در روزهای گذشته او را چند بار دیده با او به سینما رفتهام.

6

Causative form
Optative mood
Past participle
as verb
Deleting a
similar verb
Regulars on
the march!

- ع. از چند خیابان گذشته به آن ساختمان بزرگ رسیدیم.
  - ۷. هنوز به تهران نرسیده ماشینمان خراب شد.
  - ۸ این سیب کاملاً رسیده نیست، یک سیب دیگر بده.
    - ٩. سوار تاکسی شده به خانهام برگشتم.
- ۱۰. بالاخره آن یرنده از روی شاخه یریده از ما دور شد.

#### Exercise 6.5

In which of the sentences from the previous exercise are we using a *past participle* in a way that colloquial/spoken Persian usually avoids? Mention the numbers and the past participle.

They count the chicks at the end of autumn.

(= Don't rejoice too early!)

# UNIT SEVEN | ۷ فصل ۱mpersonal forms

#### [ādam] آدم [ādam]

The only equivalent in Persian to the English impersonal *one* is  $\bar{l}$  [ $\bar{a}$ dam, in literary Persian  $\bar{l}$ ,  $\bar{a}$ dami with stressed final -i], but Persian can get even more impersonal than this (see 7.2) – or much less (see 7.3).  $\bar{A}$ dam is used as a singular noun, functioning as the subject or object of verbs. (When used as object, English might prefer to translate this  $\bar{l}$  as you or people or use other pronouns.) Examples:

```
ادم باید خیلی مواظب باشد. (One must be very careful.) آدم باید خیلی مواظب باشد. (One doesn't know what to say.) آدم نمی داند چه بگوید. (You scare one [/me/people].) آدم را می ترسانی. (They don't tell one [/you/people] where to go.)
```

However, sometimes  $\tilde{l}$  is used simply in the sense of a person/a human, especially when accompanied by indefinite markers (yek or unstressed -i). If  $\tilde{l}$  is used in a plural sense, it simply means people. Examples:

```
(The room was full of/filled with people.) اتاق پر از آدم بود. (Didn't you find any well-informed person?) آدم غذا بخور! (Eat like a human!/Watch how you eat!) مثل آدم غذا بخور! (People must learn how to protect/care for nature.)
```

#### 7.2 Entirely impersonal constructions

There are a few entirely impersonal constructions in Persian, all of which use the *past stem* (also called *short infinitive*):

7 Impersonal forms

- a) عال  $[b\bar{a}yad] + past stem = 'one must...'' one has to...'$
- b) مي تو ان  $[mi-tav\bar{a}n] + past\ stem = \text{`one can}\dots$
- c) می شود [mi-shavad] + past stem = 'one can/may . . . '/'it is possible to . . . '
- d) می شد [mi-shod] + past stem = 'one could [have]...'/'it was possible to ...'

باید (a) and می توان (b) have no past tense in contemporary Persian, but می شود (c) changes to می شد (d) for past, which can even be used as the past tense substitute of می توان (b).

The once past versions of بایست – namely, بایستی [ $b\bar{a}yest$ ], بایستی [ $b\bar{a}yest$ ], or بایستی [ $mi-b\bar{a}yest$ ] and می بایستی [ $mi-b\bar{a}yest$ ] – are now used loosely as less common synonyms of  $b\bar{a}yad$  in the present tense and can all be followed by the past stem like باید (a), with the same function and meaning.

If می شود and می شود (b and c) are preceded by something that requires the subjunctive, they change to بشود [be-tavān] and بشود [be-shavad], but this doesn't affect the past stem:

است. شهر ایران است. (Perhaps one can say that this is the coldest city in Iran.)

One might not be able to go there (انجا رفت. شود امروز به آنجا رفت.

Now that you have learned the last possible construction with بايد in Persian (see 4.3), let us see them all together: four constructions with five different usages.

**Table 7.1:** All constructions possible with  $b\bar{a}yad$  (from left to right)

bāyad	+	past stem	=	impersonal ('one')	باید رفت One must go.
bāyad	+	subjunctive	=	must or have to	باید برود He must go.
bāyad	+	perfect subjunctive	=	must have	باید رفته باشد He must have gone.
bāyad	+	past progressive	=	should have	باید میرفت He should have gone.
			=	had to	باید میرفت He had to go.

Examples:

Some quasiimpersonal idioms

One must) باید به آدمها آموزش داد که چطور طبیعت را حفظ کنند. educate/teach people how to preserve/protect nature.)

می توان گفت که بزرگترین کشتارهای تاریخ در قرن بیستم اتفاق افتاده است. (One can say that the biggest massacres of history took place in the twentieth century.)

(One must be able to talk to him.) باید بتوان با او صحبت کرد. (One cannot take these pills together.) این قرصها را نمی شود با هم خورد. (How could one believe that garbage?)

For more examples with می شود see also Unit 4 (Table 4.1).

#### 7.3 Some quasi-impersonal idioms

There are a variety of idioms in Persian using a construction that can hardly be called *impersonal*, because the *person* is clearly there – only not where you normally expect it to be: not as the conjugational ending of the verb. In these constructions, the tense of the verb can change, but not its person: the verb always remains third person singular for all persons, and the 'person' – the real *subject* – is attached as a possessive/dative suffix to the word that can be said to be the 'grammatical' subject of the verb.

We are already familiar with this construction from earlier discussions of speaking about age (I/8.5.1). One option for giving an age was:

X years + possessive suffixes + verb to be (3sg.)

In the sentence من بيست سالم است (man bist sāl-am ast, I am 20), the grammatical subject is sāl (year), which is always third person singular, and the real subject is shown by the suffix -am attached to sāl. To better understand an idiom like سردم است (sard-am ast, I feel cold), we should analyze it like this: '[For] me [it] is cold.' (Compare this with the German dative version: Mir ist kalt.) To make it still easier to understand, it can be said that the grammatical subject here is سرد – always third person singular – and the real subject (to be used in translation) is the personal suffix added to sard. Instead of changing the conjugational endings of the verb, this -am should change: to say 'they feel cold' you say سردشان است (sard-eshān ast), and so on.

Similarly, بسّمه (bas-am ast; Tehrani: بسّمه, bassame) means '[For] me [it] is enough.' (German: Mir reicht's.)

```
7
Impersonal
forms
```

The contemporary, colloquial phrase (معند) چه ات است؟ (che-at ast?; Tehrani: عبد و che-te?) has its older, dative version (now used in literary language only) as: تو را چه می شود؟, all meaning 'What's wrong with you?' (German: Was ist mit dir?) To say 'What's wrong with them?' you simply change ات and say: (Tehrani: چه شان است؟), while the verb remains the same.

See below for some examples of the most common impersonal idioms, most of which deal with sensations, feelings and emotions. (An asterisk is used to show where you add the suffixes.)

```
:(to like) از ... خوش * آمدن
  (You're going to like the movie.) از فیلم خوشت خواهد آمد.
  I didn't like what he did [lit., 'this deed') از این کارش خوشم نیامد.
    of his'l.)
ان ... بد* آمدن (to dislike or hate):
  (I really hate this color.) از این رنگ خیلی بدم می آید.
  (Apparently he likes you/has fallen for you.) ظاهراً از تو بدش نمي آيد.
نحواب* آمدن (to feel/get sleepy):
  It's not dark yet, how) هنوز هوا تاريک نشده، چطور خوايت مي آيد؟
     can you feel sleepy?)
نو دن (to fall asleep):
  We were still talking) ما هنوز داشتيم حرف ميزديم كه او خوابش بُرد.
     when he fell asleep.)
دير * شدن (to be late):
  I can't wait more/longer) نمی توانم بیشتر از این صبر کنم، دیرم شده.
     than this: I'm late.)
ندنه*/گریه* گرفتن (to have to or to start to laugh/cry):
  I left the room) سريع از اتاق بيرون رفتم چون خندهام گرفته بود.
    quickly because I had to laugh.)
  When we asked about) وقتى دربارهٔ مادرش پرسيديم، گريهاش گرفت.
     her mother, she started to crv.)
(to wish/want): دل* خواستن
  The children want to watch) بچّهها دلشان می خواهد این فیلم را ببینند.
```

For similar idioms about remembering/forgetting see also Unit 14.

this movie.)

Some quasiimpersonal idioms

For idioms about putting on or wearing clothes see Unit 8.

In some cases, it is also possible in such idioms to use a noun or an independent pronoun (instead of using the suffixed possessive pronoun), as with these verbs:

دل\* تنگ شدن (براي): (براي): دلم شدن (براي) ان روزها تنگ شده. (I really miss those days.) – here del-am can change to del-e man.

(to feel pity for or take pity on): دل\* سوختن (برای/به حال)

این بچّه نه. (You feel pity [/show compassion] for dogs and cats but not for this child.)

(به\*) خوش گذشتن (به\*) (to have a good time; to enjoy one's time): تازه دوستش مرده، چطور انتظار داری به او (به مریم) خوش بگذرد؟ (to have a bad time) بد گذشتن (به\*) در آن دو سال خیلی به ما (به من و همسرم) بد گذشت.

The last two (بد گذشتن) become totally impersonal when no pronoun/noun is mentioned for the person who has a good or bad time:

(Last night it was hilarious.) دیشب خیلی خوش گذشت. (Li's a lot of fun with Parvin.) با پروین خیلی خوش می گذرد.

Note: Some verbs may belong to this group in one of their senses only. Example:

(به) بر خوردن به (to encounter, to come across) = a normal verb, conjugated for all persons:

(I bumped into Mina on the street.) در خیابان به مینا برخوردم. (They came across a new article.)

(به\*) بر خوردن (به\*) (to be offended) = *quasi-impersonal*, conjugated always for 3sg.:

نيلي به من برخور (I was really offended.) (I hope you won't take offense.) اميدوارم به شما برنخورَد.

#### 7 Impersonal forms

#### **Exercises**

#### Exercise 7.1

Make impersonal, present tense sentences with the words given (some might also require a preposition); then translate. (You wouldn't need to change the order.) Example:

پدر بزرگم – نَوَد و پنج – سال\* بودن 
$$\rightarrow$$
 سال\* بودن (My grandfather is 95 years old.)

#### Exercise 7.2

Translate the following into English.

- ۱. در ایران نمی توان شراب خورد، مگر نه؟
  - ۲. با یک خانم نمی توان اینطور حرف زد.
  - ۳. باید نامهٔ دیگری برای دانشگاه نوشت.
    - ۴. اینجا نمی شود زیاد سروصدا کرد.
- ۵. تا پارسال می شد بدون ویزا به آنجا رفت.
  - ع. نمى توان اين فيلم را ديد و نخنديد.
- ٧. نباید بچّه را هر سال به یک مدرسهٔ جدید فرستاد.
  - ٨. كاش مىشد دوباره جوان شد.
- ۹. در این کشور می توان با یک دختر ده ساله ازدواج کرد.
- ۱۰. آیا می شود یک قورباغه را به اندازهٔ یک گربه دوست داشت؟

Exercises 7.3

Change the structure of the sentences in the previous exercise from impersonal to personal (or quasi-impersonal: آدم), using the pronoun or noun given below as subject; then translate.

These are the nouns/pronouns you should use (or just have in mind) for each of the sentences in the previous exercise:

Example:

اصلاً نمی شود به او اعتماد کرد (من) 
$$\rightarrow$$
 (I cannot trust him at all.)

#### Exercise 7.4

Translate the following and write in brackets those words which constitute the impersonal structure. (There is only one sentence without any impersonal structure.) Example:

→ One should not utter ugly words before children. (نباید ... گفت)

- ۱. از اینجا نمی شود دید.
- ٢. اوّل بايد دربارهٔ خانوادهشان تحقيق كرد.
  - ٣. آيا حتماً بايد اين زبان را ياد گرفت؟
- ۴. نباید دربارهٔ شغل جدیدش زیاد نگران بود.
- ٥. ممكن است ديدن شوهرش لازم نباشد ولي خودش را حتماً بايد ديد.
  - ع. مى توان از خودش يرسيد كه چرا ما را تعقيب مى كرده.
  - ۷. یلیس به همسایهمان گفته است که نباید به هیچ چیزی دست زد.
    - ۸. دکتر، من باید بدانم که می توان امیدی داشت یا نه؟
      - ٩. نمى شد از اوّل راستش را به من بگوئى؟
      - ۱۰. کاش بتوان روزی معنی این حرف را فهمید!
  - ۱۱. شهر شیکاگو باید یک بار در آتش می سوخت تا از نو ساخته شود.
- ۱۲. باید دانست که قبلاً در اروپا می شد دانشمندان را به عنوانِ کافر در آتش سوزاند.

### **7** Impersonal

forms

#### Exercise 7.5

Which of the following sentences is using an impersonal (or quasi-impersonal) structure?

- ١. اين كتاب را فقط در كتابخانه بايد خواند.
- ۲. باید از دو هفته قبل به رئیسش خبر می داد.
- ۳. بابک را امروز می توان در خانهٔ مادرش دید.
  - ۴. آیا همین امروز باید آن نامه را برگرداند؟
- ۵. آیا می شود آن مقاله را در اینترنت هم پیدا کرد؟
- ۶. خوب است که اینجا می شود بدون صدای موسیقی صحبت کنیم.
  - ٧. از گوشت نيخته اصلاً خوشم نمي آيد.
  - ۸ نمی توان فقط نگاه کرد و هیچ کاری نکرد.
  - ۹. از بیکاری خسته شد و به خانهاش برگشت.
    - ١٠. چرا نمى شد كمى زودتر رفت؟

#### با یک دست نمی شود دو هندوانه برداشت.

One cannot hold two watermelons in one hand.

(= Do things one at a time!)

#### **UNIT EIGHT**

Position of verbs in the sentence
Verbs of state
Putting on and taking off clothes
To want, to be

able to, to know

فصل ۸ جای فعل در جمله فعلهای حالت پوشیدن و درآوردنِ لباس خواستن، توانستن، دانستن

#### 8.1 Position of verbs in the sentence

In a standard Persian sentence the verb is usually placed at the end of the sentence or clause. Colloquial Persian, however, leaves room for some flexibility in this regard. In particular, after a *verb of movement*, words denoting a location or destination can be placed after the verb. In such cases, we are more likely to drop the preposition in the adverbial phrase that follows the verb. Examples:

بعد از دو هفته همسرش برگشت (به) مشهد. (After two weeks his/her spouse returned to Mashhad.)

(We went to رفتیم (به) آلمان به امیدِ آنکه علی را ببینیم ولی آنجا نبود. Germany in the hope of seeing Ali, but he was not there.)

(و) گذاشت جلو بچّه. (She poured the milk into the mug and put [it] in front of the child.)

شوهرش را انداختند (به/توی) زندان و حتّی اجازهٔ ملاقات هم ندادند. (They threw her husband in jail and didn't even give [her] a visiting permit.)

In colloquial Persian you can find examples with no 'movement' in the verb, or with no 'location/destination' mentioned:

Position of verbs in the sentence
Verbs of state
Putting on and taking off clothes
To want, to be able to, to know

(Stay in Tehran for چند روز بمان (در) تهران تا با شهر آشنا شوی a few days to get to know the city.)

I tried hard to hide) تلاش زیادی کردم برای پنهان کردن اضطرابم my anxiety.)

(He introduced his زنش را معرفی کرد به همکارش و رفت بلیط بخرد wife to his colleague and went to buy tickets.)

(He was very much afraid خیلی می ترسید از عواقبِ آن، ولی چارهای نبود of its consequences, but there was no way out/he had no other choice.)

#### 8.2 Verbs of state

Persian verbs of *state* use a *perfect* tense where English would use a *progressive* tense. These verbs – a small group – are treated as normal verbs when their focus is on the *action*, but as *state verbs* when their focus is only showing the *state* in which the subject of the verb is. You already know four important verbs of this group: خوابیدن ('to sit'), ایستادن ('to stand'), خوابیدن ('to sleep') and یو شیدن ('to wear') (see I/13.3/b). Here are a few more verbs:

And here are some pairs of examples showing them as both state verbs and normal verbs:

(When I saw her lying/saw that she was lying on the bed, I thought she was asleep.)

در حدود نیم ساعت می شود که غذایش را خورده است و دراز کشیده است. (It is about half an hour since she has eaten and has lain down.) مینا آن دختری است که به آن درخت تکیه کرده است و دارد با دوستش مینا آن دختری است که به آن درخت تکیه کرده است و دارد با دوستش میزند. که به آن درخت است که به آن درخت تکیه کرده است و دارد با دوستش میزند.

ظاهراً سرش گیج رفته (است) و به دیوار تکیه کرده (است) که نیفتد. (Apparently she has felt dizzy and has leaned against the wall in order not to fall [down].)

ببین چطور عروسکش را در آغوش گرفته (است) و خوابش برده (است)! (See how she is holding her doll in her arms and has fallen asleep!) جلو همه آن مرد را در آغوش گرفته (است) و بوسیده است. (She has embraced that man in front of everybody and has kissed him.)

Past and past progressive of certain verbs

چند ساعت بود که آنجا چمباتمه زده بود و از جایش تکان نمی خورد (It was a few hours that he was squatting there and did not move/budge from his place.)

(As soon as he had همینکه آنجا چمباتمه زده بود، ماری نیشش زده بود squatted there, a snake had bitten him.)

#### 8.2.1 To put on, to be wearing and to take off clothes

As already mentioned, پوشیدن belongs to these state verbs. There are some other compound verbs and idioms that can be used as synonyms, some used for only certain articles of clothing – and some of them use a quasi-impersonal construction (see Table 8.1 below).

#### 8.3 Past and past progressive of certain verbs

With certain verbs like خواستن (to want), توانستن (to be able to) and توانستن (to know), the past progressive, which is the tense more commonly used, shows some PASSIVE state of wanting, knowing or being able in general (with the mi- prefix used in its durative function), while the simple past tense shows the more ACTIVE side of these verbs at some particular moment in the past. They might need different verbs in English translation.

#### خواستن 8.3.1

(When she was young, she wanted to become an actress.)

He wanted to خواست/می خواست به او سلام کند، ولی خجالت کشید. (he wanted to say 'hello' to her, but was [too] timid/bashful.) – The version without *mi*- (simple past) has more of an act: he was just about to do so.

- 'چرا نخواستی با او حرف بزنی؟' - 'خواستم/میخواستم، ولی او وقت '- 'نداشت.' (Why didn't you want to talk to him?' - 'I wanted to, but he had no time.')

(Did the police want) آیا پلیس از تو خواست که از ماشین پیاده شوی؟ ask you to get off the car?)

Table 8.1: Most common expressions for putting on, taking off and wearing

ARTICLE	TO PUT ON	TO BE WEARING	TO TAKE OFF
general (excluding head, hands, feet), e.g. clothes, shirt, jacket, pullover, suit, skirt, etc.		I am wearing a shirt: پیرهن پوشیادام. پیرهن دارم. پیرهن تنم است. روم: (form.)	I am taking off my shirt: ( <i>col.</i> ) پیرهنم را در می آورم. پیرهنم را از تن بیرون می آورم. ( <i>form.</i> )
hat	I am putting on a hat: کلاه سرم می گذارم. کلاه به/بر سر می گذارم.	I am wearing a hat: کلاه دارم. کلاه سرم است. کلاه بر سر دارم.	I am taking off my hat: کلاهم را برمیدارم. کلاه از سر برمیدارم.
glasses	I am putting on my glasses: عینک میزنم. عینک میزنم. (به) چشمم می گذارم. (میک به /بر چشم می گذارم.	I am wearing glasses: عینک دارم. عینک زدهام. عینک چشمم است. به /بر چشم دارم.	I am taking off my glasses: (ما) عینکم را برمی دارم. را از چشمم برمی دارم. از چشم برمی دارم.
gloves	I am putting on my gloves: $(col.)$ دستکش دستم می کنم. $(form.)$ دستگش به دست می کنم.	I am wearing gloves: دستکش دارم. دستکش دستم است. ( <i>col.</i> ) دستکش به دست دارم.	I am taking off my gloves: دستکشم را درمیآورم.
pants/trousers, shoes and socks (example given for pants only)	I am putting on my pants: شلوارم را ميپوشم. ( <i>col.</i> ) شلوار پايم ميکنم. شلوار به پا ميکنم.	I am wearing pants: شلوار دارم. شلوار پوشیدهام. (col.) شلوار پایم است. با دارم.	I am taking off my pants: (مان) شلوارم را درمیآورم. (form.) شلوار از پا درمیآورم.
walking stick	I take my walking stick in my hand: عصايم را دستم مى گيرم. عصا به/در دست مى گيرم.	I have my walking stick in my hand: تانع است. المارع عصا به/در دست دارم.	

Past and past progressive of certain verbs

(I always wanted to ride in that car.) همیشه میخواستم سوار آن ماشین بشوم. (We asked him to get in [the car], but he was afraid.)

#### توانستن 8.3.2

The past progressive tense of توانستن (with *mi*-) shows a general *state* of capability (or, if negative, inability), while its simple past (with no *mi*-) shows more the *act* of *managing to do* something (or, if negative, *failing to do* something) – again at some particular point of time in the past. Examples:

از یکی از پنجرهها می توانستیم دریاچه را ببینیم. (From one of the windows we could see the lake.)

(When the window was وقتى پنجره باز شد، توانستيم درياچه را ببينيم. opened, we were able to see the lake.)

خوشبختانه می توانستم شنا کنم و توانستم خودم را با شنا به ساحل برسانم. (Luckily I could swim and was able to/managed to reach [/bring myself to] the shore by swimming.)

#### and related verbs دانستن 8.3.3

The object of دانستن is often a statement (= to know that...) and, when used in this way, we have a similar difference between its simple past and past progressive tenses, the latter being by far the more common. I knew is usually مى and you use it without - مى only when by I knew you mean I realized, as in these examples:

When [/As] وقتی به آنجا می رفتم، می دانستم که ممکن است خانه نباشد. I was going there, I knew that he might not be home.)

(As soon as I saw his face, I knew that they had told him everything.)

Even when used in this sense, the form without *mi*- is not usually used for negative or interrogative. There are other verbs that are much more common in Persian for the *act* of realization, a fact that contributes to making دانستم (without *mi*-) such a rare occurrence: instead of دراستم, you are much more likely to say فهمیدم /متوجّه شدم (or, in more formal Persian, دریافتم). Examples:

آیا همینکه او را دیدی، فهمیدی (/متوجّه شدی) که آبستن است؟ (Here دانستی would sound awkward.) مصورتم را دید، ولی نفهمید (/متوجّه نشد) که من مینا نیستم. (Here ندانست would be wrong.)

Position of verbs in the sentence Verbs of state Putting on and taking off clothes To want, to be able to, to know

is not used for *knowing a person*, where دانستن is usually used, and again we will witness the same difference between شناختم (act = 'I recognized') and مى شناختم (state = 'I knew'), as in these examples:

برادرت را تا همین دیروز نمی شناختم. (I didn't know your brother until [just] yesterday.)

. همینکه پدرت را دیدم، او را شناختم (As soon as I saw your father, I recognized him.)

To know how to do something is more often expressed by بلد بودن in colloquial Persian.

Considering the different meanings of the verb *to know* in English and its different usages, it would be helpful to have some examples of this verb used in different senses and see how it has been translated into Persian:

Table 8.2: To know and its Persian equivalents

Who knows!	کسی چه میداند!
How should I know?	از كجا بدانم؟
I know/knew his name.	اسمش را میدانم/میدانستم.
I know/knew him well.	او را خوب می شناسم /می شناختم.
I know/don't know [how to play] chess.	شطرنج بلدم/بلد نيستم.
I know that street.	آن خیابان را میشناسم.
I know that he will come.	مىدانم كه مىآيد.
I know how to go there.	مىدانىم چطور آنجا بروم.
He doesn't know how to drive.	بلد نیست (= نمی داند چطور) رانندگی کند.
I know him to be a good man.	او را آدم خوبی میدانم.
I knew that he was Iranian.	میدانستم که ایرانی است.
He spoke only a few words, and I knew [= I realized] that he was Iranian.	فقط چند کلمه حرف زد، و من فهمیدم (/متوجّه شدم) که ایرانی است.
I know about his past.	از گذشتهٔ او باخبرم (/خبر دارم/اطّلاع دارم/ مُطّاِعم)./دربارهٔ گذشتهاش میدانم.
I will let you know.	به تو خبر خواهم داد.
Let us know about the time of your arrival.	از زمانِ وُرودتان ما را باخبر (/مُطَّلع) کنید./ زمانِ وُرودتان را به ما اِطِلاع بدهید.

**Exercises** Exercises

#### Exercise 8.1

Write the correct form of the verb, then translate.

۱. یک ساعت اینجا ایستاده بود ولی الآن رفت که روی آن نیمکت ............ (نشستن).

- ۲. دختری که در این عکس کنار تو ...... (نشستن) کیست؟
- ۳. مادر بچّه را ...... (در أغوش گرفتن) و سعى كرد او را آرام كند.
  - ۴. خیلی خسته بود و فوراً روی تخت ...... (دراز کشیدن).
    - ۵. چرا آنجا ..... (چمباتمه زدن) و هیچ کاری نمی کنی؟
- ع. مرد قدبلندی در ردیف اوّل ...... (ایستاده) و نمی توانم خواننده را خوب ببینم.
  - ٧. پيرهنت کثيف شده است چون به آن ديوار ...... (تکيه کردن).
    - ۸ از این زنی که به ما ...... (خیره شدن) می ترسم.
    - ۹. آن پسری را که دارد کنارِ پرویز ....... (نشستن) میشناسی؟
      - ١٠. سروصدا نكنيد، بچّه دارد ...... (خوابيدن).

#### Exercise 8.2

Provide the correct verb for wearing, putting on and taking off, then translate. Example:

در ایران مردم در داخل خانه کفش .....

ightarrow نمی پوشند (In Iran people don't wear shoes inside the house.)

- ۱. در ایران وقتیکه وارد خانه می شوی، باید کفشت را از پایت ............
  - ۲. کتاب را بست و عینک را از .......
  - ۳. اگر خوب نمی بینی، چرا عینکت را ...........
  - ۴. لطفاً شلوارت را ...... تا دکتر زانویت را ببیند.
    - ۵. جورابم خیس شده بود و باید آن را ............
    - ع. از لباسي كه تو الآن به .....خوشم مي آيد.
    - ۷. میدانی چرا من دیروز لباس سیاه به ...... ؟
  - ۸ من كلاههائي را كه تو ...... خيلي دوست دارم.
  - ۹. این کفش کهنه را نمی توانی در یک مهمانی .......
  - ۱۰. نمی دانم چرا مردها باید تصمیم بگیرند که زنها چه لباسی .........

#### Position of verbs in the sentence Verbs of state

Putting on and taking

off clothes

To want,
to be able to,
to know

#### Exercise 8.3

Provide the correct form of the verb خواستن ('to want'), then translate. Example:

ديروز آمده بود چون (او) ................................... با تو حرف بزند  $\rightarrow$  (She had come yesterday because she wanted to talk to you.)

- ١. ديروز منتظرت بوديم و ...... با تو يک فيلم ببينيم.
- ٢. هفتهٔ قبل شما بايد از ناصر ...... برايتان يک خانه پيدا كند.
- ٣. چرا تو هر وقت ..... با من حرف بزنی، چشمهایت را می بندی؟
  - ۴. این را فعلاً میبرم ولی هر وقت تو ........ برایت میآورم.
  - ۵. (من) چند بار ...... جوابش را بدهم، ولی باز پشیمان شدم.
  - ۶. شوهر قبلی ام همیشه ...... به من شنا یاد بدهد، ولی خودش در دریاچه غرق شد.
    - ۷. همینکه بچّه مادرش را دید، ...... به طرف او بدود، ولی افتاد.
- ۸ می توانستی بهترین خواننده باشی، به شرط آنکه خودت واقعاً ............
  - ٩. اگر شما از او ...... بعید است که قبول نکند.
  - ۱۰. از کسی مثل او می توان ..... که با رئیس جمهور صحبت کند.

#### Exercise 8.4

Provide the correct form of the verb توانستن ('to be able to'), then translate. Example:

به او نخواهم گفت چون ......گریهاش را ببینم o (I won't tell him because I can't see him/his crying.)

- ١. بعد از چند هفته انتظار ديروز .....او را ببينم.
  - ٢. آيا .....تفاوتها را از دور تشخيص داد؟
- ۳. اگر او را ببینید ...... به او پیشنهاد کنید مقاله را کو تاهتر کند.
- ۴. بالاخره روز دوشنبهٔ قبل.....در خانهاش با او صحبت كنيم.
  - ۵. در قدیم فقط پولدارها.....با کالسکه سفر کنند.
  - ع. آیا ...... امیدوار بود که آن قانون تصویب شود؟
  - ۷. میدانی ادیسون [Edison] چطور .....برق را اختراع کند؟
- ۸ بله، ..... بالای درخت بروی، ولی سرت گیج خواهد رفت.
  - ۹. چه کسی .....آن شیر را روی میز ریخته باشد؟
  - ۱۰. ممكن نيست او ...... اين كار را ديروز انجام بدهد.

Exercise 8.5

Exercise 8.5

Use either بلد بودن or بلد بودن to translate the following sentences; write both versions wherever possible. (Some of the words you might need have been given at the end of the exercise.) Example:

I knew the meaning of that word.

- 1. I know why he doesn't like you.
- 2. It was a new lesson, but I knew all the words.
- 3. It was then that I realized where he was going.
- 4. Do you want to know the truth?
- 5. I know where to go.
- 6. I knew where he was going.
- 7. I know that he has not returned yet.
- 8. I don't know how many pictures he has taken of us.
- 9. I don't know how many pictures to take.
- 10. I know that taking these pictures has been a difficult job.

#### Exercise 8.6

Translate into English.

- ١. بلديد عكس بگيريد؟
  - ٢. فوراً او را شناختم.
- ۳. ماشینش را دیدم، و فهمیدم که دارد برمی گردد.
  - ۴. به او خبر بدهید که منتظرش هستیم.
    - ۵. خبر داری چه اتفاقی افتاده؟
  - ع. خيلي وقت است از حال او خبري نداريم.
    - ۷. اطلاع ندارم آن خانه را کی خریده است.
  - ۸ باید خبرش کنیم که پدر دوستش فوت کرده.
    - ۹. خوب نیست او را در بی خبری نگه دارید.
- ۱۰. عکس را به من نشان داد، و من پدرش را شناختم.

#### خدا خر را شناخت که شاخش نداد.

God knew the donkey, therefore gave him no horns.

(Used for a person who is a failure but potentially dangerous.)

# UNIT NINE

More on compound verbs
Ways to avoid passive

وصل ۱ دربارهٔ فعلهای مرکب راههائی برای پرهیز از مجهول

#### 9.1 Separability of compound verbs

The verbal part of compound verbs can often be separated from non-verbal parts in different ways – we saw earlier how an objective suffix can be placed between the two parts of a compound verb (see 2.3 to 2.3.2):

برداشتن: برش داشتم. 
$$(= \bar{l} i ) (1 )$$
 برداشتم.) نگه داشتن: نگهمان داشتند.  $(= a )$  را نگه داشتند.)

#### 9.1.1 If the first part is a prefix (as برداشتن in برداشتن)

An objective suffix can come between the two parts of some of the most common verbs of this group:

رشان گرداندیم. 
$$\leftarrow$$
 آنها را برگرداندیم. (We returned them.) برشان گرداندیم. (Don't take it out/off.)

#### 9.1.2 If the first part is an adjective (as in تميز کردن)

Apart from objective suffixes, some modifiers/intensifiers can be added to the adjective, or sometimes comparative suffixes:

More ways to avoid passive

#### 9.1.3 If the first part is a noun (as in صحبت کر دن)

The two parts can be separated by different words, even by whole adverbial or relative clauses:

```
صحبت کردیم.
صحبتهائی کردیم.
صحبتهای خیلی جالب و مفیدی کردیم.
صحبتهائی که با رئیس جدیدمان کردیم خیلی مفید بودند.
صحبتهائی که قبل از آنکه شما بیائید با رئیس جدیدمان کردیم خیلی مفید بودند.
```

#### 9.2 Transitive compound verbs turned intransitive

There are a few compound verbs that have embraced or rather absorbed their objects in such a way that they are treated as intransitive – and may cause confusion when compared with their English equivalents. You already know the most common of these:

- خوردن is to eat and transitive: you always need an object.
- غذا خوردن is also *to eat* but *intransitive*: no object needed, because you already have غذا as the unspecified, general object.

Thus, you can't just say می خورم if you want to say I'm eating.

And, on the contrary, you can't say کباب غذا می خورم if you want to say *I'm eating kabāb* – here غذا would be redundant and you should just say کباب می خورم.

It is the same with غذا پختن (to cook; *intr*.) vs. پختن (tr.), or the compound verb خدا پختن (to study; *intr*.) vs. درس خواندن (tr.):

```
درد در اتاقش درس میخواند. (He is studying [lit.: 'reading his lessons'] in his room.)
```

او می خواهد تاریخ بخواند. (He wants to study history.) – Here you shouldn't repeat درس before the verb.

(He's reading a book.) او دارد کتاب می خواند.

#### 9.3 More ways to avoid passive

That Persian is not very fond of the passive we already know (see I/20.1). Here we learn one or two expressions that can give a statement a quasi-passive

More on compound verbs Ways to avoid passive

9

meaning without using the real passive. One common expression is مورد (mowred-e) + some noun (usually the non-verbal part of a compound verb) + the verbs قرار گرفتن (which is the intransitive version of قرار دادن) or sometimes واقع شدن. This would draw the focus from the subject to the object, which is thus  $being \ subjected \ to$  the action described by the noun that follows it. Examples:

```
(We looked into that matter.) ما آن موضوع را بررسی کردیم. (We subjected that matter ما آن موضوع را موردِ بررسی قرار دادیم. = to our investigation.)
```

$$\rightarrow$$
 . آن موضوع موردِ بررسی قرار گرفت. (That matter was looked into.) آن موضوع بررسی شد. =

(They admired her talent.) استعدادش را تحسین کردند.

- Her talent was the object of استعدادش را موردِ تحسین قرار دادند. = admiration.)
- $\rightarrow$  استعدادش موردِ تحسين قرار گرفت./استعدادش موردِ تحسين واقع شد (Her talent was admired.)
  - استعدادش تحسين شد. =

(They pay no attention to my words.) هیچ توجّهی به حرفهای من نمی کنند.

- = کوفهای مرا هیچ موردِ توجّه قرار نمی دهند. = (They subject my words to no attention.)
- $\rightarrow$  عرفهای من اصلاً موردِ توجّه قرار نمی گیرد. (My words are not heeded at all.)
  - به حرفهای من هیچ توجّهی نمی شود. =

Sometimes the verb changes to شدن or فرود after the مورد construction, occasionally with other changes in the phrasing – often when a 'real passive' is grammatically not possible or not common. Examples:

- یدرم خیلی به اشعارِ حافظ علاقه دارد (My father likes the poems of Hāfez a lot.)
- $\rightarrow$  اشعار حافظ موردِ علاقهٔ پدرم هستند (The poems of Hāfez are the object of my father's great affection.) or, better still:
  - أَسَاعِ موردِ علاقه پدرم حافظ است (My father's favorite poet is Hāfez.)

(No 'real passive' version possible here.)

Exercises

(Which proposal would you go for?) کدام پیشنهاد را قبول می کنید؟

- $\rightarrow$  پیشنهادِ مورد قبولِ شما کدام است؟ (Which is the proposal you would accept?)
  - = (از سوي شما) قبول می شود؟ (Which proposal would be accepted [by you]?)

The word تحت [taht-e] means under. It is not always interchangeable with the much more common word زير [zir-e], but it comes closer to the English under in certain constructions similar to مورد (where زير cannot be used), as in مورد  $[taht-e\ bar-rasi$ , 'under investigation'] or تحت الشغال  $[taht-e\ bar-rasi]$  تحت المخال (under occupation']. Examples in sentences:

او را در بیمارستان معالجه کردند (They treated him in the hospital.)  $\rightarrow$  (He underwent treatment in the hospital.)

سبکِ کوبیسم بر نقاشیهای او اثر (/تأثیر) گذاشته است influenced her paintings.)

 $\rightarrow$  ست کوبیسم است (Her paintings are under the influence of [/are influenced by] Cubism.)

(نقاشیهای او از سبک کوبیسم تأثیر گرفته است =)

#### **Exercises**

#### Exercise 9.1

If you detect a compound verb in the following sentences, write its infinitive. (Tip: There are two sentences with no compound verbs.) Example:

با رئیس جدیدمان صحبتهای خیلی مفیدی کردیم 
$$\rightarrow$$
 صحبت کردن

- ۱. برای کمک به مادرم یک روز بیشتر در اصفهان ماندم.
- ٢. بعد از صحبت با رئيس جديدش نمي دانست چه بايد بكند.
  - ۳. این دوای جدید خیلی بچه را آرامتر از قبل کرده.
- ۴. این بخشی از کمکی است که صلیب سرخ به مردم کرده است.
  - ۵. چرا اینقدر زود می خواهی پسش بگیری؟
  - ۶. باید سعی بیشتری برای ویرایش آن مقاله بکنم.

9 More on

compound verbs Ways to avoid passive ۷. گفتند دیگر دیر است و پسمان فرستادند.

۸. این هوا او را مریض تر می کند.

۹. تمام اصرارِ من به خاطرِ علاقهای است که به تو دارم.

۱۰. آمدنِ او به خاطر اصراری بود که من کردم.

#### Exercise 9.2

Translate the sentences from Exercise 9.1 into English.

#### Exercise 9.3

Change the *mowred-e* or *taht-e* constructions back to constructions using compound verbs. (Find the corresponding verbs in the glossary.) Example:

برخوردِ او موردِ اعتراض واقع شد برخوردِ او اعتراض کردند 
$$\leftarrow$$
 به برخوردِ او اعتراض کردند

١. مى دانيد چرا او را مورد شكنجه قرار داده بودند؟

۲. در آن سه روزی که تحت شکنجه بود، اجازه نداشت بخوابد.

٣. او را تحتِ فشار گذاشتند که بگوید کجا بوده است.

۴. موضوع مورد بررسی احتیاج به دقت زیادی داشت.

۵. مىدانم كه اين موضوع مورد علاقهٔ شما هم هست.

۶. او تحتِ هيچ شرايطي موردِ عفو قرار نخواهد گرفت.

۷. او یکی از آدمهای مورد اعتماد من است.

۸ در مورد قرارداد باید بگویم که هنوز تحت بررسی است.

٩. شاگردان كلاس دوّم مورد تشويق قرار گرفتند.

١٠. پيشنهادش موردِ موافقتِ ما قرار نگرفت.

#### Exercise 9.4

Translate the sentences from Exercise 9.3 into English.

#### Exercise 9.5

Translate the following into Persian. (Some of the words you can use have been given at the end of the exercise.)

- 1. I don't see Parvin; is she still cooking?
- 2. No, she's reading a story to [Persian: for] her daughter.
- 3. You love cooking, but you don't always eat what you've cooked.

Exercises

- 4. If you want to study the contemporary history of Iran, you should go to another university.
- 5. I know that she goes to college [Persian: *university*], but I don't know what she's studying.
- 6. Had you studied better, you could have had better grades.
- 7. One cannot eat Persian food and not fall in love with it.
- 8. Iranians usually eat with spoons and forks.
- 9. Knives are used in the kitchen or for eating certain fruits.
- 10. How can you study with this loud music?

آشیزی/آشیزخانه/داستان/خواندن/همیشه/پختن/خوردن/تاریخ/معاصر/رشته /درس/دانشگاه/نمره/عاشق شدن/معمولاً/قاشق/چنگال/کارد/بعضی/میوه/استفاده/ موسیقی/بلند

دیوار موش دارد، موش گوش دارد.

The wall has mice, the mice have ears.

(= We can be overheard.)

#### **UNIT TEN**

# Nouns and adjectives made from verbs Some prefixes and suffixes

فصل ۱۰ ساختن اسم و صفت از فعل چند پیشوند و پسوند

#### Nouns and adjectives made from verbs

Here we learn some of the most common ways of making nouns and adjectives from verbs (usually by adding certain suffixes). It must be known, however, that the words must be common in the language and you can't usually create new words on your own.

#### 10.1 Infinitive + stressed -i

We know that we can add stressed -i to adjectives to make nouns and to nouns to make adjectives or other related nouns (see I/6.3). When added to infinitives, it usually works in a similar way to the English -able/-ible suffix: it is about some (usually passive) potential and means 'worthy of' or 'fit for' or occasionally (with intransitive verbs) something bound to happen.

Examples of participles of potential (passive): infinitive + stressed -i

پذیر فتنی paziroftani, acceptable پذیر فتنی khāstani, desirable خواستنی dust-dāshtani, amiable دوست داشتنی sotudani, admirable شتو دنی shodani, doable; possible شدنی khāndani, readable; worth reading خوردنی khordani, edible; fit to eat; food خوردنی mordani, feeble, about to die ماندنی didani, worth seeing

Infinitive + stressed -i

```
گفتنی goftani, worth saying گفتنی shenidani, worth listening شنیدنی bāftani, product of hand-knitting بافتنی nushidani, drink
قاب آشامیدنی āb-e āshāmidani, drinking water به یاد ماندنی be yād māndani, memorable
```

Note 1: There are certain words that have this meaning of potentiality or fitness and can be placed before an infinitive instead of adding this -i. Often interchangeable, all of them mean worthy of or fit for, and all would need  $ez\bar{a}fe$ . The most common one is قابل  $[gh\bar{a}bel-e]$ , and the more formal ones include سزاوار  $[sez\bar{a}v\bar{a}r-e]$  شایان  $[sh\bar{a}yeste-ye]$  and شایان  $[sh\bar{a}ya\bar{n}-e]$ . Examples:

```
قابلِ خوردن = خوردنی (fit to eat) قابلِ خوردن = خوردنی (worth remembering) شایستهٔ به یاد ماندن = به یاد ماندنی (admirable, praiseworthy) شایانِ سِتایش or شایانِ سِتودن = سُتودنی (worth mentioning) درخورِ گفتن = گفتنی (worth seeing)
```

For negative (= 'un-able'), add  $\Box$  [ $na-/n\bar{a}-$ ] to the infinitive + -i, or change قابل [ $gh\bar{a}bel-e$ ] to غير قابل  $gh\bar{a}bel-e$ ]:

```
باور کردنی باور کردنی (bāvar-kardani, believable) باور کردنی (bāvar-na-kardani, unbelievable); or consider از یاد نرفتنی (az yād na-raftani, unforgettable) قابلِ گفتن (ghābel-e-goftan, speakable, sayable) غیرِقابلِ گفتن (gheyr-e-ghābel-e-goftan, unspeakable)
```

(Sometimes پذیر [-pazir] (from the verb پذیر and its negative پذیر [-nā-pazir] are added to nouns to give a similar meaning, like چاره پذیر [chāre-pazir, remediable] or شکست ناپذیر [shekast-nā-pazir, invincible], but these can be said to be 'agent participles' of compound verbs, to be covered below, in 10.2/A.)

Note 2: With the verbs برگشتن and برگشتن, this added -i in colloquial Persian can also give the meaning of while on the way to some place, as in these examples:

```
ری، کمی نان هم بخر. (On your way back, buy some bread too.) برگشتنی، کمی نان هم بخر. (While coming, I saw Ali on the way.) آمدنی، علی را توی راه دید. (On their way [going], they also made a stop in Shirāz.)
```

#### 10

Nouns and adjectives made from verbs Some prefixes and suffixes

#### 10.2 Present stem

A. Present stem + -ande = agent participle

This usually gives the agent, similar to the English -er/-or suffix:

This is especially common for professions and tools. With compound verbs, however, the present stem alone often assumes this meaning without adding *-ande*. This participle can be a noun, an adjective, or both. Examples:

```
(reader, singer) خواندن (to read, to sing) خواندن
  but: کتابخوان (a bookworm, one who loves reading) – and not
    ! 'کتاب خواننده'
گرنده (to take, to receive) کرنده (receiver) گرنده
  but: سختگر (unyielding, inflexible, serious)
(carver) تراشنده → (to carve, to whittle) تراشنده
  but: مداد تراش (pencil-sharpener)
(fatal, lethal) کشنده → (to kill) کشتر
  but: آدمکش (murderer)
فرو ختن (to sell) فرو ختن (seller)
  but: وطن فروش (traitor [to one's country])
(fragile) شکننده → (to break) شکستن
  but: عهد شکن (promise breaker; disloyal)
(driver) راننده → (driver) راندن
یریدن (to fly) \rightarrow یریدن (bird; 'flyer')
(winner) بَرُنده (to take [away]; to win) → بُر دن
(loser) باختن (to lose; to play or gamble) باختن
ازی کر دن (to play) \rightarrow نازی کر دن (player [in sports])
(boring, tiring) خسته کنده (to tire, to bore) خسته کر دن
سرگرم کردن (to amuse) \rightarrow میرگرم کردن (amusing)
```

Notes:

 As the last two examples show, even with compound verbs sometimes the -ande suffix is used (especially with كر دن).

Present stem

- If needed, the glide -y- should be added before -ande, as in گوینده [guyande, speaker; from گفتن, present stem [گو and آینده  $[\bar{a}yande, coming; future; from آ]$ .
- You can add stressed -i to these words to make abstract nouns (not very common with compounds ending in -i); if it is the form ending in -ande, then the glide -g- ( $\mathcal{Z}$ ) would be required and the *silent hé* ( $\circ$ ) is dropped:

```
راننده (r\bar{a}nande, driver) \rightarrow راننده (r\bar{a}nandegi, driving)
```

and very often you form new compound verbs with these:

```
رانندگی کردن \leftarrow راننده \leftarrow راننده \leftarrow راننده \leftarrow راننده \leftarrow سخت گرفتن سختگیری کردن \leftarrow سختگیری \leftarrow سخت گرفتن [bookseller] کتابفروشی \leftarrow [bookstore, or selling books] کتابفروشی کردن \leftarrow [to sell books]
```

In translating western scientific or political terms into Persian, the verbs شناختن [shenākhtan, to know, to discern] and گرویدن/گرائیدن [geravidan/gerā'idan, to incline] have proven to be very helpful, the former for sciences and the latter for schools of thought or literary trends. Examples:

```
زمینشناسی (zamin-shenās, geologist) زمینشناسی (zamin-shenāsi, geology) زمینشناسی [jāme'e-shenās, sociologist] جامعه شناسی [jāme'e-shenāsi, sociology] جامعه شناسی [vāghe'-gerā, realist] واقعگرائی [vāghe'-gerā'i, realism] واقعگرا و [aghl-gerā, rationalist]] عقل گرائی [aghl-gerā, rationalism]
```

#### B. Present stem + -ān = present participle

This is very close to the English *present participle* and is used as a verbal adjective or an adverb/adjective of manner, but sometimes as a noun also.

```
خندیدن (to laugh) خندان خندان خندیدن (laughing; cheerful) خنده کودن (to laugh) خنده کنان ([while] laughing) خنده کردن (to cry, to weep) \rightarrow کریستن (crying, weeping) گریستن (to cry, to weep) گریه کنان \rightarrow (to cry, to weep) گریه کردن (dancing) رقصان (to dance) رقصیدن (going; flowing; running; fluent; soul) رفتن (to look) \rightarrow نگریستن (concerned; anxious, worried)
```

Nouns and adjectives made from verbs Some prefixes and

suffixes

10

```
سوختن (to burn) سوزان (ablaze; burning; hot; scorching) سوزان (to be worth; to cost) ارزان (cheap ['worth the price']) نمودن (to show; to represent; to appear) نمایان (apparent; appearing) نائیدن (to last; to watch or guard) بائیدن
```

#### Notes:

- As the last two examples show, here also the glide -y- is added when needed.
- Sometimes a present participle is repeated and the meaning intensified:

```
پُرسان پ
```

#### Partial repetition:

```
انگ لنگان [lang-langān]: limping.
```

• Sometimes two present participles form a bond and are said together:

```
افتان و خيزان [oft\bar{a}n-o-khiz\bar{a}n]: falling and rising; walking with difficulty;
```

ترسان و لرزان [tarsān-o-larzān]: fearing and trembling.

• The present stem of causative verbs (see 6.1) already ends in  $-\bar{a}n$ ; these verbs don't usually form a present participle by adding another  $-\bar{a}n$ . Interestingly, the present participle of simple verbs from which causative ones are made is the same as the present stem of this latter group. Examples:

```
mugan] is the present participle of سوختن (to burn) but the present stem of its causative form (cause to burn); سوزاندن (to laugh) but خنداند (to laugh) but the present stem of its causative form خنداندن (cause to laugh).
```

#### C. Present stem + - $\bar{a}$ = participle of potential (active)

This participle is similar to *infinitive* + -i (see 10.1 above) in that it is about some potential, but this time it is usually an *active* potential, not *passive*. And it differs from the -*ande* participle (section A above) in that it is often

Present stem

about the *state* of having this potential rather than the *act* of putting it to use. شنونده [*shenidani*] is what is worth hearing, شنونده [*shenavande*] is a listener, and شنوا [*shenavā*] is a person capable of hearing. More examples:

```
توانستن (to be able) وانا (capable; mighty) توانستن (to know) وانا (wise) دانستن (to see) دانب (wise) دیدن (to see) بینا (capable of seeing; not blind) دیدن (to have) بینا (wealthy) دارت (to read) خوانا (legible) خواندن (to befit, to become) خواندن (beautiful) زیبا (to charm) فریبا (charming) فریبا (to take, to catch) گیرا (attractive; catching) گرفتن (to reach) رسیدن (to reach) رسیدن (far reaching and loud) گذشتن (to pass) رهیدن ro رکستن (free) رهیدن ro رکستن (free)
```

#### D. Present stem + -esh = verbal noun

Present stem + -esh will give an active and abstract verbal noun and is very common. When you need the noun form of a verb (as after prepositions), you can often use this form instead of the Persian infinitive (provided that it does exist and has the same meaning!).

It is also very common to make compound verbs with these verbal nouns – which are increasingly replacing the simple verbs.

```
(to turn, to stroll)

→ گردش کردن (stroll)

→ گردش کردن کردن (to stroll)

التودن (to admire, to praise)

→ ستایش کردن (admiration, praise)

→ نایش کردن (to admire, to praise)

نکوهیدن (to blame, to reproach)

→ نکوهش کردن (to blame or reproach)

→ نواستن (to want)

→ نواهش کردن (request)

→ نواهش کردن (to request)
```

#### 10

Nouns and adjectives made from verbs

Some prefixes and suffixes

```
ن المودن (to show, to appear)

→ نمایش (a play; showing)

→ نمایش دادن (to show; to present)

الفزودن (to increase)

→ الفزایش دادن/یافتن (to increase)

الفزایش دادن/یافتن (to decrease)

المشن دادن/یافتن (to decrease)

المشن دادن/یافتن (to decrease)

المشن دادن/یافتن (to incline)

المرویدن/گرائیدن (to incline)

المرایش داشتن/یافتن (to be inclined)

المرایش داشتن/یافتن (to be inclined)
```

This suffix is usually not added to compound verbs, which would just add -i to the 'agent participle' instead (and the agent participle, as we saw above, uses the present stem alone when it comes to compound verbs):

```
but: پیش خوش بینی (optimism) or پیش بینی (foresight);

but: پیش بینی (optimism) or پیش بینی (foresight);

(selection) گزینش → گزیدن (recruitment office) or کارگزینی (spouse selection);

but: روش (method, way) فحر وی (method, way) پیشر وی (deviation, aberration);

aberration);

but: کجر وی (burning sensation or twinge) سوزش → سوختن (pity).
```

One rare example of adding *-esh* to a compound is سرزنش (blaming), from the compound بر سر زدن (to slap on the head with the hand) – while we say ياروزنى (chest-beating [a Shiite ritual]) or ياروزنى (rowing).

#### 10.3 Past stem

#### A. Past participle

The most common of the nouns/adjectives made from the past stem we already know: the past participle (= past stem + -e or silent  $h\acute{e}$  - see I/13.1), sometimes hardly recognizable as past participles: like the common adjective خستن (khaste, tired) made from the now archaic verb خستن (khastan, to wound); even a noun like بسته (baste, package) doesn't always remind us of the equally common verb بستن (bastan, to tie, to close).

Past stem

#### B. Short infinitive (past stem) as noun

Some of the words we have learned so far as *nouns* were in fact *short infinitives*, like خرید (shopping) and شکست (defeat), past stems of respectively شکستن (to buy) and شکستن (to break).

In the following sentences short infinitives have been used as nouns, and you know that in each case by just adding (-an) you will have the full infinitive.

بلیطِ رفت بخرم یا بلیطِ رفت و برگشت؟ (Should I buy a one-way ticket or a return ticket?)  $\rightarrow$  برگشتن and برگشتن

After the return of her بعد از بازگشتِ دخترش حالش بهتر شد. daughter her health improved.) → بازگشتن ⇒ (After the return

از دیدِ این فیلسوف انسان هیچ مسئولیتی ندارد. (In the view of this philosopher, man has no responsibility.)  $\rightarrow$  دیدن

از دریافتِ نامه تان خیلی خوشحال شدم. (I was very pleased to receive  $['from\ receiving']$  your letter.) – دریافت کر دن

...... (Understanding these problems is not easy.) شناخت شناختن (شناختن خو شناختن شناختن

یرداختِ کرایه را فراموش نکنید. (Don't forget the payment of rent.)  $\rightarrow$  پرداختن  $\leftarrow$ 

% چرا نمی گوئی خواستِ واقعیات چیست (Why don't you say what you really want [/what your real desire is]?)  $\rightarrow$  خواستن

نشستِ بعدى سه هفته بعد خواهد بود. (Next session will be in three weeks.)  $\rightarrow$  نشستن

رسیدِ این خرید را گم کرده است. (He has lost the receipt of this purchase.)  $\leftarrow$  رسیدن حریدن

ییشرفتِ او در ریاضی خیلی خوب بود. (His progress in math was very good.)  $\rightarrow$  پیش رفتن  $\rightarrow$  to advance

Sometimes you have a compound verb, a second compound with a short infinitive, and a third one made from the agent participle, with the same or slightly different meanings. Compare:

پیش رفتن و to go forward, to advance پیش رفتن کردن = to make progress (as in studies)

ا پیشروی کردن = to advance (as armies in warfare) – Here پیشروی کردن is made from the agent participle پیشرو (pish-row, forerunner, pioneer, progressive).

Nouns and adjectives made from verbs Some prefixes and suffixes

#### C. Past and present stems together

Occasionally you might see a past stem followed by the present stem of either the same verb or another verb. The two stems (connected through  $\mathcal{G}$ , here pronounced  $\mathcal{G}$ ) make a new word or concept; they are sometimes written together as one word and  $\mathcal{G}$  is dropped in writing (not in pronunciation). Some examples:

or گفت و گو (goft-o-gu, from گفتن goftan, to say) – it means 'conversation' and we have the compound verb گفتگو کردن also ('to engage in conversation').

و جو or جُستُ ( *jost-o-ju*, from جستن *jostan*, to seek/find) – it means 'searching' and there is the compound verb جستجو کردن also ('to search or look for').

or شستن (shost-o-shu, from شستن shostan, to wash) – it means 'washing' and can be used to make other compound verbs.

پُرس و جو (pors-o-ju, from the two verbs پُرسيدن porsidan, to ask, and postan, to seek) – it means 'inquiry' and we have the compound verb پُرس و جو کردن also ('to make a search or inquiry').

In بندوبَست (band-o-bast, the two stems of بستن = 'collusion' or a secret deal), however, the present stem precedes the past one. (And, of course, we sometimes have compounds using two present stems or even two imperatives, similar to 'hide-and-seek' in English.)

#### D. Past stem + -ār

The nouns using this suffix sometimes are similar to those using the *-ande* suffix (the 'agent' – see 10.2/A) and sometimes are little different from the infinitive used as noun, but can also make words with different meanings. Examples of these with some related words:

خریدار (kharidār, from خریدن): purchaser – for this concept there is no خرنده with the -ande ending!

دریداری (kharidāri, purchase)

خریداری (khāstār, from خواستار): one who wants; desirous (similar in meaning to the present participle خواهان (gereftār, from خواهان): captive, occupied, busy گرفتار (gereftār kardan, to catch or arrest, to entangle, to preoccupy)

ر فتاری (gereftāri, captivity, entanglement, trouble)

'-āne' suffix

```
رفتار (رفتن): behavior (رفتار (رفتن): behavior رفتار کردن): behave or act) رفتار کردن (raftār kardan, to behave or act) کُشتار (koshtār, from کُشتار): butchery; slaughter; massacre (هُردن (mordār, from مُردار): saying; speech گُفتار (goftār, from گُفتار): visit (didār, from دیدار کردن (didār kardan, to visit)
```

#### 10.4 '-āne' suffix

This suffix, which is originally a suffix of manner, is used to make

- a) adjectives from nouns;
- b) adjectives (for non-humans) from other adjectives (that should be used for humans only); and
- c) adverbs from adjectives.

#### Examples for a):

```
the last two sometimes add -iyāne and become ماهیانه/سالیانه (monthly), سالانه (yearly) – he last two sometimes add -iyāne and become ماهیانه/سالیانه (manly, masculine, of men or men's) مردانه \leftarrow رن (womanly, feminine, of women or women's) کودکانه/بچگانه \leftarrow کودک/بچه (childish, childlike, of children or children's) دوست (friendly) دوستانه \leftarrow عاشق (romantic, amorous; amorously).
```

#### Examples for b):

Some adjectives that are about specifically human qualities add this *-āne* suffix when used for inanimates or abstract nouns and activities:

```
این کار مینا عاقلانه نبود. → [Minā is wise.] مینا عاقل است. [This deed of Minā's/What Minā did was not wise.]

(Your are not stupid.] تصمیم تو احمقانه بود. → [You are stupid.] تو احمق نیستی.
```

#### Examples for c):

Although adjectives can generally be used as adverbs in Persian without any change, most of those describing human qualities (mentioned above) usually add the *-āne* suffix when used as adverbs.

Nouns and adjectives made from verbs Some prefixes and suffixes

```
او عاقل است. → (His words are wise.) حرفهای او عاقلانه است. → (His words are wise.) او عاقلانه حرف می زند. → (He speaks wisely.) او عاشق است. → (This is a romantic letter.) این یک نامهٔ عاشقانه است. → (He looked amorously at his spouse.) او عاشقانه به همسرش نگاه می کرد. و (You are smart.) شما زیرکید. (You are smart.) جوابتان زیرکانه بود. → (Your response was smart.) خیلی زیرکانه عمل کردید. ← (You acted very smartly.)
```

If the -āne version of an adjective is not common, other solutions should be found – like changing the adjective to an abstract noun (by adding stressed -i) and using از (with) or زرنگ (from): زیرک [zirak] and زرنگ [zerang] both mean smart, but there is no زرنگانه, and the last example above would look like this if we were to use

```
شما زرنگید. (You are smart.) جوابتان از رویِ زرنگی بود. \leftarrow (Your response was smart.) خیلی با زرنگی عمل کردید. \leftarrow (You acted very smartly.)
```

Also, certain adverbs (like those modifying the whole sentence) usually need  $-\bar{a}ne$ :

```
خوشبختانه (lucky, fortunate, happy) خوشبختانه (lucky, fortunately) خوشبختانه (unlucky, unfortunately) بدبختانه (sorry, regretful) متأسفانه (regrettably, unfortunately) متأسفانه (sorry, regretful) متأسف
```

(See also Unit 11 for more on adverbs.)

#### 10.5 Some prefixes and suffixes

A. Having vs. not having, negation and opposition

Having: با- ( $b\bar{a}$ -, 'with') is a very common prefix; پر (por, '-ful') is a stronger prefix meaning 'full of' (or 'having lots of'); common suffixes used in this group are عدار ( $-d\bar{a}r$ , from the verb مند (-mand), and حاک ( $-n\bar{a}k$ ).

Not having: If there is too little of something or some quality, - кат-) may be used as prefix; the total absence is shown by - (bi-).

Some prefixes and suffixes

While the above prefixes and suffixes are usually added to nouns, (na-) and  $(n\bar{a}-)$  are often added to adjectives, present stems and participles for negation, and only seldom to nouns.

A common way of expressing the progression from *absence* to *having lots of* is:

$$bi- \rightarrow kam- \rightarrow ba- \rightarrow por-.$$

Examples with the words حوصله (howsele, patience), فایده (fāyede, benefit, use), and ارزش (arzesh, value):

بى حوصلە impatient; bored	کم حوصله irritable; not very patient	با حوصله patient	پر حوصله very patient
بى فايدە	کم فایده	با فایده (= مُفید)	پر فای <i>د</i> ہ
useless	of little use	useful	very useful
بی ارزش	کم ارزش	با ارزش (= ارزشمند)	پر ارزش
worthless	of little value	valuable	highly valuable

#### Examples with other prefixes/suffixes:

(nā-ma'lum, unclear, unknown) نامعلو م

```
رادر (-dār): بچهدار (bachche-dār, having child/children). بچهدار (pul-dār, rich) بچهدار (khāne-dār, housewife) دیندار (din-dār, believer) خانهدار (din-dār, believer) در دناک (dard-nāk, painful) تر سناک (dard-nāk, painful) خطرناک (khatar-nāk, dangerous) شرمناک (sharm-nāk, ashamed) خطرناک (arzesh-mand, valuable) ارزشمند (alāghe-mand, interested) نیرومند (niru-mand, powerful) ثروتمند (servat-mand, wealthy) نیرومند (na-/nā): ترس (na-tars, fearless) نفهم (na-fahm, stupid, uncomprehending) ناچیز (nā-chiz, insignificant, worthless),
```

The prefix  $b\bar{a}$ - can often be substituted by داراي ( $d\bar{a}r\bar{a}$ -ye, having) and biby فاقد (bedun-e, without) or فاقد (faghed-e, lacking)

The word غير (gheyr-e, with gheyr originally meaning 'other') is often used as a prefix to make antonyms:

```
ممكن (momken, possible) غير ممكن (gheyr-e-momken, impossible) – also ناممكن (n\bar{a}-momken) in more formal or literary language.
```

Nouns and adjectives made from verbs Some prefixes and suffixes

```
واقعی (var{a}ghe'i, real) غیر واقعی (gheyr-e-var{a}ghe'i, unreal) غیر (gheyr-e-ensar{a}ni, human, humane) غیر انسانی (gheyr-e-ensar{a}ni, inhuman, inhumane) غیر مسئولانه (gheyr-e-gheyr-e-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-gheyr-ghey
```

Another useful word, usually functioning as the anti- prefix, is ضَدٌ (zed-de):

```
(zed-de-enghelābi, counter-revolutionary) ضدِّ انقلابي
```

#### B. Activities, professions

Some common prefixes of this category are  $2 \sqrt{-gar/-g\bar{a}r}$ ,  $2 \sqrt{-k\bar{a}r}$  and the originally Turkish -(-chi). Examples:

```
کارگر (kār-gar, worker), آهنگر (āhan-gar, ironsmith) کارگر
خواستگار (āmuz[e]gār, teacher of elementary school), خواستگار
(khāst[e]gār, suitor)
شبکار (shab-kār, miner, mine worker), شبکار (shab-kār, night shift worker)
معدنکار (shekār-chi, hunter), یستجی (post-chi, mailperson)
```

#### C. Causing and provoking

Two common suffixes here are انگیختن (-angiz, from انگیختن , to stir, to provoke) and آور دن (-āvar, from آور دن, to bring), usually added to abstract nouns to make adjectives. These could have been covered under 10.2/A (agent participle) also, because they are in fact nothing but the present stems of the verbs عبرتانگیز; thus, حیرتانگیز (heyrat-angiz, astonishing) and دردآور (dard-āvar, causing pain) can be said to be the agent participles of the compound verbs درد آور دن and درد آور دن میرت انگیختن Other examples:

```
بحثانگیز (bahs-angiz, controversial), نفرتانگیز (nefrat-angiz, hateful, revolting)
revolting) خجالت آور (khējālat-āvar, embarrassing), خواب آور (khāb-āvar, sedative)
```

#### D. Resemblance

Suffixes used to show resemblance are -مانند (- $m\bar{a}nand$ ), صوار (- $v\bar{a}r$ ) عون (- $s\bar{a}n$ ) and گون (-gun/-gune). Examples:

Exercises

اسب مانند (asb-mānand, horse-like), تَپُه مانند (tappe-mānand, hill-like) اسب مانند (divāne-vār, madly, like crazy), بيگانه وا (bigāne-vār, like strangers) بيگانه وا (bargh-sān, fast, like lightning) برقسان (bargh-sān, fast, like lightning) گربه سان (gol-gun, rosy, rose-like), دُعاگونه (do'ā-gune, prayer-like)

Some independent words (+  $ez\bar{a}fe$ ) that mean 'like' are usually placed before the noun that they modify and (similar to like in English) function like prepositions. The most common of them are مثل (mesl-e, like) and مثل (shabih-e/shabih be, similar to); in formal/written Persian the words مانند ( $m\bar{a}nand-e$ ) and بگونهٔ (be-gune-ye) are used in a similar sense; (be- $s\bar{a}n$ -e) and همچون (chon) or همچون (ham-chon) are used in poetical language. Compare the usage:

To learn more about the structures used for resembling/comparing see Unit 11.

#### E. Time and location

Quite a few of the words you have learned so far are using suffixes that denote time or location; some of the more common ones are: عاد ( $-g\bar{a}h$ , as in عاد (دانشکاه), عاباد (دانشکده (خدد اله عند (خدانشکه (خانشکاه)) عاباد (دانشکه (عند اله عند (خانشکه اله عند (خانشکه (خانشکه اله اله عند (خانشکه (خان

#### **Exercises**

#### Exercise 10.1

Define the following words in Persian by using short and simple relative clauses, then translate. Examples:

$$\leftarrow$$
 کتابفروش کسی است که کتاب می فروشد  $\leftarrow$  کتابفروش (A bookseller is someone who sells books.) ساعتساز کسی است که ساعت می سازد  $\leftarrow$  ساعتساز (A watchmaker is someone who makes watches.)

Nouns and adjectives made from verbs Some prefixes and suffixes

#### Exercise 10.2

Find the different nouns and adjectives made from verbs in each sentence and write the verb on which they are based. Example:

- 1. او دروغگوی ماهری است و آیندهٔ خوبی در سیاست خواهد داشت (He is a skilled liar and will have a good future in politics.)
- 2. کمی بعد از رأی گیری، شمارشِ آراء را شروع کردند (Shortly after the voting, they started the counting of the votes.)
- 3. تعدادی از سربازان هم به شورشیان پیوستند (A number of the soldiers also joined the rebels.)
- 4. رانندهٔ تاکسی' از مهمترین فیلمهای این کارگردان است (Taxi Driver is one of the most important films by this director.)
- 5. آن ثروتِ بادآورده خیلی زود بر باد رفت (That easily gained wealth ['brought with the wind'] was very soon gone with the wind.)
- 6. دستگیری او از اتفاقات خبرساز آن سال بود (His arrest was one of the newsmaking events of that year.)
- 7. سخنران بعدى نتوانست بموقع بيايد و جلسه تعطيل شد (The next speaker wasn't able to come on time and the session was ended.)
- 8. حرفهای آن آدمِ نادان مشکل آفرین شد (The words of that stupid person created problems [/'became problem-creating'].)
- 9. یک پشهٔ خونخوار را شکار کردم (I hunted/trapped a bloodsucking mosquito.)
- 10. با كم شدنِ كتابخوانها، كتابفروشها بيكار مىشوند (With the decrease of readers [of books], booksellers lose their jobs ['become jobless'].)

#### Exercise 10.3

Change the '- $\bar{a}n$ ' present participle to a clause with ... در حالیکه ('as/while . . .'), then translate. Example:

خندان واردِ اتاق شد

 $\rightarrow$  در حالیکه می خندید واردِ اتاق شد (He entered the room [while he was] laughing.)

۱. بچهٔ همسایه گریان به خانهشان رفت.

۲. اشکریزان از آنجا دور شد و هنوز فریاد زنان را می شنید.

Exercises

- ۳. فریادزنان وارد خانه شدند و به دنبال مردهای خانه گشتند.
- ۴. خودش را لنگ لنگان به من رساند و از حال مادرم پرسید.
  - ۵. بچهها شادی کنان به هدایا حمله کردند.
  - ۶. گردش کنان تا کنار آن دریاچهٔ کوچک رفتیم.
  - ۷. چند نفر نزدیک شدند و تبریک گویان او را بوسیدند.
    - ۸. شناکنان خودش را به قایق نزدیک کرد.
  - ٩. لبخندزنان گفت: 'در عفو لذّتی است که در انتقام نیست.'
    - ١٠. دوان دوان تا خانهٔ عمویم رفتم و خبر را گفتم.

#### Exercise 10.4

Fill in the blanks by using one of the words given below (don't use any word twice), then translate. Words from which to choose:

محترم/محترمانه، احمق/احمقانه، استاد/استادانه، ناامید/ناامیدانه، شجاع/شجاعانه

- ١. كيفت حتماً پيدا خواهد شد، خيلي .....نباش.
- ٢. هنوز جوان است ولي خيلي .....يانو ميزند.
- ۳. با این حرفهای .....نشان داد که از کسی نمی ترسد.
- ۴. چطور ممكن است يک مرد ...... چنين حرف زشتى بزند؟
  - ۵. این سگِ .....نگذاشت آن مرد دخترم را بدزدد.
    - ۶. من از کارهای .....خودم خجالت میکشم.
      - ۷. عصبانی شدم چون با من .....حرف نزد.
- ۸ در کار خودش .....است و در این شهر خیلی معروف است.
- ٩. حدس مى زدم كه او ناصر نباشد، ولى باز هم ...... اسمش را پرسيدم.
  - ۱۰. ممكن است او همه چيز را نداند ولي ...... نيست.

#### Exercise 10.5

Try to guess the meaning and translate:

ا. بی پایان ۲. ضد آمریکائی ۳. نادرست ۴. بی جواب ۵. فاقد حمّام ۶. بی فکر
 ۷. غیرلازم ۸. پُرلذّت ۹. نامهربان ۱۰. ناتوان

Nouns and adjectives made from verbs Some prefixes and suffixes

#### Exercise 10.6

Use a word with one of the prefixes *bi-*, *kam-* or *por-* to complete the sentences, then translate. Example:

کسی که هیچ پولی ندارد، ...... است 
$$\rightarrow$$
 کسی که هیچ پولی ندارد، (One who has no money is penniless.)

- ۱. کسی که کار ندارد، .....است.
- ۲. کاری که خیلی خطر دارد، .....است.
- ۳. کاری که خیلی دردسر داشته باشد، .....است.
  - ۴. کتابی که زیاد غلط ندارد، ...... است.
    - ۵. کاری که نتیجهای ندارد، ...... است.
  - ع. کسی که سواد کافی ندارد، ..... است.
  - ۷. کسی که خیلی کار می کند، .....است.
    - ۸ کاری که بموقع نباشد، .....است.
  - ۹. آدمی که زیاد حرف میزند، .....است.
    - ۱۰. کسی که زیاد عقل ندارد، .....است.

The wise enemy lifts you, the foolish friend throws you down.

(= Foolish friends are worse than wise enemies.)

# UNIT ELEVEN ا فصل ۱۱ فصل السكل بيانِ تعجّب شكل بيانِ تعجّب السكل السكل

تبافه ا Ezāfe

#### 11.1 Exclamative form

Persian uses the word  $\Rightarrow$  [*che*] with both nouns and adjectives in exclamative phrases and sentences. When used with nouns, the indefinite -*i* is also added to the noun or to the (last) adjective if the noun is modified by adjective(s).

Unlike the interrogative *che*, which changes to = [chi] in spoken/Tehrani Persian, this = =always remains the same and does not change.

The word عجب [ajab], usually an interjection: 'how strange'] can also be used in such structures; in colloquial Persian you can also use چقدر ('how much') instead of چه, but mainly with adjectives (not nouns) or to modify the verb, in which case the verb will take the main stress.

#### Examples:

a) With nouns:

b) With adjectives:

c) Nouns and adjectives together:

Exclamative form

More on adjectives/adverbs

Comparison of adjectives

Fzāfe

d) In a sentence:

(اعجب) روز سردی بود! (What a cold day it was yesterday!) دیروز چه (اعجب) دخترهای قشنگ و باهوشی دارید! (What pretty and smart daughters you have!)

! چقدر می خوری (How much you eat! [= you eat a lot!]) – Here the verb (in this case mi-) takes the main stress; compare with a normal question in which the stress is on  $ch\acute{e}$ -ghadr:

(How much do you eat?) چقدر می خوری؟

#### 11.2 Some idiomatic usages of exclamative che

• Che + noun + ke + negative verb:

This usually has a meaning similar to خيلى + an affirmative verb, and the English translation would probably require an affirmative verb. Examples:

چه رشوهها که نداد تا پسرش آزاد شود! (= خیلی رشوه داد تا پسرش آزاد شود)

(What bribes he gave to have his son freed!)

چه حرفها که پشت سرش نمیزنند! (= خیلی پشت سرش حرف میزنند)

(What things they say behind his back!)

• بسیار [che besyār] is used to emphasize the high frequency of the occurrence; a more colloquial synonym would be چقدر زیاد ('how much'):

(How much/How often they advised/ warned him!)

(How often I saw him those days!) آن روزها چه بسیار او را می دیدم.

• بسا [che basā] is used for conjecture and speculation, when you are wondering: it is similar to 'maybe' (شاید, shāyad) or 'could it be that ...?':

(Maybe he doesn't know?) چه بسا نمی داند؟ (It's possible that he has come and has not found us.)

• برسد به being *subj.*) means 'let alone/not to mention/much less'; often preceded by هم (in the sense of 'even') for more emphasis:

Forms of adverbs – reviewing and expanding

ا بچه هم ندارم، چه رسد به نوه. (I don't even have children, let alone grandchildren.)

He didn't حتى سلام هم نگفت، تا چه برسد به اینکه دست بدهد. even say hello, let alone shake hands.)

• ابد... چه! – in its more complete form used with (مربوط (است) (marbut [ast]) or ربطی دارد (rabti dārad, both meaning 'is related') – is a common but rather rude way of saying that something does not concern someone, and it is originally an interrogative phrase turned exclamative. (You can use a question mark or an exclamation mark.)

ابه من چه! (I don't care!/Why should I care?) به من چه! (Why should it concern me?/Why should I care?) به من چه مربوط (است)! (None of your business!/It doesn't concern you!) به تو چه! (It's none of your father's business.)

(See also 4.7 for ...  $\Rightarrow$  or  $\Rightarrow$  or  $\Rightarrow$  and see 11.6 below for  $\Rightarrow$  comparative.)

#### 11.3 Forms of adverbs - reviewing and expanding

#### a) Adjectives

Most of the time, adjectives can be used as adverbs:

This pen is good./This pen writes well.) این قلم خوب مینویسد.

(He was angry./He talked angrily.) عصبانی بود./عُصبانی حرف میزُد.

#### b) به ابا + abstract noun

This is similar to saying with anger instead of angrily. The & which is used to make adverbs is often written joined as \_ (and & is dropped), while & as preposition is written separately. Sometimes either & or & can be used, sometimes only one of them. Examples:

این قلم بخوبی می نویسد./این قلم خوب می نویسد. well.) – Note that we don't have بد should also be used as adverb.

Fzāfe

Exclamative form More on adjectives/ adverbs Comparison of adjectives . در را بآسانی باز کردم./در را آسان باز کردم. (I opened the door easily.) با خوشحالی گفتم: البته! ('Of course!' I said happily.) با تعجب به من نگاه می کرد. (He was looking at me with astonishment.)

Some examples of adverbs with be- for which you cannot use  $b\bar{a}$ -:

حر /با For more emphasis, sometimes instead of با or با, expressions like حر /با نهایت (dar/bā kamāl-e) or در /با نهایت [dar/bā nahāyat-e] are used, in this usage both meaning 'with utmost'/'at the height of'/'extremely':

#### c) -āne suffix

We learned about the *-āne* suffix (that produces both adjectives and adverbs) in 10.4:

(I waited for her response impatiently.) بی صبرانه منتظر جوابش بودم. (They brutally massacred هزاران زندانی را وحشیانه قتَل عام کردند. (thousands of prisoners.)

#### d) Adjective + tanvin

This is mostly for adjectives borrowed from Arabic, and in contemporary Persian the *tanvin* sign (pronounced as a final -an; see I/1.2.6) is usually placed on an alef, regardless of the original Arabic spelling. Adjectives borrowed from Arabic usually have a different form for the abstract noun: سرعت [sari'] is fast and سرعت [sor'at] is speed. Compare in the following examples the different adverb forms:

```
'He answered quickly.' =

. سریع جواب داد.

به سرعت جواب داد.

به سرعت جواب داد.

(pronounce sari'an)

'He strongly objected.' =

او به شدّت مخالفت کرد.

(pronounce shadidan)
```

Much/many/ a lot (of)

You can't usually find adjectives that have both -āne (c) and tanvin (d) forms; it is either one or the other.

For numerative adverbs made from ordinal numbers, see 3.2/c. Some useful adverbs with *tanvin*:

#### 11.4 Much/many/a lot (of)

The words زياد [kheyli] and زياد [ziyād] in colloquial/less formal Persian, الميار [besyār] or فراوان [farāvān] in more formal and إسيار [basi] in literary/ poetical language are all used to mean much, many or a lot of.

**Table 11.1: A lot (of)** 

	COLLOQUIAL/INFORMAL	FORMAL/WRITTEN	LITERARY/POETICAL
He has a lot of pain.	خیلی درد دارد زیاد درد دارد دردِ زیادی دارد	بسیار درد دارد دردِ بسیار دارد دردِ بسیاری دارد دردِ فراوان دارد دردِ فراوانی دارد	فراوان درد دارد بسی درد دارد
He has a lot of books.	خیلی کتاب دارد زیاد کتاب دارد کتابهای زیادی دارد	بسیار کتاب دارد کتابهای بسیار دارد کتابهای بسیاری دارد کتابهای فراوان دارد کتابهای فراوانی دارد	فراوان کتاب دارد بسی کتاب دارد
He writes a lot.	خیلی مینویسد زیاد مینویسد	بسیار مینویسد فراوان مینویسد	بسی مینویسد

#### vs. خیلی - some differences

 Don't use زياد adverbially to modify an adjective in affirmative sentences, though it is common in the negative:

است (do not use زیاد here), but: هوا زیاد سرد نیست/ هوا خیلی سرد نیست

Exclamative form

adjectives/

adverbs Comparison of adjectives

Ezāfe

Use خیلی with comparative adjectives and adverbs, not

In this case, even when negative, خيلي (or چندان, *chandān*; see 12.3) are the preferred adverbs.

**Much too/too much:** If you use زيادى  $[ziy\bar{a}di]$  with stressed -i, the meaning is  $much\ too$  or  $too\ much$ . (In Table 11.1,  $ziy\bar{a}di$  ended in unstressed, indefinite -i.) Expressions like زياده از حد  $[ziy\bar{a}de\ az\ hadd]$ , نيش از حد  $[bish\ az\ hadd]$  or  $[bish\ az\ and\bar{a}ze]$  can also be used. Examples:

.This lesson is [much] too difficult.) این درس زیادی سخت است. (You trust yourself too much.)

(He doesn't work and کار نمی کند و بیش از اندازه حرف می زند. talks too much.)

#### 11.5 Little/a little and few/a few

[kam] can be used for both *little* and *few*. with -*i* can also be used in this sense but only after (and not before) a *plural noun* (or uncountable noun) +  $ez\bar{a}fe$ . If used before, it would mean a *little* or a few:

some/a little money کمی پول = little money عبول کمی

A little or a few can be expressed in the following ways:

- کمی [kami, a little] or قدری/مقداری [ghadri/meghdāri, both meaning 'some amount of'] for uncountables

  (Note: when these are followed by از [az, of], thus becoming definite, Persian allows the use of the plural even for uncountables);
- (تا) چند (تا [chand (tā), some] or تعدادي [te'dādi, a number of] for countables.

and تعدادی are followed by singular nouns, چند by plural nouns.

and کمتر can be used as adverbs also in the sense of *hardly* or *less frequently*.

a few	چند/چند تا سیب خریدم. (I bought some/a few apples.) چند تا از سیبها را خوردم. (I ate some/a few of the apples.) تعدادی دانشجو دیدم. (I saw a number of students.) با تعدادی از دانشجوها حرف زدم. (I talked to a number of the students.)
a little	کمی شکر خریدم. (I bought some/a little sugar.) کمی از شکر(/شکرها) را در آب ریختم. (I poured some/a little of the sugar into the water.) کمی /قدری /مقداری پول به من داد. (He gave me some/a little money.) مقداری از پول (/پولها) را به من داد. (He gave me some of the money.)
few/little	کم سیب خریدم./سیب کم خریدم./سیبهای کمی خریدم. (I bought few apples.) کم پول به من داد./پول کمی به من داد. (He gave me little money.)
adverbial usage	او را خیلی کم می شناسم. (I hardly know him./I know him very little.) کمتر کسی این را می داند. (Hardly anyone knows/Few people know this.) او را کم می بینم./کمتر او را می بینم. (I hardly see him [at all].)

As you may have noticed, kam-tar + an indefinite noun = hardly any; as in:

Hardly anyone knows where he is.) کمتر کسی می داند که او کجاست. (There is hardly anyone who knows where he is.)

روزی هست که او را نبینم. (There is hardly any day when I don't see him.)

کمتر مردی را می بینی که اینقدر در خانه کار کند. (You hardly see a man who works so much at home.)

Exclamative form

More on adjectives/ adverbs

Comparison of adjectives

Ezāfe

#### 11.6 More on comparison of adjectives/adverbs

a) يشتر (more) and کمتر (less) – a different usage

You know that بیشتر with ezāfe means 'most of', e.g. بیشتر emost of the days; and sometimes بیشتر is used as an adverb meaning mostly:

این کتاب بیشتر دربارهٔ تاریخ آفریقا است. (This book is mostly about the history of Africa.)

Examples of بیشتر and کمتر without the second part of the comparison being mentioned:

```
.(You should sleep more.) باید بیشتر بخوابی. (I see him less often.)
```

Occasionally different meanings can be possible, especially when some amount/quantity is mentioned.

For instance, the sentence این کتابخانه پنجاه هزار کتاب بیشتر دارد can mean:

- i. This library has more than 50,000 books.
- ii. This library has 50,000 books more [than some other library, not mentioned here].

The same ambiguity can happen with کمتر, for instance کمتر دارد can mean:

- i. Parviz is below 30.
- ii. Parvis is 30 years younger.
- b) هرچه + comparative
- هر چه **followed by two comparatives** is similar to two English comparatives preceded by *the*:

```
هرچه زودتر، بهتر (The sooner, the better.)
هرچه زودتر بروید بهتر خواهد بود. (The sooner you go, the better it will be.)
```

• مرچه followed by only one comparative has the meaning of 'as ... as possible':

```
هرچه زودتر (As soon as possible.)
نامه را هرچه سریعتر تمام کن. (Finish the letter as fast as possible.)
بوفیقِ هرچه بیشترِ شما را آرزو می کنم. (I wish you the utmost success/as much success as possible.)
```

The latter version (with one comparative) would be close in meaning to:

 $superlative + noun + ez\bar{a}fe + i$  one (momken, possible),

or using expressions like در نهایت (dar nahāyat-e, with the utmost), as in these examples:

- اب احترام هرچه بیشتر جواب دادم. (I responded with as much respect [/as respectfully] as possible.)
- I responded with the most با بیشترین احترامِ ممکن جواب دادم. = (I responded with the most respect possible [/as respectfully as possible].)
- (I responded with the utmost respect.) در نهایتِ احترام جواب دادم. =

The expression بیش از پیش (more than before, more than ever) is also very close to هرچه بیشتر and they are sometimes interchangeable.

#### c) Comparative with U [ta] instead of 31 [az]

The preposition used for the comparative is  $\mathfrak{Z}$  (see I/8.1.1). However, if the second part (or 'standard') of comparison is mentioned after the main verb, then  $\mathfrak{U}$  is used instead of  $\mathfrak{Z}$  – and this can occasionally reduce ambiguities:

Can have two meanings: (من) مینا را بیشتر از تو می بینم

- i) I see Mina more than [I see] you, or
- ii) I see Mina more than you [do].

By changing من) مينا را بيشتر از تو مي بينم) to the version with ت, we would have two different versions for (i) and (ii):

- (من) مینا را بیشتر می بینم تا تو را (i
- من مینا را بیشتر می بینم تا تو (ii

As you notice, in (i) it is the final 1, that brings clarity, and in (ii) we can't drop the subject because it needs emphasis.

Similarly, the sentence به من کمتر آز تو پول داد can have two meanings, and we will give here the version with تا for each of those meanings:

- i) He gave me less money than you [did].
  - cannot be dropped here); او به من كمتر پول داد تا تو.
- ii) He gave less money to me than to you.
  - او) به من کمتر پول داد تا به تو. (Note the clarifying presence of the second به here.)

More on comparison of adjectives/ adverbs Exclamative form

More on adjectives/ adverbs

Comparison of adjectives

Frafe

The comparative with  $t\bar{a}$  is usually used in affirmative sentences; it would sound a little awkward with the negative.

#### d) Superlative with ezāfé

So far you have learned to say

- يک سيب بزرگتر (yek sib-e bozorgtar, a bigger apple), and
- بزرگترین سیب (bozorgtarin sib, the biggest apple) (see I/8.1.2) which means: superlative precedes the noun and needs no  $ez\bar{a}fe$ .

However, when used before plural nouns, an  $ez\bar{a}fe$  can be added to the superlative – if needed – to function like of after an English superlative. 'The biggest of the apples', then, would be بزرگترینِ سیبها (bozorgtarin-e sib- $h\bar{a}$ ) while بزرگترین سیبها (bozorgtarin sib- $h\bar{a}$ ) without  $ez\bar{a}fe$  would simply mean 'the biggest apples'.

Other examples:

- (behtarin mive, the best fruit) بهترين ميوه
  - $\rightarrow$  بهترین میوهها (behtarin mive-h $\bar{a}$ , the best fruits)
  - ightarrow بهترین میوهها (behtarin-e mive-h $ar{a}$ , the best of the fruits)
- (khoshgeltarin dokhtar, the prettiest girl) خو شگلترین دختر
  - $\rightarrow$  خوشگلترین دخترها (khoshgeltarin dokhtar-h $ar{a}$ , the prettiest girls)
  - ightarrow خوشگلترین دخترها (khoshgeltarin-e dokhtar-h $ar{a}$ , the prettiest of the girls)

#### 11.7 Equal comparison; resemblance and sameness

The most common structure used in Persian for equal comparison  $(`as \dots as \dots ')$  is:

$$be$$
-/ $b\bar{a}$  +  $abstract$   $noun$  +  $ez\bar{a}fe$   
یه زیبائی [ $be$   $zib\bar{a}'i$ - $ye$ ] = as beautiful as

You know how you can make adverbs by using an abstract noun after به or ال (see 11.3/b) – here you only need to add an  $ez\bar{a}fe$  to that structure. is more common here than ابه and is usually written separately. (To make abstract nouns from adjectives, add stressed -i, as in زيبائی  $\rightarrow$  زيبائی; see I/6.3). See comparisons with adverbial use in the following examples:

Equal comparison; resemblance and sameness

```
.با دقّت به حرفهایم گوش کرد. (He carefully listened to my words.) با دقّت به حرفهایم گوش کرد. (He works with the precision of [as precisely as] a machine.)
```

(He quickly put on his jacket and left.) بسرعت کتش را پوشید و رفت. (He ran out of the house as fast as lightning.)

(His hands were as cold as ice.) دستهایش به سردیِ یخ بود. (Her hair is as white as snow.) موهایش به سفیدیِ برف است. (Shiraz is not as large as Isfahan.)

When the second part of the comparison is a singular demonstrative pronoun (اَن or این), it is more common to place it before the abstract noun (with no  $ez\bar{a}fe$ ):

گلی به این قشنگی (a flower as beautiful as this) is more common than گلی به قشنگی این .

Expressions like به اندازهٔ/بقدر (meaning 'to the size/extent/amount of') can also be used to convey this kind of equal comparison:

من به زرنگیِ تو نیستم. (I'm not as smart as you.) من به اندازهٔ تو زرنگ نیستم. = تاب به سادگیِ کتابِ قبلی نیست. (This book is not as simple as the previous one.) این کتاب بقدر کتاب قبلی ساده نیست. =

Using به اندازهٔ/بقدر is especially common in cases where the basis of comparison is not an 'abstract' noun, or with longer compound adjectives:

(Talk as big as your mouth.) به قدر دهنت حرف بزن.

However هر چقدر هم که درس خوانده باشد، به اندازهٔ یک الاغ نمی فهمد. much he may have studied, he doesn't understand so much as a donkey.)

این فیلم به اندازهٔ فیلم قبلی خسته کننده نبود. (This film was not so boring as the previous one.)

همان (hamān, the same, that same) or the more colloquial همين is also very common, giving them the meaning of as much/to the same amount or extent, while

Exclamative form

More on adjectives/ adverbs

Comparison of adjectives

Ezāfe

11

using 45 before the second part of the comparison (which can then turn into a clause by adding a verb):

(His brother was also as [much] talkative.) برادرش هم همانقدر پُرحرف بود. (His brother was also as talkative as him[self].)

is used in the sense of 'as much as/so far as': تا جائی که or تا آنجا که

```
... تا آنجا که من می دانم...)
... (So far as I know...) تا جائی که به شما مربوط می شود...)
```

We learned a few prefixes earlier that are used to show resemblance (see 10.5/D). Some more words now:

Words that mean *like* (used as *prep*.):

- colloquial + formal: مثل (mesl-e), شبيه (shabih-e)
- formal/written: مانند (mānand-e)
- poetical: همچون (hamānand-e), چون (chon), همچون (ham-chon), به سان (be sān-e)

Words that mean alike (adj.):

- colloquial + formal: مثل هم (mesl-e ham), شبیه (shabih), مثابه (moshābeh)
- formal/written: همانند (hamānand), همانند (ham-sān), يكسان (yek-sān)

Verbs that mean to resemble (all of them with هـ):

شبیه بودن (shebāhat dāshtan), شباهت داشتن (shabih budan) شبیه بودن (moshābehat dāshtan), مشابهت داشتن (mānestan)

For *exactly like* use درست مثل (*dorost mesl-e*) or عين (*eyn-e*) before the noun, and for *the same as* use همان (*hamān*) predicatively.

#### Examples:

This is how you say 'a dog is like/resembles a wolf' (or they are alike) in Persian (ignoring the more literary/poetical versions):

- سگ مثل گرگ است.
- سگ و گُرگ مثل هم هستند.

Adjective placed before noun. More on ezāfe

- سگ شبیه گرگ است.
   سگ و گرگ شبیه (/شبیه یکدیگر) هستند.
  - سگ مانندِ گرگ است.
  - سگ به گُرگ می ماند.
  - سگ و گرگ به یکدیگر می مانند.
    - سگ به گرگ شباهت دارد.
  - سگ و گرگ به یکدیگر شباهت دارند.
- سگ و گرگ مشابه (/مشابهِ یکدیگر) هستند.
  - سگ و گرگ به یکدیگر مشابهت دارند.

#### 11.8 Adjective placed before noun. More on ezāfe

Adjectives are usually placed after the noun, and they are connected through an  $ez\bar{a}fe$ , as in  $oldsymbol{n}$ ,  $oldsymbol{n}$  (mard-e khub, the good man). In poetical language, however, the adjective can be placed before the noun, the two words making some sort of compound, and there is no  $ez\bar{a}fe$ .

You might ask now: Can I say خوبمرد (khub-mard) instead of مردِ خوب? Answer: No, you can't – because:

- a) you are not writing a poem, are you? and
- b) even if you were, then you should substitute the word خوب with the more literary/poetical sounding word نیک and say نیکمرد (nik-mard, a good and benevolent man).

Some very common compound words, however, use this form:

پیرزن (pir-zan, old woman, used in a generic sense) پیرزن (zan-e pir) ټر پیر (pir-mard, old man, used in a generic sense) مرد پیر (mard-e pir) مرد پیر (sefid-pust, white-skinned, belonging to the white race) سفیدپوست (siyāh-pust, black-skinned, belonging to the black race) سیاهپوست (khosh-bakht, fortunate) خوشبخت (bad-bakht, unfortunate)

# Exclamative form More on adjectives/ adverbs Comparison of adjectives

Fzāfe

11

#### **Exercises**

#### Exercise 11.1

Choose one of the following to fill in the blanks, then translate:

- مینا نیامد، ..... نمی دانست که باید بیاید.
- $\rightarrow$  بسا جه بسا (Mina didn't come; maybe she didn't know that she had to come.)
- ١. بالاخره او را خواهم ديد، ...... در خانهٔ خودش در تهران چه در اصفهان.
- ٢. فكر مي كردم او اين حرف را گفته است، ولي ...... اشتباه كرده باشم.
  - ۲. خیلی کم گردش کردیم، ولی نمی دانی ...... هوای خوبی بود!
    - ۲. این باغ وحش حتّی یک خرس هم ندارد، ...... فیل.
      - ، باید برای شام .....سس سریعتر به خانه برگردیم.
- ۶. حالا عجله نكن، بعداً در ايران ...... براى اين كار وقت خواهى داشت.
  - ۷. چیز بیشتری نمی دانم و ....... می دانستم به شما گفتم.
  - ٨ ديگر نميخواهم اسمش را بشنوم، ......از او كتاب قرض بگيرم.
- ٩. ممكن است من درسم را خوب نخوانده باشم، ولى اين به شما..........؟
  - ١٠. در تمام اين سالها ..... خواسته است برايش خريدهام.

#### Exercise 11.2

Choose the correct answer. Example:

le مى تواند (خوب/خوبى/كمال خوبى) بنويسد. خوب  $\rightarrow$ 

- ۱. من می توانم آن را از اینجا (راحتی/براحتی/در کمال راحت) ببینم.
- ا. نامه ای را که از من خواسته اند باید (به سریع /سرعت/سریعاً) بنویسم.
  - ٣. خودت عاقل هستي ولي اين (برادرت/کارت/سگت) عاقلانه نبود.
- ۴. ما زیاد وقت نداریم و احتیاج به یک جواب (سریع/سرعت/سریعاً) داریم.
- ۵. مثل حیوانهای (وحشی/وحشیانه/وحشیانهای) به ما حمله کردند و کتکمان زدند.
  - ۶. به شکل (وحشی/وحشیانه/وحشیانهای) به او حمله کردند و کتکش زدند.
    - الم است و می توانید خانه را ترک کنید.

Exercises

 داروی این دکتر هم نتوانست بچه را (آرام/آرامی/به آرامی) کند. ۹. صدای بدی ندارد ولی امروز در برنامه خیلی (بد/بدی/به بدی) خواند.

١٠. لازم نيست خيلي (دوست/دوستي/دوستانه) يا او حرف يزنيد.

#### Exercise 11.3

Choose one of the following to fill in the blanks; the translations will help you to make the right choice:

#### Example:

I didn't stay longer) بيشتر نماندم چون خيلي .....وقت داشتم because I had very little time.)

 $\rightarrow$  کم

او حتماً خواهد آمد ولى بايد ..... بيشتر صبر كنيد. (She will certainly come, but you have to wait a little longer.)

باید یک جفت کفش نو بخرم ولی پول .....دارم. (I must buy a pair of shoes, but I have too little money.)

..... استادی به اندازهٔ او دانشجوها را می خنداند.

(Hardly any professors make the students laugh as much as he does.) ابن كفش فقط كمي تنگ است، ولي آن يكي ...... تنگ بود.

(These shoes are only a little small ['tight'], but those were too small.)

.....روزها او را در خیابان جلو آن مغازه می بینم. (Most of the days I see him on the street in front of that store.)

از وقتی که آبستن شده .....او را در کتابخانه میبینم. (Since she got pregnant I have hardly seen her at all in the library.)

اگر كمى .....حرف مىزد، همه خوابشان مىبرد. .\ (If he had talked a little longer, everybody would have fallen asleep.)

> بايد .....درس بخواني تا نتيجهٔ خوب بگيري. (You must study a lot to get good results.)

اصلاً کار نمی کرد چون ..... تنیل بود. (He never worked because he was too lazy.)

۱۰. این تمرین برای من ...... آسان بود.

(This exercise was too easy for me.)

Exclamative form

More on adjectives/ adverbs

Comparison of adjectives

Ezāfe

#### Exercise 11.4

Change the comparatives with az to comparatives with  $t\bar{a}$ . Example:

او از من دیرتر رسید او دیرتر رسید تا من 
$$\leftarrow$$

- ۱. پدرم خیلی بهتر از من شطرنج بازی می کند.
- ۱. درس دوّم را خیلی زودتر از درس اوّل تمام کردیم.
- ۳. خربزههای ایران خیلی بزرگتر و شیرینتر از خربزههای آمریکا بودند.
- ۴. در مدارس ایران بیشتر از مدارس آمریکا به ریاضیات توجه میکنند.
  - ۵. او خیلی سریعتر از من کار می کند.
  - ع. تو بیشتر از خواهرت در خانه می مانی.
  - ٧. شما این مقاله را دقیقتر از او ترجمه کردهاید.
  - ٨ اين چيزها را بچّهها بهتر از آدمبزرگها مي فهمند.
    - ٩. ما خانهمان را زودتر از شما خریدیم.
      - ۱۰. درس تاریخ جالبتر از فلسفه است.

#### Exercise 11.5

Translate into English.

- ۱. نگاه کن، درست عین مادرش می خندد!
- ۲. اوضاع کشور به همان خرابی قبل است.
- ۳. سخنران به بزرگی مشکلات کشور اشاره کرد.
  - ۴. کمتر شاعری به بزرگی حافظ می توان یافت.
- ۵. من به اندازهٔ شما به موسیقی سنّتی علاقه ندارم.
- ۶. باید برای این بچّه تان هم همانقدر وقت صرف کنید که برای قبلی می کردید.
  - ٧. تا به حال موئی به این قرمزی دیده بودی؟
  - ۸. مگر دیوانه بود که با مردی به این بدی ازدواج کرد؟
    - ۹. روزهای من به تاریکی شبهای شما شدهاند.
  - ١٠. من بقدر تو بدبين نيستم ولي خيلي هم خوشبين نيستم.

Exercises

#### Exercise 11.6

Translate into Persian. You don't need to mention all possible synonyms, but if two structurally different renderings are possible mention both. (Some of the words you can use have been given at the end of the exercise.)

- 1. This dog is as large as a horse.
- 2. This parrot talks exactly like people. [Use آدم/آدمها for people.]
- 3. Believe me, I'm as tired as you are.
- 4. Are days in summer as long as nights in winter?
- 5. She resembles a flower in this dress.
- 6. I'll die if I run as fast as vou do.
- 7. Onion is almost as useful as garlic.
- 8. Will garlic smell as bad by any other name? (Use 'with' for 'by.')
- 9. This exercise was as boring as the previous one.
- 10. I hope he doesn't act as stupidly as he talks.

سگ/اسب/بزرگ/طوطی/آدم/درست مثلِ/باور کردن/خسته/خسته کننده/روز/شب/تابستان/زمستان/دراز/لباس/گل/تند/دویدن/مردن/پیاز/ سیر/مفید/تقریباً/بو/بدبو/تمرین/قبلی/امیدوار/رفتار/احمقانه

#### ملّا شدن چه آسان، آدم شدن چه مشكل!

How easy to become a mullah, how hard to become a human!

(= It's not some education that makes you a good person.)

#### **UNIT TWELVE**

Correlative conjunctions

More on subordinate clauses

A review of  $t\bar{a}$ 

فصل ۱۲ حرف ربطهای پیوسته باز هم جملاتِ تبعی مرور 'تا'

#### 12.1 Correlative conjunctions

Correlative (or reciprocating) conjunctions work in pairs, usually joining words (or groups of words) that are of equal weight. If the sentence has only one main verb, it is usually placed before the second part of these conjunctions; using a comma to separate the two parts is optional.

In the following list, you already know the first two (see 4.7).

• ... خواه ... خواه ... both جه ... چه ... and ... خواه ... غواه ... خواه ... غواه ... خواه ... غواه ... خواه ... غواه ... خواه ... خواه

من خواهم رفت، چه تو بیائی چه نیائی. (I'll go, whether you come or you don't.)

باید آن را بخوانی، خواه خوشت بیاید خواه نه. (You must read it, whether you like it or not.)

Based on this ' $kh\bar{a}h$  . . .  $kh\bar{a}h$  . . . ' conjunction (from the verb خواستن), Persian has the very common adverbs خواه ناخواه ( $kh\bar{a}h$ - $n\bar{a}$ - $kh\bar{a}h$ , willy-nilly, whether desired or not, no matter what) or خواهی نخواهی ( $kh\bar{a}hi$ - $nakh\bar{a}hi$ , same meaning):

. کواهی یک روز می فهمد. (One day he will find out, whether you like it or not.)

• ...  $y\bar{a}$  ...  $y\bar{a}$  ...] means 'either ... or ...':

یا امروز می آید یا فردا. (She comes either today or tomorrow.) یا درس بخوان یا به مادرت کمک کن. (Either study or help your Mom.)

Correlative conjunctions

• ... الله ... na ... ] means 'neither ... nor ... ':

.نه خیلی سخت است نه آسان. (It's neither very difficult nor easy.) نه نامهای نوشت، نه تلفنی زد. (He neither wrote a letter nor telephoned.)

Note that if you have words like a or a or a (that normally require a negative verb) in sentences with 'neither . . . nor . . . ,' you don't need a negative verb any more:

انه هیچوقت او را میبینم نه دوستش را. (Neither do I ever see her nor her friend.)

- ... هم ... هم [ham ... ham ...] means 'both ... and ...':
  - (I know both your brother and your sister.)
  - . هم غذا پخت (He both cleaned the house and cooked.)

Note: with all of the above correlative conjunctions, in colloquial/less careful Persian you might see a redundant  $_{\mathfrak{I}}$  [va, and] before the second part, especially if the relation between the two parts is not that strong:

هم مادرم مرد و هم در امتحان رد شدم. (Both my mother died and I failed in the exam.)

- - به من هم. (He has not only lied to you but to me as well.)
  - She not only) نه فقط خوب میخواند، (بلکه) خوب هم میرقصد. sings well but also dances well.)
  - (She not نه تنها درسش را تمام کرد، (بلکه) کارِ خوبی هم پیدا کرد. only finished her studies but found a good job too.)

## Correlative conjunctions More on subordinate clauses A review of tā

12

### 12.2 More on subordinate clauses and matching adverbial phrases

Several types of subordinate clauses have already been covered, like *relative clauses* (I/19), *if-clauses* in conditionals (I/16) and *time clauses* (I/18).

Subordinate clauses usually need conjunctions which are often a preposition + مانت (see I/17). Here we learn more about conjunctions used in clauses of purpose ('so that'), cause ('because'/'therefore'), result ('so/such...that'), contrast/concession ('although') – and also certain temporal idioms (like had hardly and no sooner; see 12.4).

#### 12.2.1 Clauses of purpose, cause and effect

**A.** To say 'He came here (in order) to see you,' you normally say in Persian:

The conjunction 45 in the above sentence can also be dropped, or can be replaced by any of the following conjunctions:

Here you can switch the two clauses but you can't use 45 or " (in this sense) at the beginning of the first clause:

Another possibility would be using a preposition:

Instead of براي in the above sentence, you can use any of the following:

**B.** To say 'He came here because he wanted to see you,' you normally say in Persian:

Instead of the conjunction چون in the above sentence you can use any of the following:

چونکه/زیرا/چرا که/برای اینکه/به خاطرِ آنکه/به دلیلِ آنکه/به جهتِ آنکه/ به سبب آنکه

You can switch the two clauses again, only you can't use زيرا or إزيرا at the beginning of the sentence – and you can additionally use از آنجاکه instead:

**C.** To say 'He wanted to see you; therefore, he came here,' you normally say in Persian:

Instead of به همین دلیل in the above sentence you can use any of the following:

Two notes:

- As you noticed, به خاطر can both mean for the purpose of (which is about the future) and because of (which is about the past).
- It is good to be reminded again that اینکه is more common than اینکه in less formal Persian while some expressions like به سبب and به جهت are more formal and for these به جهت

#### 12.2.2 Clauses of contrast/concession

In concessive statements you have words like اگر چه meaning although.

A. To say 'Although it was raining, we waited,' you normally say in Persian:

Instead of اگرچه ('although') in the above sentence you can use any of the following:

More on subordinate clauses and matching adverbial phrases Correlative conjunctions

More on subordinate

subordinate clauses A review of tā You can switch the two clauses, using the same conjunctions.

Sometimes in clauses of concession, two conjunctions are used for emphasis, each introducing one of the clauses. Though an obvious redundancy, this is not a rarity in Persian:

and به رغم and على can be used as prepositions also:

**B.** To say 'It was raining; nevertheless, we waited,' you normally say in Persian:

Instead of با اینهمه ('however') in the above sentence you can use one of the following:

#### 12.2.3 Clauses of result (or consequence)

In *clauses of result* (or *consequence*), Persian usually uses different words in the first clause and begins the second clause with 45 [ke]. The words used include:

• مانقدر/بينقدر/بينقدر/بينادازهاي all meaning 'so, so much, so many, to such an extent':

(She was so tired that she immediately fell asleep.)

آنقدر پول دارد که نمی داند با آن چکار کند.

آنقدر کتاب خواند که کور شد.

بقدری سریع رفت که کیفش را فراموش کرد.

See 4.6/b for more examples with آنقدر in a different sense.

Also note that '... که '' differs from '... تا '.', the latter usually meaning 'keep doing something until ...:'

(I kept calling until ) آنقدر تلفن زدم تا بالأخره كسى جواب داد. someone finally answered.)

Other usages of چندان and More چنان conjunctions

• (به) طوری (still more col.), به گونهای (form./lit.), all meaning 'in such a way':

(He walked in such a طوری راه میرفت که معلوم بود خسته است. way that it was obvious that he was tired.)

به گونهای بیمار بود که باید به بیمارستان برده می شد.

For '... که انگار ... که انگار ... ) see 5.4.

• ينان (form./lit.):

جنان زیباست که همه را می فریبد. (She is so beautiful that she spellbinds everybody.)

چنان زیبا میخواند که چندین بار جایزهٔ اوّل را بُرد. چنان کار سختی را در یک هفته نمی توان تمام کرد.

Note that '... که گوئی... ' (in such a way as if ...) is a formal or literary version of '... که انگار ... که انگار (see 5.4):

form.: چنان سخن می گفت که گوئی ما کودکیم (He talked in such a way as if we were children.)

(Same meaning.) طوری حرف می زد (که) انگار ما بچّه ایم

• چندان (so, so much, so many) (poet.)

(It was so late that everybody محندان دیر بود که همگان خفته بودند.) الله ad gone to bed.)

Compare this with the colloquial version:

آنقدر دير بود كه همه خوابيده بودند.

Another example:

(He found so many چندان کتاب در آن خانه یافت که حیرت کرد. books in that house that he was astounded.)

#### 12.3 Other usages of چنان and چنان. More conjunctions

#### [chandān] چندان A.

In its usage as *consecutive conjunction*, the word چندان was labeled above as *poetical*, which limited its usage. However, چندان can be used in colloquial Persian as 'much/that much' in negative sentences:

Correlative conjunctions More on subordinate clauses

A review of tā

(This lesson was not that difficult.) این درس چندان سخت هم نبود.

"not much': زياد نه means نه چندان

(- 'Did he eat?' - 'Not much: - 'غذا خورد؟' - 'نه چندان؛ اشتها نداشت.' he had no appetite.')

#### [chenān-ke] جنان که

(also written چنانکه ) is different from '... که ... که نانکه (منانکه also written) چنانکه and means as or the way that:

```
(... As you know) چنانکه می دانید ...
(... As you see ...) چنانکه می سند
(...) As we have been told ...) چنانکه به ما گفتهاند
```

(I don't know him much.) او را چندان نمی شناسم.

is formal (like چنانکه itself); a very common colloquial synonym is (همان طور که hamān-towr-ke, written also) همانطور که

(... As I had told you ...) همانطورکه به شما گفته بودم...

#### [ham-chenān-ke] همچنان که

ham-chenān-ke, in the same way that] has two meanings and functions:

1) It can have the same meaning as چنانکه (see above), maybe even more formal:

(...) همچنانکه اعلام شده است...

2) It means در حالکه (the temporal 'while/as' or 'at the same time that'):

At the) همچنانکه غذایش را میخورد، به اخبار رادیو گوش می کرد. same time that he was eating, he was listening to the news on the radio.)

#### Note 1:

Used as adverb (and not conjunction), همچنان [ham-chenān] means still (form.; its colloquial synonym being هنوز, hanuz), while همچنين [hamchenin] means also or, in the negative, neither/nor (= بنيز, niz, both of them form.; their colloquial synonym being همينطو ر, hamin-towr):

Temporal idioms: had hardly/ scarcely and no sooner

(He still works in Mashhad.) او همچنان (= هنوز) در مشهد کار می کند. (We also need a larger car.)

ر. (You didn't sleep, and neither did I.) – In more formal/literary language, the last part should have been من نيز همچنين (See also 13.2.1.)

#### Note 2:

There is no همچنین که (ham-chenin-ke) in contemporary Persian, although in the colloquial/Tehrāni accent you hear همچین که /همچیکه (hamchin-ke/hamchi-ke) used as a synonym for همینکه (hamin-ke, as soon as) – which is a temporal conjunction used in time clauses (see I/18.3).

### 12.4 Temporal idioms: had hardly/scarcely and no sooner

For the idiomatic 'had hardly [/scarcely/barely] ... when ...' what you need in Persian is:

This can also have shorter versions: sometimes no *hanuz*, and sometimes just a negative past participle instead of the past perfect (as mentioned earlier; see 6.3.2). But it works best when all ingredients are there:

المنوز تنم را نشسته بودم که آب سرد شد. (I had scarcely washed my body when the water became cold.)

(I had hardly started the story when he fell asleep.)

For 'no sooner ... than ...' you need no negative, and you use تازه instead of هنوز:

No sooner had I started) تازه قصه را شروع کرده بودم که خوابش برد. the story than he fell asleep.)

I had no sooner تازه در را باز کرده بودم که گربه بیرون دوید. opened the door than the cat ran out.)

Correlative conjunctions

More on subordinate clauses

A review of tā

12

تا or with همینکه compare with

(As soon as I opened the door, the cat ran out.)

تا در را باز کردم، گربه بیرون دوید.

تا در را باز کردم، گربه بیرون دوید.

And this seems to be a good point to turn our attention to U.

#### 12.5 A review of the omnipotent $\forall$ ( $t\bar{a}$ )

To use the word  $\ddot{}$  itself to describe it, we should say it is بی همتا (bi-ham- $t\bar{a}$ ), meaning matchless and incomparable.

- As a noun yes, a noun too! it means (among others) a 'match' and 'a fold' from which we have the verb تا کر دن ('to fold') and the agent participle تاشو (tā-show, foldable, folding).
- As a numerative, U is the most common counting word used after numbers, which, in certain cases, is indispensable for example when numbers are used as pronouns (see I/3.4):

• As a preposition – both temporal and locational – it means *until/up to/as far as* (see I/17.1):

• In the comparative, it can function as *than* when placed after the verb (see 11.6/c):

- Most importantly, as a conjunction (see 12.2.1 also),  $\[mu]$  has at least five different usages:
  - a) It means 'in order to' (= برای اینکه) or 'so that' when introducing a subsequent clause and will always require the subjunctive:

b) It also means 'until' when introducing a subsequent clause, with the subjunctive if about future (or future in the past):

A review of the omnipotent  $\[ \[ \] \]$  ( $tar{a}$ )

.(We'll wait until he comes.) صبر می کنیم تا بیاید. (We waited for him to come.) صبر کردیم تا آمد. (We waited until he came.)

c) Introducing the first clause, it can still mean 'until'/'for as long as' with an affirmative verb (see also I/18.5):

تا هوا اینطور است (باشد) نمی توانیم برویم. تا او در تهران زندگی می کرد پدرش زنده بود.

The meaning changes to 'until'/'by the time that' if the verb indicates the completion of an action (and not a state; no progressive tenses; and often a perfect tense in the main clause):

اتا این کتاب را تمام کنم موهایم سفید شده است. (By the time I finish this book, my hair will have turned white.)
اتا او از سفر برگشت پدرش مرده بود. (By the time he returned from the trip, his father had died.)

d) Introducing the first clause (with the negative), it means 'so long as'
 – or 'until' if you translate as the affirmative. Use the subjunctive if about the future:

را نمی آورم. (I won't bring the ice-cream so long as you don't eat [= until you eat] your food.) تا غذایم را نخوردم به من بستنی نداد. (She didn't give me ice-cream so long as I hadn't eaten [= until I ate] my food.)

e) Finally, introducing the first clause, it can mean 'as soon as' (= همينكه), with the main stress on  $t\bar{a}$ ; see the different tenses and moods below:

تا در را باز کند، همه چیز را خواهد فهمید. (As soon as he opens the door, he will understand everything.)

تا در را باز کرد، همه چیز را فهمید. (As soon as he opened the door, he realized everything.)

تا به خانه می آید، می رود جلو تلویزیون. (As soon as he comes home, he goes in front of the TV.)

تا دکتر را می دید فرار می کرد. (He used to run away as soon as he saw the doctor.)

تا دکتر را دید فرار کرد. (He ran away as soon as he saw the doctor.)

Correlative conjunctions

More on subordinate clauses
A review of tā

## اینکه .vs که !12.6 Noun clauses

اینکه/این که sentence with a noun clause, you would usually need اینکه این که (and not اَنکه) at the beginning of the sentence. Such a noun clause may function

- as the subject,
- as direct object (این را که), or
- as indirect object (a preposition + *in-ke*).

See how the conjunction *ke* (in the middle of the sentence) changes to *in-ke* (at the beginning) in the following examples:

## Subject:

- (It was obvious from the beginning that she would not marry him.)
- $\rightarrow$  اینکه با او ازدواج نخواهد کرد از اوّل معلوم بود. (That she would not marry him was obvious from the beginning.)

## Direct object:

- همه می دانستند که با او ازدواج نخواهد کرد. (Everybody knew that she would not marry him.)
- $\rightarrow$  این را که با او ازدواج نخواهد کرد همه می دانستند. (That she would not marry him [was something that] everybody knew.)

## Indirect object:

- (Nobody liked the aughed loudly.) هیچکس از این خوشش نیامد که او بلند می خندید.
- $\rightarrow$  از اینکه او بلند می خندید هیچکس خوشش نیامد. (That he laughed loudly nobody liked/was not liked by anyone.)

**Exercises** Exercises

#### Exercise 12.1

Choose the appropriate correlative conjunction (see below) for the blanks, then translate.

چه... چه... (خواه... خواه...) /يا... يا... /نه... نه... /هم... هم... / نه تنها... بلکه... هم...

## Example:

امروز وقت ندارم، ولى ...... فردا تو را مى بينم ...... پس فردا

 $\rightarrow \dots$ י נו (I don't have time today, but I'll see you either tomorrow or the day after tomorrow.)

 چرا آدرسش را از من میپرسی؟ من ....... او را میشناسم ....... هرگز در خانهاش بودهام.

٢. من ..... از پدرم ..... از پسرم هم مى ترسم.

٣. او مى تواند خيلى راحت ...... توهين كند ...... عذر خواهى.

۴. من أن خانه را نخواهم خريد، ...... پول داشته باشم ..... نداشته باشم.

۵. مردمی که انقلاب کردند در خیابان فریاد میزدند: '....... مرگ ........
 آزادی! '

ع. یکی از شعارهای انقلاب ایران: '...... شرقی، ...... غربی، جمهوریِ اسلامی!'

٧. بالاخره خبر را خواهد شنید، ....... در اینجا باشد ....... در ایران.

۸. گربهٔ ما ..... موش میخورد ..... پرندههای کوچک را هم میخورد.

۹. در آن سفر ...... به اصفهان رفتیم، به شیراز و مشهد ...... رفتیم.

١٠. امشب زياد اشتها ندارم، ...... كمي ميوه خواهم خورد ...... يك ليوان شير.

### Exercise 12.2

Translate the following sentences into English.

- ۱. شنیدیم که مریض است، به همین دلیل به خانهاش رفتیم.
- ٢. حتماً شنيده بودند كه استاد مريض است، به خاطر آنكه اصلاً به كلاس نيامدند.
  - ۳. از آنجا که شنیده بودم تو مریض هستی، چند بار به خانهات تلفن زدم.

Correlative conjunctions

More on subordinate clauses

A review of  $t\bar{a}$ 

- ۴. با عجله رفتم که قبل از شروع جلسه با ناصر حرف بزنم.
- ۵. زود برگشت، به دلیل آنکه یدرش گفته بود نباید دیر برگردد.
  - ا. زود برگشت تا به پدرش بگوید کار خوبی پیدا کرده.
- ۷. نتوانست زود کارش را تمام کند، در نتیجه آن شب در اداره خوابید.
- ۸. به خاطر آنکه نمیخواست همسرش را بیدار کند، بدونِ صبحانه خانه را ترک کرد.
  - ٩. حتّى يک بار هم به موزه نرفته بود، چرا که يول نداشت.
- ١٠. به آمريكا رفت با اين هدف كه آنجا درس بخواند، ولى بعد هنرپيشه شد.

#### Exercise 12.3

In which of the sentences in the previous exercise could you substitute the underlined word(s) (without changing the meaning)

- a) with يچون?
- b) with ?زيرا
- c) with ?

#### Exercise 12.4

Connect the two sentences by placing پون (because), اگرچه (although) or اگرچه (nevertheless) in the middle, then translate. Example:

سرش درد می کرد. در کلاس ماند.  $\rightarrow$  (He had a headache; nevertheless, he stayed in class.)

- ۱. میداند که من بیمارم. از من برای رانندگی کمک خواسته است.
  - ۱. به او کمک خواهم کرد. او دیروز به من کمک نکرد.
    - ٣. هوا خيلي سرد است. هنوز پائيز شروع نشده است.
  - ۴. نمی دانست چطور به آنجا برود. ماشینش را دزدیده بودند.
    - ۵. از همه زودتر آمد. راهش از همه دورتر بود.
    - ع. خانهاش خیلی از آنجا دور بود. زودتر از همه رسید.
      - ۷. خیلی اصرار کرد. میدانست نتیجهای ندارد.
      - ۸. میدانست نتیجهای ندارد. خیلی اصرار کرد.
      - ۹. زیاد اصرار نکرد. میدانست نتیجهای ندارد.
- ۱۰. می دانم او بهترین مرد برای من نیست. خیلی به من علاقه دارد.

Exercise 12.5

Exercises

In the following sentences, use چنان , همچنان , همچنین , همچنان , چناد or چند ان ,

- ۱. عذرخواهی کرده بودم ولی او .....عصبانی بود.
- ۲. پیرهنم در باران خیس شده بود ولی دیگر ...... مهم نبود.
  - ۳. کتاب را به او برگرداندم، .....عکسهای سفرش را.
    - ۴. ..... سروصدائی شد که همه بیدار شدند.
    - ۵. این شلوار ...... گران نیست و می توان خریدش.
      - ۶. باید ..... روز دیگر در همان هتل می ماندیم.
    - ۷. کار خوبی پیدا کرده بود ولی .....ناراضی بود.
      - ٨ چرا به .....معلم خوبي توهين كردند؟
- ۹. میخواهم دربارهٔ این فیلم بنویسم و ....... دربارهٔ فیلمهای قبلیاش.
  - ۱۰. دیگر همکار من نیست ولی ..... او را می بینم.

#### Exercise 12.6

Change the following had hardly structures to no sooner. Example:

هنوز از راه نرسیده بود که جلسه شروع شد  $\leftarrow$  تازه از راه رسیده بود که جلسه شروع شد  $\leftarrow$ 

- ١. هنوز دو جمله نگفته بودم كه گفتند وقتم تمام است.
  - ۲. هنوز روی صندلی ننشسته بودم که برق رفت.
- ۳. هنوز درسش تمام نشده بود که کار خوبی پیدا کرد.
- ۴. هنوز پایش خوب نشده بود که سرش هم شکست.
- ۵. هنوز حرف من تمام نشده بود که سیگاری روشن کرد.
- ۶. هنوز سوار هواپیما نشده بودیم که گفتند موتورش خراب است.
- ۷. هنوز یک داستان کوتاه ننوشته بود که تصمیم گرفت یک رُمان بلند بنویسد.
  - ٨. هنوز ماشين را نديده بودم كه فرياد بچهها را شنيدم.
    - ۹. هنوز عینکش را پیدا نکرده بود که اتوبوس ایستاد.
      - ۱۰. هنوز به مدرسه نرسیده بودم که پروین را دیدم.

Correlative conjunctions More on subordinate clauses

A review of tā

## Exercise 12.7

Translate the following sentences, all of which are using  $t\bar{a}$ .

- ١. تا نوبت ما برسد، بانک تعطیل شده است.
  - ۲. تا سگ همسایه را دید، به طرفش دوید.
- ۳. تا سگ همسایه اینجاست، نمی شود گربه را تنها گذاشت.
  - ۴. دو تا از يرنده ها تا توى اتاق ما آمدند.
    - ۵. در را بیند تا توی اتاق ما نبایند.
    - ۶. تا اسمش را نگوید نمی گذارم برود.
  - ۷. او را اینجا نگه می دارم تا اسمش را بگوید.
  - ۸. چراغ را روشن کردم تا اتاق تاریک نباشد.
    - ٩. تا يولش را ندهي از اينجا نخواهد رفت.
  - ۱۰. تا پول میز را بدهی من سریع به دستشوئی میروم.

## آشیز که دوتا شد، آش یا شور می شود یا بی نمک

When there are two cooks the soup has either too much or too little salt.

(= Too many cooks spoil the broth.)

## UNIT THIRTEEN

دربارهٔ: How to use digar, hanuz, دیگر، هنوز، هم، فقط/تنها ham, faghat/tanhā

## (*hanuz*) هنوز digar) and) دیگر 13.1

Regardless of how they are translated into English, and regardless of affirmative/negative, the best way to define these two words is this:

- نفوز ('still') is about continuation: it shows that something some situation – still continues;
- دیگر ('other') is about *change*: it shows that something some situation - has become 'other' or something different.

Table 13.1: hanuz vs. digar

	AFFIRMATIVE	NEGATIVE
هنوز	هنوز پول دارم I still have money. ['having money' continues]	هنوز پول ندارم I still don't have money./I don't have money yet. ['not having money' continues]
دیگر	دیگر پول دارم Now I have money. [Whereas I had none until a while ago.]	دیگر پول ندارم I don't have money any longer. [Whereas I did have some until a while ago.]

See also 12.4 for the use of هنوز in the temporal idiom had hardly ... when.... is the more problematic of the two and can be used in a variety دیگر of senses, or just for emphasis, each time requiring a different translation. See the examples below and the different meanings of دیگر:

#### another:

(I bought another book.) یک کتاب دیگر خریدم (Do you also know another language?) زبان دیگری هم بلد هستید؟

How to use digar, hanuz, ham, faghat/ tanhā

#### other:

- در کشورهای دیگر اینطور نیست (It's not so [/'this way'] in other countries.)
- = در دیگرِ کشورها اینطور نیست (same meaning as above; more form.)

#### • else:

( What else do you know? ) دیگر چه می دانی؟ ( What other thing(s) do you know? ) چه چیز دیگری می دانی؟ ( Who else did you talk to? ) دیگر با چه کسی حرف زدی؟ ( What other person did you talk to? ) با چه کس دیگری حرف زدی؟

#### • more:

پند روزِ دیگر اینجا بمان (Stay here for a few more days.) باید دو سالِ دیگر درس بخواند (She has to study for two more years.)

تا دو ساعتِ دیگر خواهد آمد (He will come in two hours [/'after two more hours'].)

#### next:

تا هفتهٔ دیگر (/تا هفتهٔ بعد) کارم تمام می شود (My work will be finished by next week.)

(When is your قرارِ دیگرت (/بعدیات) با دکتر برای چه روزی است؟ mext appointment with the doctor?)

#### • any more:

تو را میبخشم به شرط آنکه دیگر دروغ نگوئی (I forgive you, provided that you lie no more.)

بعد از آن عمل، دیگر نمی تواند بچه دار شود (After that operation, she cannot get pregnant any more.)

## • now (showing change; in this sense often after \( \subset \subset, \) but sometimes used alone):

حالا) دیگر در مغازهٔ عمویش کار می کند (Now he works at his uncle's store. [He used not to; this is new.])

(حالا) دیگر وقتی فارسی حرف میزنیم میفهمد (Now he understands) when we talk in Persian.)

#### • then:

(digar) دیگر and هنوز (hanuz)

You) شما که میخواستید از هم جدا شوید، چرا دیگر بچهدار شدید؟ [who] wanted to separate from each other [= get divorced], why then did you parent a child?)

(He hated you; why او از تو بدش می آمد، چرا دیگر من را کتک زد? then did he beat me?)

#### · already:

اگر آن ساعت بیائی، من دیگر خوابیدهام (If you come at that hour, I will already be asleep.)

(He already knows you./He knows you now.) تو را دیگر می شناسد

## • finally (possible change):

(When will he finally get well?) کی دیگر حالش خوب می شود؟ (It's finally over./It's finished now.)

## • also or at least (emphasis/reproach):

دیگر نباید به پدرت هم می گفتی (You shouldn't have told your father also. [It was already bad enough that you told others!]) دیگر از من که می توانست بپرسد (He could have asked me at least.)

## (digari) as pronoun دیگری

Here the stress plays an important role:

> یک معلم رفت و دیگری (ایکی دیگر) آمد. اگر من این کار را نکنم، دیگری (ایکی دیگر) خواهد کرد.

• دیگری (digarí) (form.) – with stressed -í – means the other [one]: دریگر colloquial version: آن یکی دیگر

یکی از دیگری بدتر. از این دو برادر، یکی در تهران است و دیگری (/آن یکی دیگر) در اصفهان. یکی را میبینم ولی دیگری (/آن یکی دیگر) را نمیبینم.

How to use digar, hanuz, ham, faghat/ tanhā

## (ham-digar) همدیگر (yek-digar) یکدیگر (ham-digar)

They both mean *each other* or *one another*; both can be used for two or more. عمديگر is used only in formal/written Persian, while يکديگر is also used in colloquial Persian (sometimes shortened as just هم [ham]; see 13.2 under هم). Examples:

For دگر گون (digar-gun) or دگر گون (degar-gun) see 14.3.

## (ham) هم 13.2

(ham) usually modifies the word before it, which takes the stress, while is often pronounced without stress (except sometimes in (d) below). This word has a variety of usages and meanings; the following are the most important of them:

a) You just learned that هم can be short for همديگر (each other) as in:

ما هم را دوست داريم.

b) In the same way, با هم (short for با همديگر) means 'together':

همیشه آنها را با هم میبینم. با هم به کتابخانه رفتیم.

'Together with . . . ,' however, would be همراه با همراه (ham-rāh bā) when it means accompanying someone (on a way), or just با:

با/همراه با خواهرم به سینما رفتم.

- c) The word همراه in (b) is a hint to one of the most productive functions of همراه namely, a prefix indicating accompaniment or sharing, having in common, etc. You already know words like همكلاسي (ham-kelāsi, classmate) and همكال (ham-kār, colleague, co-worker).

(ham) هـم

e) The first and best known meaning of , however, is *also/too* (or *either* in the negative); when used in this sense, , follows the word that it modifies, and that word takes the main stress:

(You too, Brutus?) – with stress on tó. وهم، بروتوس؟ (They asked me too.) – with stress on mán. گران نیست، ولی خیلی ارزان هم نیست.

f) In the same way, close to our last example about the price, it is used to show some contrast, difference or consequence, like 'as for the other side':

She wouldn't give my کفشهایم را نمی داد، من هم به مادرش گفتم. (She wouldn't give my shoes, so I told her mother.)

They were talking, [and] I was listening in silence.)

g) Not quite unrelated to the above meanings, it can mean *moreover*, *additionally* ('what is more') or *but/in contrast*:

اتنهائی را دوست نداشت، ازدواج هم نمیخواست بکند. (She didn't like being alone, [but] she didn't want to marry either.) درس نمیخواند، نمرهٔ خوب هم میخواهد. (He is not [/does not care for] studying, [but] he wants good grades ['too'].) رشت نیست، خیلی هم زیباست. it's very beautiful.)

h) While it means *also* in the idiom 'not only...but also...' (see 12.1), sometimes in the same idiom it can have the meaning of *even* or *in contrast*. Our sentences from (g) above can all be seen as such sentences but with 'not only' deleted. Compare:

يه ديباست، خيلي هم زيباست. (Not only is it not ugly, but it is also very beautiful.)

i) It can mean *even* used for emphasis, with or without the word حتّی (hat.tā, even) itself. In the following examples, you can use حتّی or both, but as you see they have different positions:

احتّی] به اندازهٔ الاغ هم نمی فهمد. (He doesn't understand even as much as a donkey.)

How to use digar, hanuz, ham, faghat/tanhā

[حتّى] یک بچّه هم می تواند این کار را بکند. این هفته [حتّی] یک صفحه هم نخواندهام. از تو هم بهتر بلدم.

After hanuz it means even now/still/yet:

(I haven't seen him even now.) هنوز هم او را ندیدهام.

j) باز هم باز means *again/anew/still/more* (meanings that باز هم alone can have, only with less emphasis):

(here باز هم here) یک ساعت با او حرف زدم، ولی باز هم قبول نمی کرد. = باز هم می خواست. = باز هم می خواست. [some] more)

اهم (ham), همچنین (ham-chenin), همینطور (ham-in-towr), همینطور (niz)

هم and نيز (see 12.3/C, Note 1) can all be synonyms for هم meaning also.

One major difference, though: هم is always post-positioned (i.e., placed *after* the word that it modifies), and therefore never at the beginning of a sentence (except in ... هم ... هم [both ... and ...]; see 13.2/d).

Of these, همچنین are formal, used in written Persian only, while so is colloquial (and still more colloquial: همینجور , ham-in-jur).

Examples (in which هم is not possible!):

(We [/one] must also know that we don't have much time.)

(Ali was the على معلم خواهرم و همچنين از دوستان خوب من بود. teacher of my sister and [was] also one of my good friends.)

means me too as well as me neither.

For still more emphasis, sometimes two of these words are used together:

(me too/same with me) من هم همينطور

## (tanhā) تنها and نقط (tanhā)

فقط (faghat) and تنها (tanhā)

The only meaning of فقط is *only*, and it is more common than تنها in this sense, while تنها means *only*, *lonely*, as well as *alone*.

In the conjunction 'not only ... but also ...,' both  $tanh\bar{a}$  and faghat can be used in both colloquial and formal Persian.

In the sense of 'the only' (or my only, etc.), تنها should be used.

In the following examples, تنها is either the only option or the more formal/literary one:

```
رادر دارم. (I have only one brother.) تنها (/فقط) یک برادر دارم. (He is my only brother.) او تنها برادرِ من است. (Only, I don't know where he is.) تنها (/فقط) نمی دانم او کجاست. (I am alone here.) اینجا تنها هستم. (I am a lonely person.) من اَدمِ تنهائی هستم. (I have to eat alone.) باید تنها (/به تنهائی) غذا بخورم. (Loneliness is like torture.) من را تنها نگذار.
```

**Careful!** The way تنها is used to mean 'the only' (or *my* only, etc.) can sometimes leave room for another meaning also, the only difference being the stress and intonation:

A sentence like تنها برادرم را دستگیر کردند means:

- a) They arrested my only brother. (Tanhā has no stress.)
- b) They arrested my brother only. (*Tanhā* pronounced with stress, as well as *barādáram*.)

Also note that if in the same sentence you want to say 'They only arrested my brother,' then instead of برادر من you should say برادر من because man can be pronounced with stress whereas suffixes like -am cannot.

Note the difference here also:

تنها سه نفر آمدند.) (Only three people came.) تنها سه نفری که آمدند دوستان برادرم بودند. (The only three people who came were my brother's friends.)

(All three people who came were my brother's friends.)

How to use digar, hanuz, ham, faghat/ tanhā

## **Exercises**

## Exercise 13.1

Give negative answers to the following questions, using دیگر instead of هنو : Example:

هنوز او را می بینی؟ 
$$\leftarrow$$
 نه، دیگر او را نمی بینم.

- ١. هنوز يدرت زنده است؟
- ٢. هنوز دارند غذا مي خورند؟
- ۳. دخترت هنوز من را می شناسد؟
  - ۴. هنوز شطرنج بازی میکنی؟
- ۵. هنوز فارسی برایت سخت است؟
  - ع. هنوز سرت درد می کند؟
  - ٧. از پياز هنوز بدش ميآيد؟
    - ٨. هنوز بايد منتظر باشيم؟
  - ٩. هنوز مي خواهي كتاب بخواني؟
- ١٠. هنوز مي تواند فارسى حرف بزند؟

#### Exercise 13.2

ادیگر Translate the following sentences, all of which are using دیگر

- ۱. هنوز خانهٔ دیگرت را به من نشان ندادهای.
  - ۲. دیگر باید کم کم برویم.
  - ٣. ديگر از او سؤال نکن.
- ۴. او امروز در اداره نیست، یک روز دیگر بیائید.
  - ۵. برویم دیگر، انتظار فایدهای ندارد.
- ۶. تو را هنوز نمی شناسد، ولی من را دیگر می شناسد.
  - ۷. هیچ چیز دیگری به تو نگفت؟
- ٨ اگر دكتر مى گويد حالش خوب است، چرا ديگر گريه مى كنى؟
  - ٩. حالا ديگر جوابم را نمي دهي؟
  - ١٠. بسيار خوب، وقت نداشتي بيائي، ديگر چرا تلفن نزدي؟

Exercises

Choose one of the following to fill in the blanks:

- دىگر (a
- b) دیگری [with unstressed final -i]
- c) دیگری [with stressed final -i]
- یکی دیگر (d
- یکدیگر (e

## Example:

این دو خواهر خیلی ...... را دوست دارند. 
$$\leftarrow$$
 یکدیگر  $\leftarrow$ 

- ١. اين قلم خوب نمي نويسد، .....بده.
- ۲. خیلی خستهام و ......نمی توانم بیدار بمانم.
- ٣. آيا ميخواهي اشتباهِ قبليات رايک بار .....تكرار كني؟
- ۴. از دیدنش خوشحال شدم چون دو سال بود که ما ....... را ندیده بودیم.
  - ۵. اگر به آن نامه جواب نداده است ......بنویس.
  - ۶. یک چشمش نمیبیند ولی ...... نسبتاً سالم است.
  - ۷. رفت بخوابد چون هیچ کار .....نداشت که بکند.
  - ۸ وقتی زنش از قطار پیاده شد، ...... را در آغوش گرفتند و بوسیدند.
    - ۹. باید اوّل این را بخوری تا .....بدهم.
      - ١٠. آيا او به زبان ..... حرف مي زد؟

## Exercise 13.4

Choose one of the following to fill in the blanks, or mention if two are possible:

## Example:

این موضوع را حتّی من .....نمی دانستم. 
$$\rightarrow$$
 a and c.

How to use digar, hanuz, ham, faghat/ tanhā

- ٣. مينا را خوب مى شناختم، ..... به او اعتماد داشتم.
  - ۴. بیرون رفت و در را .....نبست.
  - ۵. خیلی وقت نبود که با ...... آشنا شده بودند.
    - ۶. من از آن خوشم نیامد، برادرم هم .....
  - ۷. عصبانی به نظر می رسید و سلام .....نکرد.
- ١/ با پدرم راحت مي توانستم حرف بزنم، ...... با مادرم.
  - ٩. حتّى يک روز ..... وقت ندارم.
    - ١٠. هنوز .....او را ميبيني؟

#### Exercise 13.5

In which of the following sentences can you replace إفقط with تنها

- ١. تنها هفتهای سه ساعت کلاس فارسی دارم.
- ٢. حتّى پنج دقيقه هم نبايد او را تنها بگذاري.
- ٣. آیا از اینکه تنها به مدرسه برود نمی ترسد؟
  - ۴. من تنها یک برادر ولی سه خواهر دارم.
- ۵. تنها چیزی که از تو می خواهد کمی صبر است.
- ع. جمعه ها نمی توانم، شنبه تنها روزی است که می توانم.
  - ٧. بالاخره تمام خواهم كرد، تنها نمى دانم كى.
    - ۸ صبح تا شب تنها تلویزیون تماشا می کند.
- ٩. چطور توانستي ظرفِ تنها سه سال هفت كتاب بنويسي؟
  - ۱۰. این تنها روزی بود که او را خوشحال دیدم.

هنوز دهانش بوی شیر میدهد

His mouth still smells of milk.

(= He is too young and inexperienced yet.)

## UNIT FOURTEEN

Remember/forget
Arrange, change,
difference
Meaning and
'to mean'

فصل ۱۴ یاد/فراموش قرار، تغییر، تفاوت معنی و منظور

## (yād) ياد 14.1

Beyond a certain level, what remains to be learned in Persian is the wealth of idioms and phrasal verbs, and how to use them. But we do not intend to turn this book into a dictionary of idioms. In this unit we introduce only a few words with some of the phrasal verbs associated with them, starting with  $(y\bar{a}d, memory)$ . You already know several of the phrasal verbs using  $y\bar{a}d$ .

## (and other words) used for learning/teaching

in the following table, only the verbs آموختن (āmukhtan) and فواگرفتن (farā-gereftan) are formal/literary. The nouns تعليم (ta'lim) mean learning or education and can be combined with the verbs عليه and كرفتن and كرفتن (usually for learning or teaching arts and crafts).

Table 14.1: Learning and teaching

LEARNING		TEACHING	
He is learning Persian/is taking Persian lessons (from me).	(از من) فارسی یاد می گیرد (از من) درسِ فارسی می گیرد (از من) فارسی می آموزد (form.)	(me) Persian/is giving Persian lessons (to me).	(به من) فارسی یاد می دهد/ فارسی یادم می دهد (به من) درسِ فارسی می دهد (به من) فارسی می آموزد (form.)
He is taking piano lessons (from me).	(از من) تعلیمِ پیانو میگیرد	He is giving piano lessons (to me).	(به من) تعليمِ پيانو مىدهد

Remember/ forget Arrange, change, difference Meaning and 'to mean'

## More examples for learning:

من خیلی چیزها از شما یاد گرفتهام. بچه تازه یاد گرفته است (که) راه برود. ('tāze = 'just') زنم فکر می کند هیچوقت رانندگی را یاد نخواهد گرفت. آموزشگاه جائی است که آدم در آن چیزی بیاموزد. دانش آموز کسی است که در دبستان یا دبیرستان می آموزد. من هم از همین استاد تعلیم آواز گرفتم. او خوشنویسی را از بهترین استادان فراگرفت.

## More examples for teaching:

چیزی که به بچّهتان یاد ندادهاید ادب است. باید به من یاد بدهی غذای ایرانی بیزم. کسی را میشناسید که درس تنبک بدهد؟ معلّم کسی است که تعلیم میدهد. آموزگار کسی است که در دبستان خواندن و نوشتن را به شاگردان آموزش میدهد.

## 14.1.2 ياد (and other words) used for remembering/ forgetting

Some of the phrasal verbs used here for remembering or forgetting will be using quasi-impersonal structures similar to those mentioned under 7.3.

Apart from yād, another word that is frequently used here is خاطر (khāter, mind; cf. its other usages in 12.2.1); the words حافظه (hāfeze, memory) and ذهن (zehn, mind) are also used.

In the following table, an asterisk shows where you need the personal/possessive suffixes in the impersonal structures, and in such cases the verb always has to be conjugated for the third person singular.

Table 14.2: Remembering and forgetting

a) to forget/to be forgotten	کسی/چیزی را فراموش کردن
	کسی/چیزی فراموش شدن
	کسی/چیزی فراموش* شدن
	کسی/چیزی را از یاد [/خاطر] بردن
	کسی/چیزی از یاد [/خاطر] رفتن
	کسی/چیزی از یادِ [/خاطرِ] کسی رفتن
	(کسی/چیزی) (از) یاد* [/خاطر*] رفتن

## **Table 14.2** (*cont'd*)

b) to cause so. to forget sth.	چیزی را از یادِ [/خاطرِ] کسی بردن
c) to remember sth. or so./ to remember that	(کسی/چیزی را) به یاد [/خاطر] داشتن کسی/چیزی را به یاد [/خاطر] آوردن به یاد [/خاطر] آوردن به یاد [/خاطر] آوردن که به یاد کسی/چیزی افتادن کسی/چیزی (به) یاد* آمدن/افتادن (به) یاد* آمدن/افتادن یاد* آ/خاطر*] بودن
d) to bring sth. to someone's mind/to remind so. of [or that]	چیزی را (به) یادِ [/خاطرِ] کسی آوردن کسی را (به) یادِ چیزی انداختن (به) یادِ [/خاطرِ] کسی آوردن که (به) یادِ کسی انداختن که
e) to commit to memory, to memorize	به یاد [/خاطر/حافظه/ذِهن] سپردن در یاد [/خاطر/حافظه/ذِهن] نگه داشتن از بر کردن/شدن (از) حفظ کردن/شدن
f) to stay in memory, to have in memory (after memorizing)	به (/در) یاد [/خاطر/حافظه/دِهن] ماندن چیزی را از بر [/از حفظ] بودن/داشتن

Now examples for each of the above:

## a) to forget/to be forgotten:

```
اسم همسایهام را فراموش کردهام.
فراموش نکن که این را من از روز اوّل گفته بودم.
تمام آن مسائل فراموششان شد.
نمی توانم رفتار زشتش را از یاد ببرم.
سختی های زندگی خیلی زود از یاد می رود.
یادم رفت برای پدرم دارو بخرم.
یادت نرود که روز جمعه پولم را می خواهم.
تا یادم نرفته (است) بگویم که او هم می آید. (... Let me say before I forget that)
باید سعی کنی آن را از خاطر ببری.
```

Remember/ forget Arrange, change, difference Meaning and 'to mean'

14

b) to cause someone to forget something:

سعی کردم با گفتنِ یک قصّه، آن اتفاقِ بد را از یادش ببرم. باید امیدوار بود که این تغییر شهر، مرگِ مادرشان را از خاطرشان ببرد.

c) to remember something or someone to remember that ...:

نمی دانم چرا ناگهان به یاد او افتادم.

به یاد می آورم که هرروز او را در اتوبوس می دیدم.

یادشان افتاد که به گربه غذا ندادهاند.

یادتان نمی آید آن را کجا گذاشته اید؟

عجیب خواهد بود اگر یادتان نباشد.

یادت باشد که نامه ها را پُست کنی.

خوب به یاد دارم که او دو سال از من بزرگتر بود.

درست به خاطر ندارم چه سالی بود که آن خانه را خریدند.

به خاطر نمی آورم کجا با شما آشنا شدم.

متأسّفانه روز دقیقش خاطرم نیست.

d) to bring something to someone's mind/to remind someone of [or that...]:

یک بارِ دیگر تاریخ امتحان را (به) یادِ آنها آوردم. یادش بیاور که فردا من نخواهم بود. قولی را که به من داده بود (به) خاطرش بیاور. (به) خاطرش آوردم که وقت زیادی نداریم. چشمهای تو مرا (به) یادِ چشمهای مادرت میاندازد. (به) یادش انداختم که امروز جمعه است.

e) to commit to memory, to memorize:

حرفهایش را خوب به یاد [/خاطر/حافظه/دِهن] سپردم. امیدوارم اینها را در خاطر [/یاد/حافظه/دِهن] نگه داری. تمام شعر را از بر کردم. تمام شعر را از بر شدم. بعد از دو بار خواندن حفظم شد (/حفظش شدم). اسم رودخانهها را حفظ کرده بود.

(yād) باد

f) to stay in memory, to have in memory (after memorizing):

```
مهربانی شما در خاطرِ او مانده است.
این شعرِ زیبا همیشه در یاد خواهد ماند.
من این شعر را از بر دارم/از برم.
من این شعر را (از) حفظ دارم/(از) حفظم.
```

Refresh your memory with two related participles that you learned before (see 10.1):

```
(memorable) به یاد ماندنی (unforgettable) از یاد نرفتنی
```

means to mention so./sth. or point out: از کسی/چیزی یاد کردن

Another verb that means to mention is the compound ياداً ور شدن (yād-āvar shodan):

is also used یادِ کسی/چیزی (را) کردن or the variant یادِ کسی/چیزی یاد کردن is also used when you are reminded of *so./sth.*, especially when you miss them:

When you feel nostalgic about something, you say: يادش به خير! (yādash be kheyr). This can also be used for an absent person:

O youth, where are you? I badly miss you.)

I miss یادش به خیر آن سفری که به شیراز رفتیم، چقدر خوش گذشت! that trip we had to Shiraz – what a good time we had there!)

.تست. پدرم، یادش به خیر، همیشه روی آن صندلی مینشست. (My father – may his memory be blessed [/I wish he were here] – always used to sit on that chair.)

Remember/ forget Arrange, change, difference Meaning and 'to mean'

## (gharār) قرار 14.2

The idioms used with قرار are grouped around its two major meanings: 1) arrangement, and 2) repose/inertia. Those of the second group belong to formal language; and some related to the first meaning were mentioned earlier (see 4.4/5). Here is an overview:

means to be supposed to and قرار گذاشتن means to make an arrangement or plan, both used with subjunctive if a second verb is needed:

```
قرار است در همانجا خانهای بسازد.
مگر از اوّل قرارِ ما این نبود؟
با دوستم قرار گذاشتهام که هر روز برویم شنا.
```

The verbs قرار داشتن and قرار گرفتن can each have a different meaning based on the two basic meanings of قرار mentioned above:

• Related to the first meaning, they mean respectively to have, to give and to get an appointment:

```
ساعت چهار یک قرار دارم.
دکترم به من برای فردا یک قرار داد.
برای مصاحبه از او یک قرار گرفتهام.
```

- Related to the second meaning, in formal and written language they mean respectively to lie [/be located], to lay [/put] and to be placed used for things, not for people. These are also the verbs often used with عبر or تحت in quasi-passive structures (mentioned in 9.3):
  - (The vase is [/lies/is located] beside the window.)
  - رداشت. کا فروشگاه مقابلِ آن خانه قرار داشت. (There was a store opposite that house.)
  - They were under surveillance for a few months.)
  - (She placed her hand on her eye[s].) دستش را روی چشمش قرار داد. (They [closely] examined the subject once more.)
  - (He fell asleep and خوابش برد و سرش بر شانهٔ آن خانم قرار گرفت. his head came to rest on that lady's shoulder.)
  - بیشنهادش خیلی موردِ توجّه قرار گرفت. (His proposal met with a lot of attention.)

Change

After در اختیار (dar ekhtiy $\bar{a}r$ ) or در اختیار ( $\sim + -e$ ), these verbs mean to be, to have or to put at someone's disposal:

The document is at the lawyer's disposal.)

(سند در اختیار وکیل است or وکیل سند را در اختیار دارد=)

(Why did you put the document at his disposal?)

(چرا سند را در اختیار او گذاشتید؟=)

With your father's با مرگ پدرتان، ثروتش در اختیار َ شما قرار می گیرد. death, his wealth will come under your control.)

بيقرار (bi-gharār) means restless and impatient (+ -í: restlessness):

بچّهٔ مریض تا صبح بیقراری کرد. (The sick child was restless until morning.)

بر قرار کر دن/شدن (bar-gharār) means to establish/to be established:

بینِ دو کشور صُلح برقرار شد. (Peace was established between the two countries.)

## 14.3 Change

The only tricky thing about *change* in Persian is that تغییر کردن (tagh.yir ~, to change) is intransitive – in spite of using کردن – and the transitive version is تغییر دادن.

دیگر گون (digar-gun) or دگر گون (degar-gun), both formal and literary, are used with غندن and  $\dot{z}$  for respectively the transitive and the intransitive and mostly convey a change in form or color.

عوض کردن/شدن (avaz ~) is also common, with some association with exchanging and trading/swapping.

تبدیل (tab.dil), مبدّل (mo.bad.dal) and بدل (ba.dal) are also words that are close in meaning and are used with kardan/shodan, sometimes with some sense of altering, transforming or converting. تبدیل is the only word you can use for changing/converting money, and mobaddal means changed.

In formal Persian, يافتن (yāftan, to find) can be used as the verbal part in the compounds تبديل شدن and تغيير کردن (both intr.).

Remember/ forget Arrange, change, difference Meaning and 'to mean'

Table 14.3: Changing

TRANSITIVE	INTRANSITIVE
He changed his room. اتاقش را تغییر داد. اتاقش را عوض کرد.	His room changed. اتاقش تغییر کرد. اتاقش عوض شد.
He changed his name to Ali. اسمش را به علی تغییر داد. اسمش را به علی تبدیل کرد.	His name changed to Ali. اسمش به علی تغییر کرد. اسمش به علی تبدیل شد.
He changed his place with Maryam. جایش را با مریم عوض کرد.	His place changed with Maryam['s]. جایش با مریم عوض شد.
He changed the room into a kitchen. اتاق را به یک آشپزخانه تبدیل کرد. اتاق را تبدیل به یک آشپزخانه کرد.	The room changed into a kitchen. اتاق به یک آشپزخانه تبدیل شد./ اتاق تبدیل به یک آشپزخانه شد.
This event changed his life. این اتفاق زندگی او را تغییر داد. این اتفاق زندگی او را عوض کرد. این اتفاق زندگی او را دگرگون کرد. (form.)	His life changed. زندگی او تغییر کرد. زندگی او عوض شد. زندگی او دگرگون شد. (form.)
He changed his dollars to rials. دلارهایش را به ریال تبدیل کرد.	His dollars [were] changed to rials. دلارهایش به ریال تبدیل شد.

## More examples:

(He changed his word.) او حرف خودش را عوض کرد/تغییر داد. (He traded his book with mine.) او کتابش را با کتاب من عوض کرد. (He changed clothes very quickly.) او خیلی زود لباسش را عوض کرد. (With nightfall, the weather suddenly changed.)

(Why did چرا یک موضوع کوچک به چنین مسئلهٔ بزرگی تبدیل شد؟ a small topic change into such a big problem?)

خبر را که شنید، حالش بکلّی دگرگون شد. (When he heard the news, his mood/condition totally changed.)

## 14.4 Difference

We seem to know enough about resemblance (see 10.5/D and 11.7); maybe it's time we learned about difference. One thing we learned about

Difference

difference was the idiom 'with the difference that' when discussing 'except that' (see 5.2.1/c).

The nouns تفاوت (tafāvot), اختلاف (ekhtelāf) and فرق (fargh) and the adjectives متفاوت (motefāvet), مختلف (mokhtalef) and گوناگون (gunāgun, form./lit.) are all used to show difference and dissimilarity.

While *ekhtelāf* can imply some opposition also, *tafāvot* is a more neutral dissimilarity.

As adjectives, it is important to know that *mokhtalef* or *gunāgun* cannot be used for just one different thing: use *motefāvet* if the noun is singular.

Note the differences in meaning and usage:

- (Iran has differences [= disputes] with the US) ایران با آمریکا اختلاف دارد.
  - ايران و آمريكا اختلاف دارند. =
- (Iran is different from the US) ایران با آمریکا تفاوت (/فرق) دارد.
  - ایران و آمریکا تفاوت (/فرق) دارند. =
- این دو نسخهٔ خطّی خیلی با هم اختلاف دارند. (These two manuscripts have/show a lot of differences/discrepancies.)
- این دو فیلم خیلی با هم تفاوت دارند. (These two films are very different from each other.)
- كوناگون or مختلف (a different language) Don't use يک زبانِ متفاوت here!
- راندم. (I read different books.) = several or many books
- واندم. (I read a variety of books.) = books that were
- انها طرحهاي مختلفی دارند. (They have different plans.) = several or many plans
- (They have different plans.) = different from each other or from other people's plans
- (What difference does it make?) (Here چه فرقی (/چه فرقی) می کند؟ is also possible.)
- برای من هیچ فرقی نمی کند. (It makes no difference to me.) (Here تفاوت is also possible.)
- (He tried different methods.) او رَوشهای گوناگونی را آزمود.
- (This این فرش هم مال ایران است، با این تفاوت (/فُرق) که ارزانتر است. carpet is also from Iran, except that [= with the difference that] it is cheaper.)

Remember/ forget Arrange, change, difference Meaning and 'to mean'

## 14.5 Meaning and 'to mean'

معنی (ma'ni) or the more formal معنا ( $ma'n\bar{a}$ ) is meaning, while يعنى (ya'ni) means  $it\ means\ and\ does\ not\ need\ any\ verb:$ 

```
(What does this mean?) این یعنی چه؟

(What is the meaning of this?) معنیِ این چیست؟ =

(Love means friendship.) عشق یعنی دوستی است. =

(ابه معنای) دوستی است. =

(The meaning of love is friendship.) معنی عشق، دوستی است. =
```

When you are talking about what someone means, however – and not what something means –, then you would normally use words like منظور (manzur) and مقصو د (maghsud) in Persian, words that mean purpose, aim, and so on:

```
(What do you mean?) منظورت چیست؟ (What did he mean by that [/by what he said]?)
بخشید، منظوری نداشتم. (Sorry, I didn't mean it.) ببخشید، منظور بدی نداشته است. (I'm sure he didn't mean anything bad/had no bad intentions.)
مطمئنم که منظور بدی نداشته است. (I meant that the day after tomorrow would be late.)
```

For what is meant/intended you can usually use مورد نظر (mowred-e nazar):

```
I didn't find the intended book/the book (I had in mind.)
```

?بالاخره خانهٔ موردِ نظرتان را خريديد (Did you finally buy the house you wanted/had in mind?)

نظر (nazar) alone is used in the sense of view or opinion, or as a synonym for نظر (negāh, look, glance):

```
در یک نظر (at a glance) در یک نظر من (in my opinion) به نظرِ من (from an educational point of view) از نظرِ آموزشی (I fully respect your opinion.)
```

For به نظر رسیدن/آمدن (to seem) see 5.4.1.

Exercises

## **Exercises**

#### Exercise 14.1

Decide whether you need ياد گرفتن or ياد على and then provide the correct form of the verb. Example:

۸ او پارسال از زندانیهای دیگر .......... که چطور درِ ماشینها را باز کند. ۹. دیگر برای من دیر است، پیانو زدن را باید وقتی بچّه بودم ............

۱۰. وقتی که بچه بودم هیچکس به من شنا کردن را ......

## Exercise 14.2

Change to the impersonal form (یاد\* رفتن), then translate.

## Example:

می دانم که فراموش نخواهند کرد  $\to$  نمی (I know that they won't forget.)

- ۱. فراموش کرده بودی که استاد مریض است؟
- ۲. فراموش نکن که در خانه اصلاً میوه نداریم.
- ۳. اگر شمارهاش را از یاد بردهای، در دفتر تلفن نگاه کن.
  - ۴. تمام چیزهائی را که از یاد برده بودم، به یاد آوردم.
- ٥. براي اينكه فراموش نكني، همين الآن توى كيفت بگذار.
- ۶. اسم همه را گفت بی آنکه حتّی اسم یک نفر را فراموش کرده باشد.
  - ۷. اگر آدرس را فراموش کرده باشی نمی توانیم برویم.
  - ۸ این که زبان مادریاش را فراموش کرده است باورکردنی نیست.
    - ۹. اگر فراموش نکند به او جایزه می دهم.
    - ۱۰. ممکن نیست تمام آن حرفها را از یاد برده باشد.

Remember/ forget Arrange, change, difference Meaning and 'to mean'

#### Exercise 14.3

Translate the following sentences into English and pay attention to the different meanings of  $ghar\bar{a}r$ :

- ۱. امروز سه قرار در سه ادارهٔ مختلف دارم.
  - ۲. اصفهان در جنوب تهران قرار دارد.
- ۳. با شوهرم قرار گذاشتهام که در روزهای چهارشنبه او بچهها را به مدرسه ببرد.
  - ۴. چند زندانی دیگر را عفو کردند، ولی او موردِ عفو قرار نگرفت.
    - ۵. آیا قرار نبود مادرتان هم در این سفر با شما باشد؟
    - ۶. بعد از آنکه بچهها خوابیدند، سکوت کامل در خانه برقرار شد.
      - ۷. قبل از آنکه با نیما قراری بگذاری، به بابک زنگ بزن.
      - ٨. سخنرانِ بعدى از جايش بلند شد و پشتِ تريبون قرار گرفت.
        - ٩. اطلاعاتِ شخصی را نباید در اختیار هیچ کسی قرار بدهی.
          - ۱۰. برای من هم از دکترت یک قرار بگیر.

#### Exercise 14.4

Choose the correct form.

- تغییر کنی/ب: تغییر کنی/ب: تغییر کنی/ب: تغییر کنی/ب: تغییر بدهی/پ: فرق کنی)
- میتوانی فردا بیائی، برای من هیچ ....... (الف: تغییری نمی کند/ب: تغییری نمی دهد/پ: فرقی نمی کند)
  - ٣. پیشنهادِ من هیچ ..... (الف: تغییری/ب: تفاوتی/پ: متفاوتی) با
     پیشنهاد شما ندارد.
- عن هیچ چیز ...... (الف: تغییری/ب: تفاوتی/پ: متفاوتی) در پیشنهاد شما نمی بینم.
- ۵. ما هيچ ..... (الف: اختلافي/ب: مختلفي/پ: گوناگوني) با شما نداريم.
- ع. این عینک در آفتاب رنگش ...... (الف: تغییر /ب: عوض /پ: فرق) می شود.
- ۷. برای مهمانها غذاهای ...... (الف: اختلافی/ب: تفاوتی/پ: گوناگونی)
   درست کردیم.
- $\Lambda$  ایران و آمریکا خیلی با هم ...... (الف: مختلف/ب: فرق/پ: گوناگون) دارند.

Exercises

٩. مهمترین ..... (الف: تغییر/ب: گوناگون/پ: فرق) میانِ ایران و آمریکا،
 ناان است.

١٠. ميخواهي قلمت را با مال من ..... (الف: تغيير/ب: عوض/پ: فرق) كني؟

#### Exercise 14.5

Choose one of the following to fill in the blanks:

a) منظور (d) معنى (d) معنى (a

- ١. چرا امروز اينقدر خسته به .....ميآئيد؟
- ٢. تا تابستان سال قبل آنجا بودم، ...... بيش از دو سال.
- ۳. اگر در ایران انگشتِ شستتان را به کسی نشان بدهید فکر میکند ............. بدی دارید.
  - ۴. ما همه موافقيم ولى ظاهراً پرويز .....ديگرى دارد.
  - ۵. آن کلمه را شنیده بودم ولی ......آن را نمی دانستم.
    - ع. نادان ..... احمق ولي كمي رسميتر است.
  - ۷. کارهای عجیبی می کرد که هیچکس .......... آنها را نمیفهمید.
    - ٨ او تا به حال چند بار ..... خودش را عوض كرده.
  - ٩. از دور دستش را تكان مى داد و من نمى فهميدم ...... او چيست.
    - ۱۰. آیا به ...... شما او می تواند برای این کار مناسب باشد؟

میان ماه من تا ماه گردون تفاوت از زمین تا آسمان است

The difference between my moon [= beloved] and heaven's is from here to the skies.

(Used to show that there is a lot of difference between two things.)

## APPENDIX I

# and courtesv

پیوستِ ۱ | APPENDIX I زبان ادب و تعارف | Language of politeness

## "(ta'ārof) تعارف What is

The word تعارف (ta'ārof, in colloquial Tehrāni tārof) includes the whole range of social behaviors meant to show courtesy and good manners, most importantly through deference, using words and idioms that have become clichés and should not be taken literally or seriously. When shopping in Tehran, don't be deceived by merchants who verbally sacrifice themselves for you (by saying قربان شما , ghorbān-e shomā) in order to reach deeper into your pocket.

The younger generation is observing these formalities less often; but if you want to use them occasionally, make sure that you are using the correct form in order to avoid embarrassing blunders.

## I.i Plural means polite

We know that شما ('you' pl.) can be used for a single person also (instead of پن 'thou' or 'you' sg.) to show respect, and we also know that colloquial with a singular verb شما Persian would sometimes allow using the plural for relationships that are halfway between intimate and formal (see I/4.1):

- (Are you coming with your friend?) شما با دوستتان مي آئيد؟ Grammatically correct; consistent in using plural throughout the sentence.
- Same meaning as above, but used for a شما با دوستت مي ائي؟ relationship which is halfway between intimate and formal. Note that this inconsistency would be considered bad grammar (as well as impolite) when used mistakenly.

The third person is also treated in the same way in Persian: showing respect to someone in absentia, as when you want to talk politely about your friend's parents. In such cases, ايشان (they, normally in formal language

We instead of I?

only) will be used instead of [he/she] in both formal and colloquial Persian:

- 'Will Mr. President talk today?'
- 'No, he will talk tomorrow.'

As was the case with شما, here also colloquial Persian would allow using a singular verb for ایشان (halfway between intimate and formal):

He himself knows that ایشان خودش می داند که فقط تا فردا وقت دارد. he has time only until tomorrow.)

#### I.ii We instead of I?

When speaking polite Persian, sometimes speakers avoid using the pronoun نه ('I') too often, which, they fear, could convey some attitude of arrogance and pride. As subject of the sentence, of course, it is easy to drop this pronoun (or any other pronoun), since the conjugational ending leaves no room for ambiguity. Another solution is substituting it by other words or pronouns. One such word is بنده (ban.de, [your] servant or slave), used frequently in both written and spoken Persian as a substitute for من to show respect. In more colloquial Persian, the plural ه is also used to avoid using ه — this is especially common in schools when schoolchildren address their teachers, and using a plural verb is also necessary. Thus, a schoolgirl who has to leave class early would say to the teacher:

. خانم، ما امروز باید ده دقیقه زودتر برویم (Ms, we have to leave ten minutes earlier today.)

By the way, you don't usually hear a child using the word *bande*; children tend to use  $m\bar{a}$ . (And using  $m\bar{a}$  in this way in colloquial Persian is quite different from the way a monarch might use it or even a sufi in mystic poetry.)

Examples from colloquial Persian:

A friend saying to another with a touch of humor: چه عجب یادِ ما !How nice that you remembered [to call/visit] me کودی!

A student to the teacher: ببخشید، ما امروز سرمان درد می کند (Excuse me, I have a headache today.)

## Appendix I

Language of politeness and courtesy

## (farmudan) فرمودن

The original meaning of فرمودن (farmudan) is to give a farmān (فرمان). command). In polite language, however, it is used either as (a) an ameliorating/elevating companion of other verbs or (b) a substitute. In the latter case, the context should tell you what verb has been substituted by farmudan. These verbs are about activities (especially locomotion), not passive states.

## Examples for (a):

بفرمائید جملهٔ بعد را هم بخوانید. (Please [go ahead and] read the next sentence also.)

ا بفرمائید روی این صندلی بنشینید. (Please [come and] sit on this chair.) – In a sentence like this, بفرمائید could be just making نشستن (to sit) more polite, or – what is more likely – it could have replaced the verb اَمدن (to come).

## Examples for (b):

(Please come this way.) از این طرف بفرمائید.

. بفر مائيد تو (Please come in.) – Here تو (tu) means inside in colloquial/Tehrāni.

Say, please, when are you going to come (Say, please, when are you going to come back?)

یک چیزی بفرمائید. (Based on the context and situation, this could mean 'Please say something' or – if a guest is being offered something – 'Please help yourself/have something.')

With compound verbs using کردن, the verb کردن can almost always be replaced by فرمودن to make it sound more polite (only if politeness makes sense!):

(Open the window [sg./pl.].)

→ پنجره را باز کن/کنید.

(Please open the window. – Always plural.) پنجره را باز بفرمائید.

(Note that we do not have much time.) توجّه کنید که زیاد وقت نداریم.

(Please be aware that we do not have much time.)

However, it is obvious that in certain compounds with کردن that are inglorious in meaning and lack respect, substituting فرمودن with کردن would

vs. فرمودن عرض کردن (arz kardan)

not be any help: if you say فرار کردن instead of فرار کردن (to run away) or فرار کردن instead of ادّعا کردن (to claim), the effect can only be funny or maliciously ironical.

## (arz kardan) عرض كردن .vs فرمودن

It is very important to remember that when you are using polite expressions – like farmudan – you always use them for the addressee, for the other person, not for yourself! Using farmudan for oneself would be as embarrassing a blunder as using عرض کردن (arz kardan) for the addressee. As we saw above, farmudan can be used as a substitute for verbs like

As we saw above, *farmudan* can be used as a substitute for verbs like (to say) – and when used in this sense, it has a corresponding version for the speaker also: عرض کردن (arz kardan):

You said that it was not (You said that it was not needed.)

است. (I had said that (بنده) عرض کرده بودم که امروز بانک تعطیل است. the bank is closed today.)

به عرضِ کسی رسیدن (to be informed) and its transitive version به عرضِ کسی رساندن (to inform so.) are used respectively for the addressee and the speaker:

... همانطور که به عرض شما رسیده است... (As it's been brought to your attention ...)

... که ...) باید به عرضتان برسانم که ...

Some of the words used in polite language are as follows (and you will see that even a word like شما has still more respectful substitutes):

بنده من (bande, servant or slave), حقير (haghir, lowly) عقير (bande, servant or slave), جنابعالی (jenāb[e]'āli, your excellency), حضر تعالی (hazrat[e]'āli, your eminence) – Don't take the last two very seriously; you can use them for any person to show high respect!

ایشان  $\leftarrow$  او/آنها ( $ish\bar{a}n$ )

میل فرمودن or ( $meyl \sim 0$ ) میل کردن  $\leftarrow$  خوردن

میل داشتن  $\leftrightarrow$  خواستن (meyl  $\sim$ )

to be in the presence of a person you respect: در خدمت بودن (dar khed.mat budan, to be at service)

#### Appendix I

Language of politeness and courtesy

to go to a person you respect: خدمت رسیدن (khed.mat residan, to come to service)

to leave a person you respect: (از خدمت) مرخّص شدن) ([az khedmat] mo.rakh.khas shodan, to take leave from service)

And these are the verbs you use for the addressee:

تشریف داشتن  $\leftarrow$  بودن تشریف داشتن  $\leftarrow$  بودن (tashrif dāshtan) تشریف آوردن  $\leftarrow$  آمدن (tashrif bordan) تشریف بردن  $\leftarrow$  رفتن (tashrif bordan) استحضار داشتن  $\leftarrow$  دانستن/اطلاع داشتن (mostahzar budan)

## Examples:

(Where do you want to go?) کجا میل دارید تشریف ببرید؟ (Please come and have food.) تشریف بیاورید غذا میل بفرمائید. (Please come and have food.) میل دارید آن نامه را برایتان بیاورم؟ (Do you want me to bring you that letter?) حتماً استحضار دارید (/مستحضر هستید) که آقای سفیر هم تشریف خواهند (You certainly know that the ambassador will come too.) آورد. (I had asked you a question.) بنده دیروز خدمت رسیدم ولی حضرتعالی تشریف نداشتید. (I came yesterday but you were not there.)

(The last two or three examples are using especially outmoded language, though it is still used by the older generation.)

## (arze) عرضه I.v

عرضه (arze) means 'presentation' (or 'supply' in economics), and عرضه غرض is 'to present/supply'; it does not have the usage limitations of عرض and can be used for both the speaker and the addressee:

(Will you present a new program?) آیا برنامهٔ جدیدی عرضه خواهید کرد؟

Should there be more (یاد باشد، بیشتر عرضه خواهیم کرد. (Should there be more demand, we'll increase the supply.)

## پیوستِ ۲ | APPENDIX II زبان محاوره/ | Colloquial Persian تهرانی | Tehrani

## General remarks

Even among the Persian-speaking Iranians, you can find different local dialects and accents in all cities and even villages, but when you talk about colloquial Persian what you have in mind is Tehrani, i.e. Persian as spoken in Tehran, the capital. This is the accent understood all over Iran – and beyond – thanks to the media; the accent that threatens to assimilate all local vernaculars in the course of time.

Here you will learn some of the common changes (from standard to Tehrani), but keep in mind that these changes only occur if the words are common enough at the colloquial level.

Also note that these changes occur in spoken Persian, hardly ever written – except in some modern plays or stories with dialogs, in lyrics of songs, or in more recent times in personal notes of some weblogs on the Internet.

Question: Does one need to learn this Tehrani accent?

Answer: If you want to talk (and don't want to be like the only kid in a US school saying 'I am going to be late' when everybody else around you is saying 'I'm gonna be late'), yes!

## II.i From standard to Tehrani – some of the changes in pronunciation

(For changes in verbs see II.ii.)

## A. Personal pronouns

First and second persons, sg./pl.: no change! (من/تو/ما/شما remain unchanged.) There are changes in the third person:

اون (he/she) and انن (it/that) both change to اون (un, he/she/it/that); اونا (they/those) changes to آنها ( $un\bar{a}$ ); ایشون (he/they in polite language) changes to ایشون (ishun).

# Appendix II Colloquial Persian/ Tehrani

## B. $\bar{a}n \rightarrow un$ (and occasionally $\bar{a}m \rightarrow um$ )

As some of the changes in (A) show,  $\bar{a}n$  changes to un (in رَان //نها/پشان), something very common in the Tehrani accent, but this change happens only in the most common words.

Examples of words that change:

```
تهرون (iran, Iran) \rightarrow ایرون (irun) تهران (iran, Iran) تهران (iran, Iran) تهرون (iran, Iran) تابون (iran, Iran) خیابون (i
```

Examples of words that do not change:

```
امكان (emkān, possibility); داستان (dāstān, story); امتحان (emtehān, test); امتحان (suzān, burning); المان (ālmān, Germany – foreign names don't change!).
```

The more formal plural suffix -ān (which is not common in colloquial Persian) does not usually change to -un; the only exception here might be خانوما و اَقايون because خانوما و اَقايون (khānumā-wo-āghāyun), the Tehrani version of خانمها و اَقايان (ladies and gentlemen), is common at a colloquial level also.

In certain words you can see the change from ām to um:

```
تمام (tam\bar{a}m, complete) تموم (tamum); تمام (kod\bar{a}m, which) تمام (kodum); بادوم (b\bar{a}d\bar{a}m, almond) بادوم (b\bar{a}dum); بادوم (aram, quiet) آروم (aram).
```

#### C. $-h\bar{a} \rightarrow -\bar{a}$

As خانمها (in A) and خانمها (in B) show, the plural suffix  $-h\bar{a}$  is usually reduced to just  $-\bar{a}$ , except after the vowels -e and  $-\bar{a}$  (or when some emphasis is needed). Other examples:

```
ميزها (miz-h\bar{a}, \text{tables}) \to (miz\bar{a}); ميزا (ket\bar{a}b-h\bar{a}, \text{books}) \to (ket\bar{a}b\bar{a}); ايرونيا (ir\bar{a}ni-h\bar{a}, \text{Iranians}) \to (iruniy\bar{a}).
```

No change in these, however: بِجُهها (bach.che-hā); اَقاها ( $\bar{a}gh\bar{a}-h\bar{a}$ ).

#### **D.** $ham \rightarrow -am$

The consonant h is pronounced softly and often tends to disappear in spoken Persian, unless it is in initial position or when more clarity/emphasis is needed. One good example is (ham, also) which is usually pronounced -am when it immediately follows the word it modifies:

From standard to Tehrani – some of the changes in pronunciation

من هم (man ham, me too) 
$$\rightarrow$$
 منم (man-am) (compare with منم e'I am'!)

## E. Change of -ar to -e in a few common words

اگه (digar) دیگر (digar) دیگر (digar) دیگه (digar) دیگه (digar) دیگه (digar) دیگه (digar) ایک (digar) ایک (digar) همدیگه (digar) همدیگه (digar) همدیگه (digar) همدیگه (digar) همدیگه (digar) همدیگه (digar) (digar)

آخو ( $\bar{a}khar$ ) changes to آخو ( $\bar{a}khe$ ), but only when used as a filler to justify a situation (as *but/because*; see 5.2.1/a), not when it means *last* or *lastly*.

#### F. Change of the DDO-marker $r\bar{a}$ to ro/-o

را changes to either -o (attached to the previous word) or to ro (especially after words ending in - $\bar{a}$  or -e, where it cannot be attached as -o): کتاب را ( $ket\bar{a}b\ r\bar{a}$ ) becomes  $ket\bar{a}b$ -o or  $ket\bar{a}b$ -ro, whereas for words like اقا and بیچه there is only the ro option. (As you remember, the conjunction [va], and is also pronounced often as -va and attached to the previous word, so 'va or 'va and 'va and 'va ')

#### G. Revival of the old final -a when using enclitics

# Appendix II Colloquial Persian/

Tehrani

#### H. Personal suffixes.

Table II.i will show you the changes in personal suffixes.

Table II.i: How personal suffixes change from standard to Tehrani

Formal/standard	Tehrani		
	AFTER CONSONANTS	AFTER VOWELS (EXCEPT -E)	AFTER THE VOWEL $-E$ (SILENT $H\dot{E}$ )
-am دستم، پایم، گونهام (dástam, pấyam, guné'am)	-am دستم (dástam)	-m پام (pām)	$(-e \rightarrow -a +) -m$ گونه م $(gun\acute{a}m)$
-at دستت، پایت، گونهات (dástat, pấyat, guné'at)	-et دستت (dástem)	-t پات (pāt)	$(-e \rightarrow -a +) -t$ گونه ت (gunát)
-ash دستش، پایش، گونهاش (dástash, pấyash, guné'ash)	-esh دستش (dástesh)	-sh پاش (pāsh)	$(-e \rightarrow -a +) -sh$ گونه ش $(gun\acute{a}sh)$
-emān دستمان، پایمان، گونه مان (dástemān, páyemān, guné['e]mān)	-emun دستمون (dástemun)	-mun پامون (pāmun)	$(-e \rightarrow -a +) -mun$ گونه مون (gunámun)
-etān دستتان، پایتان، گونه تان (dástetān, pấyetān, guné['e]tān)	-etun دستتون (dástetun)	-tun پاتون (pātun)	$(-e \rightarrow -a +)$ -tun گونه تون (gunátun)
-eshān دستشان، پایشان، گونه شان (dásteshān, pấyeshān, guné['e]shān)	-eshun دستشون (dásteshun)	-shun پاشون (pāshun)	(-e  ightarrow -a +) -shun گونه شون (gunáshun)

Since this is about spoken Persian and it is usually in less serious texts (as on weblogs) that less careful, ordinary people *write* in Tehrani style, the spelling rules have not been standardized and you might see different styles; for instance, some might drop the *silent hé* (in Table II.i, right column) in writing and join the personal suffixes, which can lead to even more confusion in reading. Moreover, there is also a difference in stress that can help in spoken Persian but cannot be rendered in writing; see the examples below:

Table II.ii: Note the differences in writing and pronunciation when *-ash* is added

	STANDARD/FORMAL	Tehrani
دست	دستش	دستش
( <i>dast</i> , hand)	( <i>dástash</i> , his hand)	( <i>dástesh</i> , his hand)
دسته	دسته اش	دسته ش
(dasté, handle)	(dasté-ash, its handle)	(dastásh, its handle)
ب	لبش	لبش
(lab, lip)	( <i>lábash</i> , his lip)	( <i>lábesh</i> , his lip)
لبه ( <i>labé</i> , edge)	لبه اش (labé-ash, its edge)	لبه ش ( <i>labásh</i> , its edge)

From standard to Tehrani – some of the changes in pronunciation

As you see here (in the romanization), just a shift in stress can change the formal *his lip* to the Tehrani *its edge*, and keeping that *silent hé* while dropping the *alef* could be some help in reading.

#### I. Definite marker -e

There is a definite marker in colloquial Tehrani which is not considered very polite when used for people; it is the stressed -e suffix  $(-he \text{ after } -\bar{a})$ :

(آن مرد هنوز هم آنجا نشسته است :.form) مرده هنوزَم اونجا نشسته. (The man is still sitting there.)

رَانَ اَقَا خيلى مهربان بود :form.: آقاهه خيلى مهربون بود) (The gentleman was very kind.) – Although we translated اقاهه (āghāhe) as 'gentleman' here, you certainly wouldn't want the 'gentleman' himself to overhear you as you refer to him as āghāhe!

This -e also changes to -a when followed by  $ro = r\bar{a}$  or -am = ham, etc.

?کتابه رو خریدی (Did you buy the book?) – here pronounced ketābá-ro, whereas it is normally ketābé.

#### Appendix II

Colloquial Persian/ Tehrani

#### J. Other changes

Changes are usually made in spoken language to make pronunciation easier, and that is why some sounds (vowels and consonants alike) disappear or alter. We will see in II.ii below what happens to verbs; here you see some examples of other changes:

 $n \to m$  (when before b/m/p): شنبه (shanbe, Saturday) pronounced shambe.

هيچ چيز/هيچ چيزى (hich.chi) هيچى 
$$\rightarrow$$
 هيچ چيز/هيچ چيزى (hish.ki) هيشكى  $\rightarrow$  هيچكس/هيچ كسى (hish.ki) لامضب ( $l\bar{a}\ mas.sab$ , damned [used as interjection or  $adj$ . to show anger or disappointment])

#### II.ii Alterations and contractions in verbs

We should first see what happens to the conjugational suffixes as a general rule, and Table II.iii shows the changes.

Table II.iii: Changes in present tense conjugational suffixes

	STANDARD/FORMAL	Tehrani
1sg.	-am	-am
	if ending in -āham or -āyam	-ām
2sg.	-i	-i
	if ending in -āhi or -ā'i	-āy
3sg.	-ad (also ast of 'to be', except after silent hé)	-e
	if ending in -āhad or -āyad	-ād
1 <i>pl</i> .	-im	-im
	if ending in -āhim or -ā'im	-āym
2 <i>pl</i> .	-id	-in
	if ending in -āhid or -ā'id	-āyn
3 <i>pl</i> .	-and	-an
	if ending in -āhand or -āyand	-ān

The special case of the present perfect tense

Here by verbs that end in  $-\bar{a}h$ - or  $-\bar{a}y$ - we basically mean خواستن /خواه ( $kh\bar{a}stan/kh\bar{a}h$ ), آمدن/آ ( $\bar{a}madan/\bar{a}$ ), زادن/زا(ی) ( $z\bar{a}dan/z\bar{a}$ , to bear a child) and maybe a few verbs common in slang Tehrani, but verbs like کاستن /کاه ( $k\bar{a}stan/k\bar{a}h$ , to decrease) and گشو دن/گشا ( $goshudan/gosh\bar{a}$ , to open) do not belong to the colloquial level: you neither say می کاهه/می گشایه – you simply don't use them in spoken Persian!

The same is true of all other verbs that do not belong to the colloquial level. A verb like ستر دن (setordan, to eliminate or erase) has no place in spoken Persian/Tehrani, and you know how to conjugate and use it in formal/written language – where it belongs.

Apart from changes in conjugational suffixes, there are some changes also in some of the very common verbs that are most frequently used, changes that make them shorter and easier to pronounce. The following are only five of the verbs that undergo such changes (conjugation in Tehrani given for present and past).

```
آمدن
          present: miyām, miyāy, miyād, miyāym, miyāyn, miyān
          (neg.: nemiy\bar{a}m, ...)
          past: umadam, umadi, umad, umadim, umadin, umadan
          (neg.: navumadam, . . .)
          present: miram, miri, mire, mirim, mirin, miran
          (neg.: nemiram, ...)
          past: raftam, rafti, raf, raftim, raftin, raftan (neg.: naraftam, . . .)
          present: migam, migi, mige, migim, migin, migan
          (neg.: nemigam, . . .)
          past: goftam, gofti, gof, goftim, goftin, goftan (neg.: nagoftam, . . .)
          present: mitunam, mituni, mitune, mitunim, mitunin, mitunan
          (neg.: nemitunam, . . .)
          past: tunestam, tunesti, tunes, tunestim, tunestin, tunestan
          (neg.: natunestam, . . .)
          present: mi[g]z\bar{a}ram, mi[g]z\bar{a}ri, mi[g]z\bar{a}re, mi[g]z\bar{a}rim,
          mi[g]z\bar{a}rin, mi[g]z\bar{a}ran (neg.: nemi[g]z\bar{a}ram,...)
          past: gozāshtam, gozāshti, gozāsh, gozāshtim, gozāshtin,
          goz\bar{a}shtan (neg.: na[g]z\bar{a}shtam,...)
```

#### II.iii The special case of the present perfect tense

In the present perfect tense, in its formal version, you have the -e of the past participle followed by the a-/i- of the verb to be. The Tehrani accent tries to get rid of one of the two vowels. To make it easier to understand, we can say that it is the final -e which disappears, while its stress is kept and given to the -a-/-i-.

Appendix II

Colloquial

Persian/
Tehrani

The result is that this Tehrani *present perfect tense* sounds very much like the *simple past tense* except for a shift in stress – and except in the third person singular. Table II.iv compares the two tenses (with Tehrani occupying the two middle columns).

رفتن Table II.iv: Present perfect vs. simple past – the verb

SIMPLE PAST (FORMAL)	SIMPLE PAST (TEHRANI)	PRESENT PERFECT (TEHRANI)	PRESENT PERFECT (FORMAL)
ráftam	ráftam	raftám	rafté'am
ráfti	ráfti	raftí	rafté'i
ráft	ráf[t]	rafté	rafté (ast)
ráftim	ráftim	raftím	rafté'im
ráftid	ráftin	raftín	rafté'id
ráftand	ráftan	raftán	rafté'and

#### **II.iv Prepositions**

One preposition that you hear a lot in spoken Persian and don't encounter as often in written Persian is تو/توى (tu/tuye) meaning 'inside':

در خواب راه می (tu khāb  $r\bar{a}[h]$  mire = در خواب راه می He walks in sleep.)

توپ را در اَب
$$ab = ad\bar{a}kh[t]$$
 توپ را در اَب $ab = ad\bar{a}kh[t]$  توپ را در اَب $ab = be$  انداخت He threw the ball in the water.)

We saw earlier how objective pronouns can be added to some prepositions (see 2.3.3); the Tehrani dialect makes this possible for the prepositions | and | and | also – something not acceptable in formal Persian. (In the case of | and | acconsonantal | is added as glide, which is quite unusual.) See how some of these prepositions are pronounced when joined with objective pronouns:

**Table II.v: Prepositions + objective pronouns** 

از	به	با	توي	براي
ازم	<del>ه د</del>	باهام	توم	برام
azam/azem	behem	bāhām	tum	barām
ازت	بهت	باهات	توت	برات
azat/azet	behet	bāhāt	tut	barāt
ازش	بهش	باهاش	توش	براش
azash/azesh	behesh	bāhāsh	tush	barāsh
ازمون	بهمون	باهامون	تومون	برامون
azamun/azemun	behemun	bāhāmun	tumun	barāmun
از تون	بهتون	باهاتون	تو تو ن	براتون
azatun/azetun	behetun	bāhātun	tutun	barātun
ازشون	بهشون	باهاشون	تو شو ن	براشون
azashun/azeshun	beheshun	bāhāshun	tushun	barāshun

#### Examples:

اگه دیدیش ازش بپرس. = اگر او را دیدی از او بپرس. صندلی کوچیکه رو برام میاره. = آن صندلی کوچک را برایم می آورد.

# پیوستِ ۳ پیوستِ ۱۱۱ Literary, poetical, archaic آرکائیک

## Why does it matter?

If you asked a person to help you with something while he himself has the same problem and knows no solution, he would cite this proverb (which has the form of a couplet):

کل اگر طبیب بودی/سر خود دوا نمودی (kal agar tabib budi/sar-e khod davā nomudi, If the baldhead had been a physician, he would have cured his own head.)

Despite being a very common proverb, some features of early modern Persian – for which you can't find any explanation in a dictionary – are to be found here, like using get for the third person singular – and not the second person singular. Here we shall only mention certain archaic features that you might still encounter, just to be familiar with them and not to use them.

#### III.i The conditional/habitual -i suffix

We start with the same بودى in the proverb we just mentioned. This -i suffix had the effect of a mi- prefix when added to the past tense (usually added to 1sg. and 3sg./pl. only), used for counter-factual conditionals (where you would use the past progressive now) and for the habitual past ('used to'). Thus, نعودی is the same as می just as نمودی in that couplet is the same as می نمود (می نمود). Since this usage was not common for the second

Verbs and the *mi-/be*prefixes

person, the same verb (یو دی) could also be understood as the second person singular (if no subject was mentioned):

To simply convey the continuous sense, *mi*- or *hami*- was used: مى رفت/همى رفت (he was going/kept going).

#### III.ii The prohibitive ma- prefix

For the *prohibitive* mood (= negative imperative) early modern Persian used the prefix *ma*- instead of *na*- (still common in poetical language). A couplet by Hāfez:

In today's standard Persian, !مپرس! (ma-guy) and مپرس! (ma-pors) would be (na-gu, 'Don't say/tell!') and انيو س! (na-pors, 'Don't ask!')

Apart from poetical language, you can still find this *ma*- in many idioms and proverbs:

Compare this with اسرار را نگو (asrār rā nágu, 'Don't tell the secrets' – with the normal stress on the negative  $n\acute{a}$ -).

Even the common word کشمکش (kesh-ma-kesh, 'struggle' or 'scuffle') has this ma- in the middle, added to کشیدن (here 'to pull').

#### III.iii Verbs and the mi-/be- prefixes

We are talking now about *poetical* language, so let's make things easier by attributing all that seems to be conflicting with the rules you have learned to *poetic license*. You have learned, for instance, where and how to use the *mi*- and *be*- prefixes with verbs, but these rules do not always apply to past/archaic usage.

If you want to tell someone, 'You are accusing me of this because that's exactly how you yourself are,' you would normally cite this proverb (again in meters):

كافر همه را به كيشِ خود پندارد. (A heretic/nonbeliever thinks that all [other people] are of the same faith as he.)

# Appendix III Literary, poetical, archaic

Here پندارد (which has neither mi- nor be-) is in fact می پندارد (mi- $pend\bar{a}rad$ ), but the mi- is missing.

As for be- (in the imperative and subjunctive), you should likewise know that it is sometimes called, very aptly indeed, باءِ زينت ( $b\bar{a}'e\ zinat$ , 'ornamental be'), treated in the past like some ornament that could have been worn or left out at will. Sometimes you see that it has been used even for the past tense (او رفت instead of او رفت), 'he went'), and sometimes it is missing where you expect it to be used. Another couplet by Hāfez:

اگر غم لشکر انگیزد که خونِ عاشقان ریزد (If grief moves an army to shed the blood of lovers./)

the cup-bearer and I will join (orces and uproot it.)

A paraphrased, contemporary version would read:

As you see here, biyangizad needs be- (because of the conditional agar) and berizad also needs be- (because of the 'final' ke [= in order to]), both missing in the original couplet. Similarly, mi- is missing in both mi-sāzim and bar-mi-andāzim.

#### III.iv The fate of rā

In the couplet by Hāfez cited above, the DDO-marker  $r\bar{a}$  was missing twice. If you did the same now, it wouldn't be considered a poetic license, but an obvious mistake.

On the other hand, there are cases where you wouldn't normally expect a  $r\bar{a}$  now, but it is used in poetical/archaic language:

• Some verbs that need prepositions now (for the indirect object), used to take direct objects  $+ r\bar{a}$ :

و را گفتم  $\rightarrow$  او را گفتم (I told him/I said to him) – possible now only in poetry.

• ابودن was even used with the verb بودن to convey possession:

او مادری دارد  $\leftarrow$  (برایِ او مادری است  $\leftarrow$ ) او را مادری است a mother.)

The verb بودن (to be)

# الز آنِ ( $ar{a}$ n-e) or از آنِ (az $ar{a}$ n-e) = that of

As possessive pronoun you would normally use  $(m\bar{a}l\text{-}e)$  in contemporary Persian:

In formal/literary language you can still use the older version with ناز): ان

#### **III.vi Contractions**

Contractions of words used to be very common in classical Persian poetry, but they are generally avoided now – even in contemporary poetry, except when written in traditional styles. The word خامُ في (khāmush [scanned long + very long], silent or quenched) could change to خامُش (khāmosh [long + long]), خَموش (khamush [short + very long]) or خَمُش (khamosh [short + long]), depending on the poet's need.

Contraction of  $|\mathcal{L}|$  (agar, if) could be  $|\mathcal{L}|$  (gar) or just  $|\mathcal{L}|$  (ar), and it could be combined with other words: thus  $|\mathcal{L}|$  (e 'and if').

Contraction of  $\exists$  (az, from) was  $\exists$  (ze, or just z when followed by vowels):

```
و از (vaz) و از (vaz) و زر (vaz) و از (kaz) که از (kaz) که از (z\bar{a}n) از آن (az\ \bar{a}n) زان (kaz\bar{a}n) که از آن (kaz\bar{a}n) عزان (kaz\bar{a}n) عزان (kaz\bar{a}n)
```

## (to be) بودن The verb بودن

If we put together all the different usages of the verb to be in early Modern Persian, we have to conclude that this verb had four different infinitives: (astan, the '-am, -i, ast...' version), استن (hastan, the 'hastam, hasti, hast...' version), باشیدن (budan, 'bovam, bovi, bovad...') and باشیدن (bāshi-dan, 'bāsham, bāshi, bāshad...').

Before the Islamic revolution, the motto of Iran's Ministry of Education, published on the first page of all school books, used to be this line by Ferdowsi:

توانا بُوَد هرکه دانا بُود (tavānā bovad har-ke dānā bovad, 'whoever is wise is strong' or 'knowledge is power')

#### Appendix III

Literary, poetical, archaic Here *bovad* is the third person singular of the verb بودن — which means that the verb *to be* could be conjugated as *bovam*, *bovi*, *bovad*, etc., although it is mostly the third person singular which can be seen in classical texts of prose and verse.

For the negative also, the shorter or *astan* version had its own shorter negative as:

# APPENDIX IV

# Common mistakes

پیوستِ ۴ پیوستِ ۹ فارسیِ خوب، بد فارسیِ خوب، بد ugly Persian و زشت اشتباهات رایج

# Do we have good and bad Persian?

Languages are constantly changing, and there can never be a general consensus on what is good or bad usage in a language like Persian – just as in English some would find the word general redundant before consensus, and for others it is okav.

In the two volumes of this grammar and workbook, however, you have occasionally seen references to bad or careless Persian. Here you will see what exactly was meant by that.

### IV.i Administrative/journalistic<sup>1</sup> Persian

Careless or bad Persian can be encountered in formal/written Persian only. The way different people speak can differ, based on the social milieu in which they grew up, but you cannot blame anyone for the way he speaks. And don't forget that here we are only talking about the contemporary standard Persian of Iran, not about Persian as it is used in other countries, nor as it used to be in the past – even the quite recent past!

The worst, or ugliest, Persian is what is neither used by ordinary people when they are talking nor by good writers when they are writing. Compare the following:

(This disease is dangerous.) این بیماری خطرناک است. you note here the – این مریضی (/بیماری) خطرناکه. :Colloquial/Tehrani change from ast to -e. این بیماری خطرناک میباشد. :Awkward

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup> By 'journalistic Persian' (فارسى ژورناليستى) Iranian writers mean bad or careless Persian.

Appendix IV

Good, bad
and ugly

Persian

Common
mistakes

In the last example, *mi-bāshad* has replaced *ast* (/-e) – something that writers of 'good Persian' avoid. Conjugating the verb *to be* as '*mi-bāsham*, *mi-bāshi*, etc.' is something you will never hear in spoken Persian, and all writers known for their 'good' Persian will avoid it as well, but in the press or in administrative language you will find this on every page by the dozen.

Table IV.i: Substitutes that you had better avoid

used in spoken + 'good' Persian	SUBSTITUTES OFTEN USED IN WRITTEN ADMINISTRATIVE/JOURNALISTIC PERSIAN
بودن	باشيدن
کردن	نمودن/ساختن/گرداندن (گردانیدن)
شدن	گشتن/گردیدن

The substitutes for شدن and شدن (on the right column) are especially common with compound verbs. You can find these 'awkward substitutes' in written Persian almost everywhere – except in the writings of those known to be the models of 'good Persian.' Example:

هر نماینده [...] حق دارد در همهٔ مسائل داخلی و خارجی کشور اظهار نظر (From Iran's Constitution, §84: 'Every representative [...] shall be entitled to express his views on all internal and external matters of the country.') Here نماید has replaced کند

Careless, journalistic Persian is marked by the bad influence of translations from other languages, using the passive where Persian would normally seek other alternatives (see I/20.1), using the DDO-marker when it is not needed or placing it at the end of a relative clause (see I/19.3), or deleting a verb without justification (see 6.4), etc. An example for deleting a verb:

(She was arrested in Tehran and passed away in prison after 14 days.) – Here you should say شد مستگیر شد and the verb cannot be omitted.

### IV.ii Persian purists and what they hate most

There has been a Persian purism movement among Iranian intellectuals, writers and linguists since the early twentieth century with ups and downs at different stages – a movement with very little effect on the ordinary people and the way they use the language, no matter to what extent they share the nationalistic sentiments fueling this movement.

Here we won't discuss the more extremist views of those who want to cleanse Persian of all foreign words (which would be like cleansing English of all words of French/Latin origin) and will just mention a few of the objections of the more moderate scholars/linguists. The main point of this group is: if we cannot get rid of all foreign words, we should at least not allow certain grammatical features of foreign languages (read: Arabic) to be used in Persian. Some examples of their recommendations:

Common mistakes among learners of Persian

- Don't use Arabic broken plurals when you can use Persian plurals, but especially don't use Arabic plurals for Persian words some of which are rather common, like پیشنهادها (pishnahādāt = پیشنهادها = proposals), تیشنهادها = (gozāreshāt = گزارشها = reports); and some seem unavoidable, like الشها (sabzijāt, the collective noun for 'vegetables').
- Don't use the Arabic *tanvin* for Persian words to make adverbs, like العجار ( $n\bar{a}ch\bar{a}r$ -an) instead of ناچار ([be]  $n\bar{a}ch\bar{a}r$ , inevitably or perforce) or قاها ( $g\bar{a}h$ -an) instead of گاها ( $g\bar{a}hi$ , sometimes).
- Don't use or even make new Arabic compounds like فارغ التحصيل (fāreghot-tahsil, graduate) and use Persian words instead (like دانش آمو خته, modeled on دانش آمو ز or دانشراً موز.).

#### IV.iii Common mistakes among learners of Persian

You cannot expect more than a few examples here, but you will certainly find these very helpful. These are some of the most common ones.

• Don't say نمی دانم اگر او می داند یا نه when you want to say 'I don't know if he knows or not.' – yes, agar means if, but only in conditionals, not in indirect questions! (see 1.4)

نمی دانم (که/آیا/که آیا)... Say instead:

Note that you can still say:

- نمی دانم اگر او بداند چه خواهد کرد (I don't know what he's going to do if he finds out.) This is the conditional if!
- Don't say این یک داستان غمگین است when you want to say 'This is a sad story.' In Persian, only a *person* can be sad, happy, wise, clever, and so on you need a different word for *things* (see 10.4).
  - این یک داستان غمانگیز است Say instead:
- Don't say من أن را جالب پيدا مى كنم when you want to say 'I find that interesting.' كم كردن is only the opposite of گم كردن (to lose). The verb يافتن can be used in both of these senses, but then it is a verb used in formal/literary language only.

Say instead (col.): (است (امی آید) (It seems interesting to me.) Or (form./lit.): آن را جالب می یابم (I find that interesting.)

Appendix IV

Good, bad
and ugly

Persian

Common
mistakes

- Don't say باور می کنم که آنها می دانند when you want to say 'I believe that they know [it].' Use باور کردن only to show that you believe someone's words (that he is not lying) as in حرفت را باور می کنم.
  - فكر (/تصوّر/گمان) مي كنم كه آنها مي دانند :Say instead
- Similarly, don't say من در خدا باور می کنم when you want to say 'I believe in God.'

من به خدا اعتقاد دارم :(Say instead (col.) من به خدا اعتقاد دارم :(Or (form./lit.)

When an English word has different meanings or usages, you can be sure that you will need a different word in Persian for each of those meanings/usages. Just take the verb to take:

Table IV.ii: The verb to take

TO TAKE	Persian equivalent	OPPOSITE IN PERSIAN
as the opposite of 'to give'	گرفتن	دادن
as the opposite of 'to bring'	بُردن	<b>آ</b> وردن
as the opposite of 'to put'	بَرداشتن	گذاشتن

#### Examples:

. (He gave the book and I took it.) او کتاب را داد و من آن را گرفتم. (He book and I took it.) غذایش را آوردم و او آن را به اتاقش بُرد. (I brought her food and she took it to her room.)

(He put the نامه را روی میز گذاشت و من آن را از روی میز برداشتم. letter on the table and I took it [/picked it up] from the table.)

And finally, to have some fun, compare the verbs used in these short sentences:

۱. گل میروید. ۲. شما میروید. ۳. فنجان را میشویم. ۴. ما عصبانی میشویم.
 ۵. صندلی را به آنجا میبرم. ۶. پنیر را با کارد میبرم. ۷. شما چرا میخندید؟
 ۸. او چرا میخندید؟ ۹. شما همیشه میرقصید؟ ۱۰. او با من نمیرقصید.

# فارس - فارسى - ايران - ايرانى IV.iv

**ایران** یک کشور است.

فارسى يك زبان است.

فارس یکی از اُستانهای ایران است که شهر مهم آن شیراز است.

همچنین فارس کسی است که زبان مادریاش فارسی است.

ایرانی کسی است که در ایران زندگی میکند.

فارسى زبان مادري همهٔ ايرانيها نيست، حتّى در استانِ فارس.

مثال برای کاربُرد این کلمهها:

استانِ فارس	زبانِ فارسى	كشورِ ايران	زبانهای ایرانی
مردمِ فارس	ادبياتِ فارسى	مردمِ ايران	أسطورههاي ايراني
قومِ ُفارس	شعرِ فارسى	تاريخِ ايران	اقوامِ ايراني
خليج فارس	كتاب فارسى	شهرهای ایران	نویسندهٔ ایرانی

# **KEY TO EXERCISES**

#### Unit 1

#### Exercise 1.1

١. مينا به من گفت (كه) فردا او و مادرش به بيمارستان خواهند رفت.

۲. مادرم به دوستم گفت (که) خانواده شان را خیلی خوب می شناسد.

۳. حسن به معلم انگلیسی گفت (که) او خیلی تند حرف میزند و حسن نمی فهمد.

Notes: 1) To show that Hasan is not the subject of the verb حرف زدن, we have to mention او [see 1.8]; 2) to avoid a confusion of third person pronouns, we mention Hasan's name.

Notes: 1) Again we use | to show the change of subject; 2) we are much more likely here to drop at least one of these ke [45]s because they are so close to each other.

۶. ما به پلیس گفتیم (که) آن مرد میخواسته (است) ماشینمان را بدزدد.

Note: است dropped in colloquial Persian [see I/13.3]; often in written/formal Persian too. If you want to keep one of them, keep the one at the end of the sentence.

#### Exercise 1.2

۱. مینا از من پرسید آیا فردا/روز بعد با دوستم به مسافرت نخواهم رفت/....
 با دوستمان...نخواهیم...

Note: Your in دوستتان could be a real plural or plural used for respect; hence the two versions here.

Note: Use نرسیده if you are included in that you; also note that the mother's use of pl. in نرسیده could be just for respect (hence the sg. است as one option).

Note: Use ما بفهميم if you are included in that we used by Hasan.

- ۴. پدر مینا از مینا پرسید از کدام مغازه آن کفشها را خریده (است).
- ۵. پروین از مادرش پرسید با کی داشته ((است)) دربارهٔ او حرف میزده (است).
  - ۶. ما از پلیس پرسیدیم چرا قاتل را زودتر دستگیر نکرده بودهاند.
  - ۷. پلیس از همسایهمان پرسید آیامطمئن است که او برنگشته (است).
- ۸. مادر از دکتر پرسید آیا آن قرصهای زرد را قبل از غذا بخورد یا همراه با غذا.
  - ٩. معلم از پرویز پرسید آیا می داند چرا او می خواهد پدر و مادرش را ببیند.

Note: There are two shifts of subjects here: the teacher *asks*, Parviz *knows*, the teacher *wants*.... If we repeat او twice (once for the verb می داند also), it will be still more confusing. (One solution would be repeating the names, which would not make a beautiful sentence.)

۱۰. پرویز از دارا پرسید آیا نگفتهاند چرا به او جایزه نمی دهند.

#### Exercise 1.3

۱. مینا از من خواهش کرد (که) آن لباسهای زشت را نپوشم. ۲. مادرم از پدرم خواهش کرد (که) او را در خیابان نبوسد. ۳. حسن ازمعلم انگلیسی خواست (که) کمی دربارهٔ هوای لندن به ما/آنها بگوید. ۴. معلم به من گفت (که) هیچوقت کیفم را آنجا نگذارم. ۵. پروین به مادرش گفت/از مادرش خواست (که) ببیند آیا دامنی

که خریده است قشنگ است. ۶. ما از پلیس خواهش کردیم بگوید چقدر طول می کشد. ۷. پلیس به همسایه مان گفت نگران نباشد و همان جا (/همانجا) بماند. ۸. مادر از دکتر خواهش کرد آن قرصهای تلخ را دیگر به بچه ندهد. ۹. معلم از پرویز خواست (که) به پدر و مادرش بگوید روزِ بعد به مدرسه بیایند. ۱۰. پرویز از دارا خواست (که) یک بار دیگر برای او توضیح بدهد.

#### Exercise 1.4

- ۱. مینا به من گفت (که) اگر نمی توانم، بگذارم او بکند.
- ۲. مادرم به دوستم گفت (که) کاش (او) موهایش را کوتاه نمی کرد.
- حسن به معلم انگلیسی گفت (که) اگر او آهسته تر حرف بزند، حسن می فهمد.
- ۴. پدر آذر به آذر گفت (که) اگر آن را به مادرش بدهد، او خوشحال می شود.
  - ۵. پروین به مادرش گفت (که) کاش آن نامه را اصلاً نخوانده بود.
  - ۶. ما به یلیس گفتیم (که) اگر عجله نکنند، دیگر او را پیدا نخواهند کرد.
- ۷. پلیس به همسایه مان گفت (که) اگر فردا پول را به او نداد، به آنها خبر بدهد. To reduce ambiguity and risk of confusion, you could also say: یلیس به همسایه مان گفت (که) اگر او فردا پول را نداد، همسایه مان
- پلیس به همسایهمان گفت (که) اکر او فردا پول را نداد، همسایهمان به پلیس خبر بدهد.
  - ۸ مادر به دکتر گفت کاش این دوا را زودتر به او داده بود.
  - ٩. معلم از پرويز پرسيد اگر اين خط او است، چرا نمي تواند بخواند.
    - ۱۰. پرویز به دارا گفت کاش او هم جرئت دارا را می داشت.

#### Exercise 1.5

1. مینا به من گفت (که) غذا که خوردیم، برویم سینما./....(که) وقتیکه غذا خوردیم، به سینما برویم. ۲. مادرم به دوستم گفت (که) وقتی آذر به دنیا آمده (است)، قیافهاش عین فرشته بوده (است). ۳. حسن به معلم انگلیسی گفت (که) معلمی که قبل از او داشته ایم/داشته اند، نمی توانسته (است) اینها را توضیح بدهد. ۴. مادر نیما از نیما پرسید چرا همینکه عمویش آمده (است)، او به اتاقش رفته (است). ۵. پروین به مادرش گفت (که) داشته (است) تنش را می شسته (است) که آب سرد شده (است). ۶. ما به پلیس گفتیم (که) مردی که ما دیده ایم کمی قدّش بلندتر بوده (است). ۷. پلیس از همسایه مان پرسید (که) آیا وقتی برگشته قدّش بلندتر بوده (است). ۷. پلیس از همسایه مان پرسید (که) آیا وقتی برگشته

(است)، تعجب نکرده (است) که چرا در بازست. ۸ مادر به دکتر گفت (که) چشمی که درد میکند، چشم راست او است، نه چشم چپش. ۹. معلم از پرویز خواست (که) هرچه را که نمی فهمد، بپرسد. ۱۰. پرویز به دارا گفت (که) تا وقتی او زنده بوده (است)، هروقت یرویز را می دیده (است) از دارا می برسیده (است).

#### Exercise 1.6

- 1. 'Work only six days in the week, because I created the world in six days.' خدا به موسى گفت (كه) فقط شش روز در هفته كار كند، چون او دنيا را در شش روز خلق كرده است.
- 2. 'The entire day I cried in the mirror.' فروغ گفت (که) تمام روز در آئینه گریه می کرده (است).
- 'God's benevolence is more than our misdeeds.'
   است. (الها) است. (عافظ گفت (که) لطفِ خدا بیشتر از جُرمِ ما (الها) است.
   consider yourself included.)
- 4. 'You can listen to/hear this program again at 6:30.'

  گویندهٔ رادیو گفت (که) می توانیم این برنامه را در ساعت شش و نیم

  دوباره بشنویم.
- 5. 'Was I awake in your belly or asleep?'
  بچه از مادرش پرسید آیا توی شکم او بیدار بوده (است) یا خواب؟
- 6. 'I think you had eaten some bad foo'd yesterday.' دکتر به من گفت (که) فکر می کند (که) دیروز/روزِ قبل غذای بدی خورده
- 7. 'Admit (/accept) that you have not understood the meaning of this poem.'
  - مينا از دوستش خواست (كه) قبول كند كه معنى أن شعر را نفهميده (است).
- 8. 'If you know its meaning (/what it means), tell me!' دوست مینا به او گفت (که) اگر معنیاش را می داند، به او بگوید.
- 9. 'Leave your car here and come with me.'
  پلیس به من و دوستم گفت (که) ماشینمان را آنجا بگذاریم و با او برویم
  (Note here the change from 'come' to 'go.')
- '?How would you have carried these alone if I hadn't helped you?' بابک از پرویز پرسید (که) اگر او کمک نکرده بود، (پرویز) چطور اینها را تنهائی میبرد؟

(Note that repeating پرویز can help avoid confusion.)

#### Unit 2

#### Exercise 2.1

- 1. gush-e, 'I heard with my own ears that he said he wouldn't come.'
- 2. [no  $ez\bar{a}fe$ ], 'First I went to the bath (= shower) and washed myself.'
- 3. khod-e, 'I saw his father but did not see Naser himself.'
- 4. nazdik-e, 'Naser himself had gone to a city near Tehran.'
- 5. barāye, 'In that city, Naser bought himself a house.'
- 6. khod-e, 'The windows were small, but the house itself was large.'
- 7. a) *khāne-ye* [written as خانهٔ], 'He always cooked in his own home and took [it] to the factory.' b) [no *ezāfe*], 'At home, he himself always cooked and....'
- 8. [no  $ez\bar{a}fe$ ], 'If you see yourself in the mirror, you'll die from laughing.'
- 9. khod-e, 'I've only seen her picture, but you've seen Mina herself.'
- 10. khod-e, 'Babak's mother herself was born in 1320 [= 1941].

#### Exercise 2.2

- ١. خانهٔ برادر خودم فروخته شد.
- ٢. دربارهٔ خود خانه هيچ نمي دانستند.
- ۳. خودتان را (/خود را) به آن مردهای (/مردان) جوان نشان ندهید.
  - ۴. نمی توانم خودم را (/خود را) زیر این میز کوچک پنهان کنم.
- ۵. سگها هرگز صاحب خودشان (/صاحب خود) را فراموش نمی کنند.
  - ع. من فقط بندِ كفش را ميخواهم، نه خودِ كفش را.
  - ۷. مرد خودش (/خودِ مرد/مرد خود) خیلی از همسایهاش بهتر نبود.
     از همسایهاش بهتر نبود.
     (No ezāfe for mard here.)
- ۸ وقتیکه به دبیرستان میرفتم (/در دبیرستان بودم) لباسهایم را خودم (/خود) می خریده. ... خودم (/خود) لباسهایم را می خریده.
- ۹. او کتاب را پیدا کرد ولی نتوانست (/نمی توانست) عینکِ خودش (/خود) را سدا کند.
  - ۱۰. او دو روز بعد از خودکشی پسرش خودش (/خود) را کشت.

#### Exercise 2.3

۱. من خودِ مینا را (/من مینا خودش را) خیلی خوب میشناختم. ۲. خودِ ما
 (/ما خودمان/ما خود) چند روز در آن شهر ماندیم و بعد برگشتیم. ۳. ما چند روز

در خودِ آن شهر ماندیم و بعد برگشتیم. ۴. برادر کوچک من خودش (/خودِ برادرِ کوچکِ من/برادر کوچکِ من خود) آن پرنده را دید. ۵. برادر کوچکِ خودِ من (برادر کوچکِ خودم) آن پرنده را دید. ۶. برادر کوچک من خودِ آن پرنده را دید. ۷. برادر کوچک من خودِ آن پرنده را دید. ۸. خودِ علی (/علی خودش/علی خود) به من نگفته بود که پدرش مرده است. ۸. علی به خودِ من (/به من خودم) نگفته بود که پدرش مرده است. ۹. علی به من نگفته بود که پدرِ خودش (/پدرِ خودِ او) مرده است. ۱۰. علی به من نگفته بود که خود یدرش مرده است.

#### Exercise 2.4

- 1. ('Why didn't you bring it for me?') چرا آن را برایم نیاوردی؟
- 2. فيلم طولاني بود و نمي توانستم ببينمش ('The movie was long and I couldn't watch it.')
- 3. بعد از دو هفته به همین کتابخانه پسش دادم/پس دادمش ('After two weeks I returned it to this same library.')
- ('Don't eat it if you're not hungry.') اگر گرسنه نیستی، نخورش
- 5. خیلی زود پیدایمان کردی/پیدا کردیمان ('You found us very fast.')
- 6. قبل از آنکه َ به پلیس بگوید کشتندش ('They killed him before he told the police.')
- 7. همينکه مي بيندِتان از خوشحالي مي ('He dances from joy as soon as he sees you.')
- 8. اگر تعمیرش کنید (/تعمیر کنیدش)، بهتر می خرندش) ('If you repair it, they'll buy it better.')
- 9. (ادست نزنش)، ولى دستش نزن (ادست نزنش) ('You can see/look at it, but don't touch it.')
- 10. کاش فراموشش نکرده بودم (/فراموش نکرده بودمش) و می گفتمِتان ('I wish I hadn't forgotten it and could have told it to you.')

#### Exercise 2.5

۱. نامه را پاره نکن، آن را لازم دارم. ۲. قبل از آنکه بخوابی، چراغ را خاموش کن. ۳. من را دوست ندارد و دروغ می گوید. ۴. در کتابخانه دوستانم را ندیدم و به خانه برگشتم. ۵. به بچه غذا دادم و صبر کردم تا بخوابد. ۶. به ما کمک کنید تا این کار را زودتر تمام کنیم. ۷. می خواستیم شما را دعوت کنیم ولی شماره تلفنتان را نداشتیم. ۸. آن روز در خانهٔ برادرت تو را دیدم ولی بعد از آن دیگر

تو را ندیدم. ۹. کلید را همانجا گذاشتم تا علی آن را راحت تر پیدا کند. ۱۰. ممکن است مال همسایه باشد، بسته را باز نکن.

#### Exercise 2.6

1. Don't tear up the letter, I need it. 2. Turn off the light before you [go to] sleep. 3. He doesn't like me and he's lying. 4. I didn't see my friends in the library and went back home. 5. I fed the child and waited until it fell asleep. 6. Help us finish this job faster. 7. We wanted to invite you but didn't have your phone number. 8. I saw you that day at your brother's home but didn't see you again after that. 9. I put/left the key right there so that Ali would find it more easily. 10. It could be the neighbor's; don't open the package.

#### Unit 3

#### Exercise 3.1

- مناسبی (را) .1
- 2. If it is 'the snow,' then  $r\bar{a}$  is necessary, and if it is 'snow shovelling' in general, then you had better use no  $r\bar{a}$  at all.
- 3. Both 'rā's are necessary.
- دانشجوئي (را) .4
- 5. You are not a writer and your professor is not a journal, so  $r\bar{a}$  is necessary.
- 6.  $R\bar{a}$  is necessary: intense intellectual involvement with some specific point.
- چيزهائي (را) .7
- 8. Both ' $r\bar{a}$ 's are necessary; reason for the first one similar to #6.
- 9. Both 'rā's are necessary; reason for the second one: object of شناختن is usually treated as definite.
- 10. Both ' $r\bar{a}$ 's are necessary; object of نگه داشتن is usually treated as definite, especially when human.

#### Exercise 3.2

1. After a short while, I picked some appropriate dress [/suit/clothes] and purchased it. 2. Put on some warmer clothes today because you have to shovel the snow. 3. Is it possible for a person to kill another person and forget it? 4. The professor picked a student for that job/for doing that. 5. I wrote my professor a letter and sent him the article. 6. I didn't understand some point and asked him/her later. 7. By reading that book I

understood/realized certain things that I didn't know before. 8. I didn't know the meaning of a word and did not understand that sentence. 9. I didn't know the girls but I recognized a boy and went to him. (For the role of *mi*- in the past tense of شناختن see 8.3.3.) 10. The police released the women immediately but kept a man in prison until the next day.

#### Exercise 3.3

- 1. a) خمير هاى دندان [toothpastes], b) خمير هاى دندانها [pastes of tooth].
- 3. a) آشيز خانهها [kitchens], b) آشيز هاي خانه [the cooks of the house].
- 4. a) دندانهای پزشک (dentists], b) دندانهای پزشک [the teeth of the physician].
- 5. a) شاگردهای اوّل (best pupils (of classes)], b) شاگرد اوّلها [the first students].
- 6. a) پدر بزرگها [grandfathers], b) پدر بزرگها [big fathers].
- 7. a) سیب زمینی [potatoes], b) سیبهای زمینی [apples of the ground].
- 8. a) خواهر برادرها [siblings], b) خواهر های برادر [sisters of the brother].
- 9. a) روزنامهها [newspapers], b) روزهاى نامه [the days of the letter].
- 10. a) دكتر بازيها [doctor games], b) دكتر هاي بازي (doctor games].

#### Exercise 3.4

۱. نیم ساعتی. ۲. -. ۳. سفری. ۴. -. ۵. توضیحی. ۶. گریهای. ۷. -. ۸ چند دانشجوئی، صحتی. ۹. چند کتابی. ۱۰. -.

#### Exercise 3.5

- 1. It was a beautiful sunset and we watched the sunset at the beach/seashore for about half an hour.
- 2. Don't tell anybody else the rubbish that he has said.
- 3. We must take some trip to that city before it is [too] late.
- 4. I wish he had given a brief explanation before the test so we knew what he wanted from us.
- 5. [Mr.] Doctor explained about that drug but I've forgotten his words [/what he said].
- 6. He shed a few tears and begged us to forgive him.
- 7. She made it up with her friend and invited him to the party.
- 8. We see a few students each day in class A talk a little bit.
- 9. I haven't been to Iran but I've read a few books about this country.
- 10. A Muslim man was asking an American lady about the address of the nearest library.

#### Exercise 3.6

۱. یک سه چرخه. ۲. یک دست شش انگشتی [i!- [here with]. ۳. یک کتاب دو زبانه. ۴. یک برنامهٔ دو ساعته. ۵. یک کالسکهٔ دو اسبه. ۶. یک خداحافظی ده ثانیهای. ۷. یک اتاق سه تخته. ۸. یک خانهٔ هفت اتاقه. ۹. یک خیابان دو طرفه. ۱۰. یک جشن دو روزه.

#### Unit 4

#### Exercise 4.1

- 1. ديروز پيشنهاد کردم نامه را تمام کند (I suggested yesterday that he [should] finish the letter.)
- 2. This can have different answers:

(رفته است) ديروز شايد با دوستش به كتابخانه رفته باشد (/رفته است) (Yesterday he may have gone to the library with his friend.).

The verb can also be میرفت ('maybe he was going') or رفت ('maybe he went') or رفته بو د ('maybe he had gone').

- 3. ديروز سعى كرديم غذاى خوشمزه ترى درست كنيم (Yesterday we tried to cook a more delicious meal.)
- 4. This has two answers, the first of them with two translations:
  - ا کتاب را ترجمه می کرد (Yesterday she had to translate/she should have translated four more pages of that book.), or:
  - Yesterday) دیروز باید چهار صفحهٔ دیگر از آن کتاب را ترجمه کرده باشد she must have translated four more pages of that book.)
- 5. ديروز ترجيح دادم در خانه بمانم و درس بخوانم (Yesterday I preferred to stay at home and study.)
- 6. ديروز دوست داشتم چند ساعت در هوای آزاد راه بروم (Yesterday I wished to walk outside ['in free air'] for a few hours.)
- 7. Two answers:
  - ديروز لازم بود از دكترت دربارهٔ قرصها سؤال كنى (Yesterday you needed/ had to ask your doctor about the pills.), or:
  - Sesterday you ديروز لازم بود از دكترت دربارهٔ قرصها سؤال مي كردي should have asked ...)
- 8. ديروز قرار بود دوستم را به فرودگاه ببرم (Yesterday I was [supposed] to take my friend to the airport.)

- 9. دیروز می ترسیدم پدرم بگوید که پول دانشگاهم را نخواهد داد (Yesterday I feared that my father would say he wouldn't pay my college fees.)
- 10. ديروز رئيسم قصد داشت ما را دو ساعت زودتر به خانه بفرستد (Yesterday my boss wanted/intended to send us home two hours earlier.)

#### Exercise 4.2

- 1. در هفتهٔ اول ممکن نیست در شهر دیگری باشم (I can't be in another city in the first week.)
- 2. إيا از تو نخواستهاند نامه را فقط بياورى و خودت نخوانى؟ . (Haven't they asked you to just bring the letter and not read it?)
- 3. أيا نمى دانيد دخترم چطور فارسى ياد گرفته است؟ (Don't you know how my daughter has learned Persian?)
- 4. فکر نمی کنم روزِ شنبه از ایران برگردند (I don't think they'll return from Iran on Saturday.)
- 5. فكر نمى كرد من هنوز با زنِ اوّلم زندگى كنم (He didn't think I'd still be living with my first wife.)
- 6. شک نداشتیم که میخواهند فقط دو روز بمانند (We had no doubt that they intended to stay for only two days.)
- 7. آیا قبول ندارید که کارتان اشتباه بوده است؟ (Don't you agree that what you did was wrong?)
- 8. خیلی سعی نکردیم او را قانع کنیم که خودش را نکشد (We didn't try much to convince him not to kill himself.)
- 9. تردید ندارم که هنوز در اَن شهر است (I have no doubt that he is still in that city.)
- 10. پدرش اوّل اجازه نمی داد آن دوستش را ببیند (Her father wouldn't allow her at first to see that friend of hers.)

#### Exercise 4.3

- 1. نداشته باشد (No, and I hope she will never have one.)
- بخورم (No, but I'm supposed to eat with Mina.) Here بخورم (pl.) is also possible.
- 3. مى خوانم /خواهم خواند (Not yet, but I'll read it next week.)
- 4. بينم (Not yet, but I plan to see him tomorrow.)
- 5. حرف می زدم (Not today, but I was talking to him yesterday.)
- 6. بخرد (No, but perhaps Mina buys it.)

- 7. است (No, he's certainly home today.)
- 8. بروم (Not always; in the morning I must take another bus.)
- 9. Two answers: بفهمد (No, but I'm afraid that my mother will find out.), or فهميده باشد (... may have found out.).
- 10. ياد بگير د (No, but I must encourage him to learn.)

#### Exercise 4.4

۱. آمده باشد ۲. می آمد ۳. تمام کنی ۴. تمام کرده باشی ۵. تمام می کردی ۶. تمام می کردی ۶. تمام می کردی ۷. شنا کنید ۸. شنا می کردیم ۹. شنا کرده باشد ۱۰. صبر کنی ۱۱. صبر می کردی ۱۲. صبر کرده باشی ۱۴. فهمیده باشید ۱۵. می فهمیدی.

#### Exercise 4.5

1. He is smart enough to find a good wife. 2. The weather is cold enough for you to wear a coat [/an overcoat]. 3. They are close enough to hear what we are saying. 4. I am hungry enough to eat. 5. You are stupid enough to repeat this mistake again. 6. She is so weak that she cannot walk [/'weak enough not to be able to walk']. 7. The child is tired enough to sleep. 8. I have enough money to buy my daughter a car. 9. He talked enough for us to understand what he meant. 10. I like this house enough not to sell it. 11. She loves her child enough to buy him new clothes. 12. He is selfish enough to believe that.

#### Exercise 4.6

- 1. بیش از آن زرنگ است که زنِ خوبی پیدا نکند. (He is too smart not to find a good wife.)
- 2. هوا بیش از آن سرد است که پالتو نپوشی. (The weather is too cold for you not to wear a coat [/an overcoat].)
- 3. بیش از آن نزدیکند که حرفهای ما را نشنوند. (They are too close to not hear what we are saying.)
- (I am too hungry not to eat.) بيش از آن گرسنهام که غذا نخوره. 4.
- 5. .کنی. (You are too stupid) بیش از آن احمقی که این اشتباه را باز هم تکرار نکنی. to not repeat this mistake again.)
- 6. بیش از آن ضعیف است که بتواند راه برود. (She is too weak to be able to walk.)
- 7. بچّه بیش از آن خسته است که نخوابد. (The child is too tired not to sleep.)

- 8. من بیش از آن پول دارم که برای دخترم یک ماشین نخرم. (I have too much money to not buy my daughter a car.)
- 9. بیش از آن حرف زد که منظورش را نفهمیم. (He talked too much for us to not understand what he meant.)
- 10. بيش از آن اين خانه را دوست دارم كه آن را بفروشم. (I like this house too much to sell it.)
- 11. بیش از آن بچهاش را دوست دارد که برایش لباس نو نخرد. (She loves her child too much to not buy him new clothes.)
- 12. بیش از آن خودخواه است که آن را باور نکند. (He is too selfish not to believe that.)

#### Unit 5

#### Exercise 5.1

- 1. فردا بر می گردد، مگر اینکه مادرش اجازه ندهد (He'll come back tomorrow, unless his mother doesn't let him.)
- مادر بزرگ گفت به تو نخواهم گفت، مگر اینکه بگذاری تو را ببوسم .2 (Grandmother said, 'I won't tell you unless you let me kiss you.')
- 3. او انتخاب می شود، مگر اینکه مردم عقل داشته باشند (He will be elected, unless people have good judgment.)
- 4. این غذا را نمی خورم، مگر اینکه خیلی گرسنه باشم (I won't eat this food unless I'm very hungry.)
- 5. برای او کار نمی کنم، مگر اینکه خودش بخواهد (I won't work for him unless he himself asks [me to].)
- 6. امروز در رستوران غذا میخورم، مگر اینکه شوهرم آشپزی کرده باشد اToday I'll eat in the restaurant, unless my husband has cooked.)
- 7. تو را دوست نخواهد داشت، مگر اینکه هرچیزی که می گوید قبول کنی (She wouldn't like you, unless you agree with whatever she says.)
- 8. در آن خانه زندگی نخواهیم کرد، مگر اینکه مجبور باشیم (We won't live in that house unless we have to.)
- 9. دیگر با او حرف نخواهم زد، مگر اینکه از من عذرخواهی کند (I won't talk with her anymore unless she apologizes.)
- 10. به تو احترام خواهند گذاشت، مگر اینکه بدانند که شغلت چیست (They will respect you, unless they know what your job is.)

#### Exercise 5.2

1. I trust you; otherwise I wouldn't have told you this. 2. My kids are small; otherwise I would have been able to work. 3. He didn't know yesterday; otherwise he wouldn't have laughed so much. 4. You must leave the window open; otherwise the room becomes too warm. 5. You must eat more fruits and vegetables; otherwise your condition won't improve. 6. Iranians are lazy people; otherwise they wouldn't have had so many poets. 7. I want to go to Iran; otherwise I wouldn't have learned Persian. 8. Read that interview; otherwise you won't know him well. 9. He has lied to us; otherwise he would have come himself. 10. People like him; otherwise they wouldn't have voted for him.

#### Exercise 5.3

- 1. اگر به تو اعتماد نداشتم، این را به تو نمی گفتم (If I hadn't trusted you, I wouldn't have told you this.)
- 2. اگر بچههایم کوچک نبودند، می توانستم کار کنم (If my kids hadn't been small, I would have been able to work.)
- 3. اگر دیروز خبر داشت، آنقدر نمی خندید (If he had known yesterday, he wouldn't have laughed so much.)
- 4. اگر میشود (If you don't leave the window open, the room becomes too warm.)
- 5. اگر میوه و سبزی بیشتر نخوری، حالت بهتر نمی شود (If you don't eat more fruits and vegetables, your condition won't improve.)
- 6. اگر ایرانیها آدمهای تنبلی نبودند، اینقدر شاعر نداشتند (If Iranians had not been lazy people, they wouldn't have had so many poets.)
- 7. اگر نمی خواستم به ایران بروم، فارسی یاد نمی گرفتم (If I hadn't wanted to go to Iran, I wouldn't have learned Persian.)
- 8. اگر آن مصاحبه را نخوانی، او را خوب نخواهی شناخت (If you don't read that interview, you won't know him well.)
- 9. اگر به ما دروغ نگفته بود، خودش هم می آمد (If he hadn't lied to us, he would have come himself.)
- 10. اگر مردم او را دوست نداشتند، به او رأى نمى دادند him, they wouldn't have voted for him.)

#### Exercise 5.4

- 1. کا (I'll say/I'll tell you if you have time.)
- 2. وگرنه (My car was broken down; otherwise I would have come.)
- 3. انگار (He was very angry; it looked like he had found out.)
- 4. مگر اینکه (I will see him too, unless he doesn't come at all.)
- 5. فقط (I wanted to say; only, I didn't dare.)
- 6. (If he didn't know, why did he say he did?) اگر
- 7. Two answers:

  ال (I too said the same thing as you; only I didn't insult.), or:

  ال فقط (... with the difference that I didn't insult.)
- 8. فقط (I'll come today also; only, a little later.)
- 9. وگرنه (I have to help him; otherwise, he won't finish.)
- 10. انگار (You probably didn't know that she had married?)

#### Exercise 5.5

- نخواندهای (If you haven't read that book, you had better not go to class today.)
- نخواهد فهمید (I hope she calls him; otherwise her brother would never know.)
- نكند (I can smoke in the yard, unless you don't mind [/unless it makes no difference to you].)
- 4. کنید (This doesn't look like a party at all, unless you make the music louder.)
- 5. نمی خواست (If she didn't want to buy the book, she should have borrowed it from a [/the] public library.)
- 6. فکر می کردم (If I hadn't seen you, I would have thought something bad had happened.)
- 7. مى دانستيد (If the house had caught fire, would you have known how to put out the fire?)
- 8. در نظر دارید (If you intend/plan to marry her, do it in this same year.)
- 9. اصرار کند (I'll not marry him unless he really insists.)
- 10. بگیرید (If you divorce tomorrow, won't the child be deprived of having a mother or father?)

#### Exercise 5.6

- ۱. اگر اینقدر از من بدت میآید، دیگر به من زنگ نزن.
  - ٢. أن نامه را نخواهم نوشت، مگر اينكه التماس كند.
- ۳. من جرئت نمی کنم در این اتاق بخوابم، مگر اینکه شما موفّق شوید موش را ییدا کنید (/... مگر اینکه موفّق به ییدا کردن موش بشوید).
  - ۴. اگر این آب را قبلاً نجوشاندهاند، نباید آن را بنوشند.
  - ۵. او آدم خوبی است، وگرنه یولتان را به شما نمی داد.
  - آیا این بد است اگر رنگِ یک چشم با رنگِ چشم دیگر فرق (/تفاوت)
     داشته باشد؟
    - ۷. پدر و مادر من خیلی فرق نمی کنند (/ندارند)، فقط جوانترند.
      - ٨ اگر زبان را نمي دانستي چطور به آنها گفتي چه مي خواهي؟
        - ۹. اگر نمی خواهی همه بفهمند، به او چیزی دربارهٔ آن نگو.
    - ۱۰. به نظر می رسد دارند او را تشویق می کنند که به ایران برگردد.

#### Unit 6

#### Exercise 6.1

- 1. برگرداند (I didn't want to return, but he made me return against my will.)
- 2. خوراند (She fed the child with the same food that she was eating.)
- 3. ترساند (I'm not usually scared of dogs, but this dog scared me a lot.)
- 4. خواباند (Before she went to bed herself, she put all the children to bed.)
- 5. رساندند (They arrived very late, and they finally delivered that letter to me.)
- 6. بدواند (This dog must run a lot in order to make you also run a little.)
- 7. پیوشان (Put on something warm, and also cover yourself well at night.)
- 8. نشاند (My father sat down and sat my little brother on his knee.)
- 9. گذراندیم (The first week was very hard, but we had it easier the second week [/spent the second week more comfortably].)
- 10. مى خنداند (He laughed a lot and made everybody laugh.)

#### Exercise 6.2

- Key to exercises
- 1. Yesterday he was reading a book [/books]. (-ānd, not causative)
- 2. Tomorrow she will sing a song in that program. (-ānad, not causative)
- 3. Why did he lay the child on the table? (-ānd, causative)
- 4. He may scare everybody with his loud voice. (-ānad, causative)
- 5. Did she stay longer than 5 hours? (-ānd, not causative)
- 6. He drove very fast in order to arrive early. (-ānd, not causative)
- 7. Should she be the teacher, she will make the students understand the lesson well. (-ānad, causative)
- 8. He says he will be able to, but he can't. (-ānad, not causative)
- 9. I'm glad that he came and delivered the message to you. (-ānd, causative)
- 10. Did my words really scare you? (-ānd, causative)

#### Exercise 6.3

- 1. بشقاب را برداشتم و به آشپزخانه بردم (I picked up the plate and took it to the kitchen.)
- 2. كتاب را باز كردم و تا صفحهٔ صد و هفده خواندم (I opened the book and read as far as p. 117.)
- 3. ان خانم کیست که آنجا نشسته (است) و هیچ نمی گوید؟ (Who is that lady who is sitting there and says nothing?)
- 4. پدر و مادرش به مدرسه رفتهاند و با معلم صحبت کردهاند . Her parents have gone to school and have talked to the teacher.)
- 5. دیگر او را هرگز نخواهیم دید و با او حرف نخواهیم زد (We will no more see him nor talk to him.)
- 6. آن ماشین را بفروشید و ماشین بهتری بخرید (Sell that car and buy a better one.)
- 7. می خواهد زبان فارسی را یاد بگیرد و به ایران سفر کند (He wants to learn Persian and travel to Iran.)
- 8. او هرگز به مدرسه نرفته (است) و حتّی نمی تواند اسمش را بنویسد (He has never gone to school and can't even write his own name.)
- 9. قبلاً به خانهٔ ما آمده بود و با برادرم حرف زده بود (She had previously come to our house and talked to my brother.)
- 10. باید آب را بجوشانید و چای درست کنید (You must boil the water and make tea.)

#### Exercise 6.4

1. They got out of the car and went to the hospital. 2. You shouldn't sit in front of the TV without having washed the dishes. 3. She had lost her cat a number of times and found it again. 4. He has finished his food but has not slept yet. 5. In the past days I have met him several times and gone to the movies with him. 6. We passed a few streets and reached that large building. 7. Our car broke down before reaching [/not having yet reached] Tehran. 8. This apple is not quite ripe; give [me] another apple. 9. I got in the taxi and returned home. 10. That bird finally flew off the branch and [flew] away from us.

#### Exercise 6.5

In numbers 1 (شده), 3 (کرده), 5 (دیده), 6 (گذشته), 9 (شده) and 10 (بریده).

#### Unit 7

#### Exercise 7.1

- (Cats don't feel pity for mice.) گربهها دلشان برای (ابه حال) موشها نمی سوزد
- 2. اگر شب قهوه بخوری دیر خوابت میبرد (You'll sleep late if you drink coffee at night.)
- 3. اگر تاکسی نگیریم دیرمان می شود (We'll be late if we don't take a taxi.)
- 4. (سنده است)؟ (Do you miss your previous university?) The version with شده است could be preferable in this case, treating the verb as a 'state verb' (see Unit 8).
- 5. چرا تو اینقدر از غذای ایرانی بدت می آید؟ (Why do you hate Persian cuisine so much?)
- 6. هر وقت شراب میخورم گرمم میشود (Whenever I drink wine, I feel warm.)
- 7. چراغ را خاموش کن من خوابم می آید (Turn off the light, I want to sleep (/I feel sleepy).)
- 8. آدم دلش به حالِ (/برايِ) این بچّههای گرسنه میسوزد (One feels pity for these hungry children.)
- 9. وقتیکه لباسش را دیدیم ما همه خندهمان گرفت (When we saw her dress, we all had to laugh.)
- 10. اگر هزار بار این فیلم را ببینم باز هم گریهام می گیرد (I'll cry again if I see this film a thousand times.)

#### Exercise 7.2

1. You [= one] can't drink wine in Iran, can you? 2. You [= one] can't talk to a lady in this way. 3. One must write another letter to the university. 4. You [= one] cannot make [so] much noise here. 5. Until last year one could go there without a visa. 6. You [= one] cannot see this film and not laugh. 7. You [= one] shouldn't send the child each year to a new school. 8. I wish one could become young again. 9. In this country you [= one] can marry a ten-year-old girl. 10. Can one like a frog as much as a cat?

#### Exercise 7.3

- 1. ور ایران مردم نمی توانند شراب بخورند، مگر نه؟ (People cannot drink wine in Iran, can they?)
- 2. تو نمی توانی با یک خانم اینطور حرف بزنی (You can't talk to a lady in this way.)
- 3. باید نامهٔ دیگری برای دانشگاه بنویسیم (We must write another letter to the university.)
- 4. اینجا نمی شود زیاد سروصدا کنید (You cannot make [so] much noise here.)
- 5. تا پارسال مىشد (/مى توانستى) بدونِ ويزا به آنجا بروى you could go there without a visa.)
- 6. آدم نمی تواند این فیلم را ببیند و نخندد (One [/you] cannot see this film and not laugh.)
- 7. نباید بچّه را هر سال به یک مدرسهٔ جدید بفرستیم (We shouldn't send the child each year to a new school.)
- 8. کاش می شد دوباره جوان شوم (I wish I could become young again.)
- 9. در این کشور مردها می توانند با یک دختر دَه ساله ازدواج کنند (In this country men can marry a ten-year-old girl.)
- 10. آیا می شود آدم (/آیا آدم می تواند) یک قورباغه را به اندازهٔ یک گربه دوست (Can one like a frog as much as a cat?)

#### Exercise 7.4

- 1. (نمی شود دید) One cannot see from here.
- 2. (باید ... تحقیق کرد) One must first look into their family.
- 3. (باید...یاد گرفت) Does one [certainly] have to learn this language?
- 4. (نباید ... بو د) One shouldn't feel too worried about her new job.
- 5. (باید دید) It's probably not necessary to see her husband, but one should certainly see her herself.

- 6. (مي تو ان ... ير سيد) We can ask him himself why he had been following us.
- 7. (نباید...دست زد) The police have told our neighbor that one should not touch anything.
- 8. (می توان ... داشت) Doctor, I must know whether there is (/one can have) hope or not.
- 9. (*No impersonal structure.*) Couldn't you tell me the truth from the beginning?
- 10. (بتوان...فهمید) I wish one could understand one day the meaning of these words!
- 11. (باید... می سوخت) The city of Chicago had to burn once in fire in order to be rebuilt.
- 12. (باید دانست) + (می شد...سوزاند) One must know that in the past one could burn scientists in Europe as heretics.

#### Exercise 7.5

All of them except 2, 6 and 9. By the way, 4 is impersonal only if you read as past stem (bar- $gard\bar{a}nd$ ) and not as subjunctive (bar- $gard\bar{a}nad$ ).

#### Unit 8

#### Exercise 8.1

- 1. بنشیند (He was standing here for an hour, but now he has gone to sit on that bench.)
- 2. (است) نشسته (Who's the girl sitting beside you in this photo?)
- در آغوش گرفت. (The mother held the baby in her arms and tried to calm him down.)
- 4. دراز کشید (He was very tired and immediately lay on the bed.)
- 5. چمباتمه زدهای (Why are you squatting there and doing nothing?)
- 6. (است) ایستاده (A tall man is standing in the first row and I can't see the singer well.)
- 7. تکیه کرده ای /تکیه کرده بودی (Your shirt has become dirty because you are/you were leaning against that wall.)
- 8. (است) خیره شده (I'm afraid of this woman who is staring at us.)
- 9. مىنشىند (Do you know that boy who is about to sit beside Parviz?)
- 10. مى خوابد (Don't make noise, the child/baby must sleep/is about to fall asleep.)

#### Exercise 8.2

- Key to exercises
- 1. (form.)/در بیاوری (col.) در بیاوری (In Iran when you enter a house/home you must take off your shoes.)
- 2. چشمش برداشت (He closed the book and took off his glasses.)
- نمی زنی/نمی گذاری (If you don't see well, why don't you put on your glasses?)
- 4. (form.)/در بیاور (col.) در بیاور (Please take off your pants/trousers so that the doctor can see your knee.)
- 5. در مي آوردم (My socks were soaked and I had to take them off.)
- 6. تن داری (I like what you are wearing right now.)
- 7. تن داشتم (Do you know why I was wearing black yesterday?)
- 8. سرت می گذاری (I really like the hats you wear.)
- 9. بيو شي /يايت كني /به يا كني (You can't wear these old shoes at a party.)
- 10. بپوشند/تنشان کنند/به تن کنند (I don't know why men should decide what women should wear.)

#### Exercise 8.3

- 1. مى خواستيم (Yesterday we were waiting for you and wanted to watch a movie with you.)
- 2. مى خواستىد (Last week you should have asked N\u00e4ser to find you a house.)
- 3. مى خواهى (Why do you close your eyes every time that you want to talk to me?)
- 4. بخواهی /خواستی (I'm taking this for now, but I'll bring it for you whenever you want.)
- 5. خواستم/می خواستم (A number of times I was about to answer him, but I changed my mind/decided not to.)
- 6. می خواست (My ex-husband always wanted to teach me swimming, but he was drowned himself in the lake.)
- 7. خواست (As soon as the child saw her mother, she wanted to run towards her, but she fell down.)
- 8. مى خواستى (You could have been the best singer, if you had really wanted it.)
- 9. بخواهيد (If you ask him to, it's unlikely that he will refuse.)
- 10. خواست (One can ask someone like him to talk to the president.)

# Exercise 8.4

- 1. توانستم (After waiting for a few weeks I was able to see her yesterday.)
- 2. مي توان (Can one tell the differences from afar?)
- 3. مى توانيد (If you see her you can suggest that she should make her article shorter.)
- 4. تو انستیم (Finally we were able to talk to him last Monday at his home.)
- 5. می توانستند (In old times only the rich could travel in coaches.)
- 6. مي تو ان (Can one hope that that law will be passed?)
- 7. توانست (Do you know how Edison was able to invent electricity?)
- 8. مي تو انبي (Yes, you can climb the tree, but you'll feel giddy.)
- 9. سى تواند/مى توانست (Who can/could have spilled that milk on the table?)
- 10. تو انسته باشد (It's impossible he could have done this yesterday.)

#### Exercise 8.5

- ا. میدانم چرا تو را دوست ندارد./میدانم چرا از تو خوشش نمی آید.
  - ۲. درس جدیدی بود، ولی من همهٔ کلمهها را بلد بودم/میدانستم.
    - ٣. آن وقت بود که دانستم کجا می رود.
      - ۴. میخواهی حقیقت را بدانی؟
        - ۵. میدانم کجا بروم.
        - ۶. میدانستم کجا میرود.
      - ۷. میدانم که هنوز برنگشته است.
    - ۸ نمی دانم چند عکس از ما گرفته است.
      - به چند عکس بگیرم.
    - ١٠. مي دانم كه گرفتن اين عكسها كار سختي بوده است.

# Exercise 8.6

208

- 1. Do you know how to take a picture?
- 2. I recognized him at once.
- 3. I saw his car, and I knew that he was coming back.
- 4. Let him know/tell him that we are waiting for him.
- 5. Do you know what has happened?
- 6. We haven't known how he is for a long time.
- 7. I don't know who has bought that house.
- 8. We should let him know that his friend's father has died.
- 9. It's not good to keep him in ignorance.
- 10. He showed me the picture, and I recognized his father.

# Unit 9

Key to exercises

#### Exercise 9.1

#### Exercise 9.2

1. I stayed one day longer in Isfahan to help my mother. 2. After talking to his new boss he did not know what to do. 3. This new drug has made the child much quieter than before. 4. This is part of the aid furnished ['done'] by the Red Cross to the people. 5. Why do you want to take it back so quickly? 6. I must make some more effort to edit that article. 7. They said it was [already] too late and sent us back. 8. This weather will make her still more sick. 9. All my insistence is because of the affection I have for you. 10. His coming was a result of my insistence.

#### Exercise 9.3

- ١. مي دانيد چرا او را شكنجه كرده يو دند؟
- ۲. در آن سه روزی که او را شکنجه می کردند، اجازه نداشت بخوابد.
  - ۳. به او فشار آوردند که بگوید کجا بوده است.
  - ۴. موضوعی که بررسی می کردند احتیاج به دقت زیادی داشت.
    - ۵. مى دانم كه شما هم به اين موضوع علاقه داريد.
      - ۶. او را تحت هیچ شرایطی عفو نخواهند کرد.
    - ۷. او یکی از آدمهائی است که من به آنها اعتماد دارم.
- ۸. در موردِ قرارداد باید بگویم که هنوز (دارند) آن را بررسی میکنند.
  - ٩. شاگردان كلاس دوّم را تشويق كردند.
    - ١٠. ما با پيشنهادش موافقت نكرديم.

#### Exercise 9.4

1. Do you know why they had tortured her? 2. In those three days during which they were torturing her, she was not allowed to sleep. 3. They pressed her to say where she had been. 4. The subject they were studying [/considering] required a lot of care. 5. I know that you too are interested in [/like] this subject. 6. Under no circumstances will they pardon him. 7. He

is one of the people that I trust. 8. Regarding the contract I should say that they are still reviewing it. 9. Second-graders were applauded/praised. 10. We did not agree with his suggestion.

#### Exercise 9.5

- ۱. پروین را نمی بینم؛ هنوز دارد آشپزی می کند؟
- ۲. نه، دارد یک داستان برای دخترش میخواند.
- ۳. شما خیلی آشپزی را دوست دارید، ولی همیشه چیزی را که پختهاید نمی خور ید.
- ۴. اگر میخواهید تاریخ معاصر ایران را بخوانید (/در رشتهٔ تاریخ معاصر ایران درس بخوانید)، باید به دانشگاه دیگری بروید.
  - ۵. میدانم که به دانشگاه میرود، ولی نمیدانم چه میخواند.
  - ۶. اگر بهتر درس خوانده بودی (/میخواندی) میتوانستی نمرههای بهتری بگیری.
    - ۷. آدم نمی تواند غذای ایرانی بخورد و عاشقش نشود.
       نمی توان غذای ایرانی خورد و عاشقش نشد. :Or:
      - ٨ ايرانيها معمولاً با قاشق و چنگال غذا ميخورند.
- ۹. از کارد در آشپزخانه یا برای خوردن بعضی میوهها استفاده می شود.
   کارد در آشپزخانه یا برای خوردن بعضی میوهها مورد استفاده قرار می گیرد. :Or:
  - ۱۰. چطور می توانی با این موسیقی بلند درس بخوانی؟

# Unit 10

## Exercise 10.1

- 1. باربَر کسی است که بار میبَرَد (A porter is someone who carries loads.)
- 2. راننده کسی است که می رانکد (A driver is someone who drives.)
- 3. سنگ می تراشد (A stone carver is someone who carves stones.)
- 4. نامهرسان کسی است که نامهها را میرساند (A mailperson is someone who delivers the mail ['letters'].)
- 5. فرمان می دهد (A commander is someone who gives commands.)

- 6. گیرنده کسی (/چیزی) است که می گیرد (A receiver is someone who [/something that] receives.)
- 7. فرستنده کسی (/چیزی) است که می فرستد (A sender [/transmitter] is someone who [/something that] sends [/transmits].)
- 8. بازنده کسی است که میبازد (A loser is someone who loses.)
- 9. سیاه می است که سیاه می وشد (A black-clad person is someone who is wearing black.)
- (A fisherman is someone who fishes.) ماهیگیر کسی است که ماهی می گیر د

# Exercise 10.2

- ۱. دروغگو (دروغ گفتن)، آینده (آمدن)
- ۲. رأی گیری (رأی گرفتن)، شمارش (شمردن)
- ٣. سرباز (سر باختن)، شورش/شورشی (شوریدن)
  - ۴. راننده (راندن)، کارگردان (کار [را] گرداندن)
    - ۵. بادآورده (باد آوردن = با باد آورده شدن)
- ع. دستگیری (دست [را] گرفتن)، خبرساز (خبر ساختن)
  - ٧. سخنران (سخن راندن)
  - ٨. مشكل آفرين (مشكل آفريدن)
    - ٩. خونخوار (خون خوردن)
- ۱۰. کتابخوان (کتاب خواندن)، کتابفروش (کتاب فروختن)

# Exercise 10.3

- 1. بچهٔ همسایه در حالیکه گریه می کرد به خانه شان رفت (The neighbor's child went to their house while he was crying.) Here می گریست (instead of فریسه می کرد ) is possible, but sounds literary. Also note the position of which we do not place at the beginning of the sentence to avoid a possible confusion about the subject of .
- 2. در حالیکه اشک میریخت از آنجا دور شد و هنوز فریادِ زنان را می شنید (He went away from there in tears and he still heard the screams of the women.)
- در حالیکه فریاد می زدند وارد خانه شدند و به دنبالِ مردهای خانه گشتند .3 (They entered the house while they were shouting and searched for the menfolk in the house.)

- 4. در حالیکه می لنگید خودش را به من رساند و از حال مادرم پرسید (He approached limping and asked about my mother's well-being.)
- 5. بچهها در حالیکه شادی می کردند به هدایا حمله کردند (The children attacked the presents with good cheer.)
- 6. در حالیکه گردش می کردیم تا کنارِ آن دریاچهٔ کوچک رفتیم (We went roaming as far as that small lake.)
- 7. چند نفر نزدیک شدند و در حالیکه تبریک می گفتند او را بوسیدند (A few people approached and kissed her while congratulating her.)
- 8. در حالیکه شنا می کرد خودش را به قایق نزدیک کرد (Swimming, he came close to the boat.)
- 9. 'در حالیکه لبخند می زد گفت: 'در عفو لذتی است که در انتقام نیست.' . (Smiling, she said, 'There's a satisfaction in forgiving which is not there in revenge.')
- 10. در حالیکه می دویدم تا خانهٔ عمویم رفتم و خبر را گفتم (Running, I went to my uncle's home and told the news.)

# Exercise 10.4

- 1. ناامید (Your bag will certainly be found; don't lose hope ['don't be very hopeless'].)
- 2. استادانه (She is still very young, but she plays the piano very masterfully.)
- شجاعانه (With these daring words she showed that she was not afraid of anyone.)
- 4. محترم (How can a respectable man say such an ugly thing?)
- 5. شجاع (This brave dog did not let that man kidnap my daughter.)
- 6. احمقانة (I'm ashamed of [/embarrassed by] my own foolish acts.)
- 7. محترمانه (I got angry because he did not talk to me respectfully.)
- 8. استاد (He is a master [/expert] in his own field [/work] and is very famous in this city.)
- 9. ناامیدانه (I guessed he must not be Naser, but still I asked his name hopelessly.)
- 10. احمق (He may not know everything, but he's not stupid.)

# Exercise 10.5

1. Endless. 2. Anti-American. 3. Incorrect. 4. Without an answer; responseless. 5. Having no bath. 6. Thoughtless. 7. Unnecessary. 8. Joyful; full of pleasure. 9. Unkind. 10. Incapable; powerless.

# Exercise 10.6

Key to exercises

- 1. سکار (One who has no job is jobless [/unemployed].)
- 2. پرخطر (A job that involves a lot of dangers is very dangerous.)
- 3. پر درد سر (Something ['a work'] that has a lot of trouble is troublesome.)
- 4. کم غلط (A book that does not have many mistakes is a book with few mistakes.)
- 5. بىنتىجە (Something ['a work'] that has no result [/bears no fruit] is pointless/futile.)
- 6. کم سواد (Someone who is not literate enough is only barely literate.)
- 7. پر کار (Someone who works a lot is hardworking.)
- 8. ييموقع (Something ['a work'] that is not timely is untimely.)
- 9. يرحرف (A person who talks a lot is talkative.)
- 10. كمعقل (One who does not have much wisdom is unintelligent.)

# Unit 11

### Exercise 11.1

- 1. چه (We shall ultimately see her, whether at her own home in Tehran or in Isfahan.)
- 2. چه بسا (I used to think he had said this, but I could be wrong.)
- 3. په (It was only a short stroll [we had], but you can't imagine how good the weather was!)
- 4. چه رسد به (This zoo doesn't even have a bear, let alone an elephant.)
- 5. هر چه (We have to go back home for dinner as soon as possible.)
- 6. چه بسیار (Don't hurry now; you will have plenty of time for this in Iran.)
- 7. هرچه (I don't know further [than this] and told you whatever I knew.)
- 8. چه رسد به اینکه (I don't want to hear his name again, let alone borrow a book from him.)
- 9. چه (I may not have studied well, but that's none of your business.)
- 10. هرچه (All these years I have bought her whatever she [has] wanted.)

#### Exercise 11.2

# Exercise 11.3

۱. کمی، ۲. کم. ۳. کمتر، ۴. زیادی، ۵. بیشترِ، ۶. کمتر، ۷. بیشتر، ۸. زیاد، ۹. زیادی. ۱۰. زیادی.

# Exercise 11.4

- ا. پدرم خیلی بهتر شطرنج بازی می کند تا من.
- ۲. درس دوّم را خیلی زودتر تمام کردیم تا درس اوّل را.
- ۳. خربزههای ایران خیلی بزرگتر و شیرینتر بودند تا خربزههای آمریکا.
- ۴. در مدارس ایران بیشتر به ریاضیات توجه می کنند تا در مدارس آمریکا.
  - ۵. او خیلی سریعتر کار میکند تا من.
  - ع. تو بیشتر در خانه میمانی تا خواهرت.
  - ٧. شما این مقاله را دقیقتر ترجمه کردهاید تا او.
  - ٨ اين چيزها را بچّهها بهتر مي فهمند تا آدمبزرگها.
    - ٩. ما خانهمان را زودتر خريديم تا شما.
      - ١٠. درس تاريخ جالبتر است تا فلسفه.

### Exercise 11.5

1. Look, she laughs exactly like her mother! 2. The circumstances of the country are as bad as before. 3. The speaker referred to the magnitude of the country's problems. 4. You [/One] can find few poets as great as Hāfez. 5. I don't like traditional music as much as you do. 6. You must spend as much time on this child of yours as you did on the previous one. 7. Had you seen hair as red as this before now? 8. Was she crazy to marry such a bad man? 9. My days have become as dark as your nights. 10. I'm not as pessimistic as you, but not very optimistic either.

#### Exercise 11.6

- ۱. این سگ به بزرگی یک اسب است. (/...به اندازهٔ یک اسب بزرگ است.)
  - ٢. این طوطی درست مثل آدمها حرف میزند.
  - ٣. باور كن، من هم به اندازهٔ تو خستهام (/...به خستگى تو هستم).
    - ۴. آیا روزهای تابستان به درازیِ شبهای زمستان هستند؟ (/...به اندازهٔ...درازند؟)

- ۵. در این لباس شبیه یک گل است.
- اگر مثل تو تُند (اگر به تُندي تو) بدور مىمىرم.
- ۷. پیاز تقریباً به اندازهٔ سیر مفید است (/...به مفیدی سیر است).
- ۸. آیا سیر با هر نام دیگری همینقدر بدبو خواهد بود؟ (/...همین اندازه بوی د خواهد داشت؟)
  - ٩. این تمرین به اندازهٔ تمرین قبلی خسته کننده بود.
  - ١٠. اميدوارم كارهايش (/رفتارش) به اندازهٔ حرفهايش احمقانه نباشد.

# Unit 12

#### Exercise 12.1

- 1. ... نه .... ن (Why are you asking me about his address? I neither know him nor have I ever been to his home.)
- 2. نه تنها…بلکه (I'm not only afraid of my father, but also of my son.)
- 3. ...هم (He can very easily both insult and apologize.)
- 4. ...خواه...خواه...خواه...خواه...خواه...خواه...خه (I won't buy that house, whether I have money or not.)
- 5. ...يٰ .... رِ (The people who made the revolution shouted on the streets: '[Either] death or freedom!')
- 6. ... نه ... نه (One of the slogans of the Iranian revolution: 'Neither East[ern], nor West[ern] the Islamic Republic!')
- 7. ...خواه ...خواه ...خواه ...خواه ...خواه ...خواه ... چه ... چه ... په whether she is here or in Iran.)
- 8. ...بلکه... انه تنها...بلکه (Our cat eats not only mice but also small birds.)
- 9. ...هم...اهم (In that trip we not only went to Isfahan, but to Shiraz and Mashhad as well.)
- 10. ...يا...ي (I don't have much appetite tonight; I'll either have some fruit or a glass of milk.)

#### Exercise 12.2

1. We heard that she was sick, therefore (/for this reason) we went to her house. 2. They had certainly heard that the professor was sick, because they did not come to class at all. 3. Since I had heard that you were sick, I called your home several times. 4. I went in a hurry in order to talk to Nāser before the session started. 5. He returned soon, because his father had said he was not to return late. 6. She returned soon (/early/fast) to tell her father that she had found a good job. 7. He was not able to finish his work quickly; as a result, that night he slept in the office. 8. Since he

did not want to wake up his wife, he left home without breakfast. 9. Not even once had he visited a museum, because he had no money. 10. She went to the US with the goal of studying there, but later she became an actress.

## Exercise 12.3

a) 2, 3, 5, 8, 9; b) 2, 5, 9; c) 1, 7.

# Exercise 12.4

- 1. امی داند که من بیمارم، بااینهمه از من برای رانندگی کمک خواسته است. .ل knows that I'm sick; nevertheless, he has asked me to help as driver.)
- 2. کمک نکرد. اگرچه او دیروز به من کمک نکرد. (I'll help her, although she didn't help me yesterday.)
- 3. اگرچه هنوز پائیز شروع نشده است. اگرچه هنوز پائیز شروع نشده است. wery cold, although autumn has not started yet.)
- 4. نمی دانست چطور به آنجا برود، چون ماشینش را دزدیده بودند. (She did not know how to go there, because her car had been stolen ['they had stolen her car'].)
- 5. از همه دورتر بود. (He came earlier than everybody else, although his way was farther than all of theirs.)
- 6. خانهاش خیلی از آنجا دور بود، بااینهمه زودتر از همه رسید. was very far from there; nevertheless, she arrived earlier than everybody else.)
- 7. خیلی اصرار کرد، اگرچه میدانست نتیجهای ندارد. (He insisted a lot, although he knew that it was useless.)
- 8. می دانست نتیجه ای ندارد، بااینهمه خیلی اصرار کرد. (He knew that it was useless; nevertheless, he insisted a lot.)
- 9. زیاد اصرار نکرد، چون میدانست نتیجهای ندارد. (He did not insist much, because he knew that it was useless.)
- 10. مى دانم او بهترين مرد براى من نيست، اگرچه خيلى به من علاقه دارد. (I know that he's not the best man for me, although he likes me a lot.)

#### Exercise 12.5

۱. همچنان. ۲. چندان. ۳. همچنین. ۴. چنان. ۵. چندان. ۶. چند. ۷. همچنان. ۸ چنان. ۹. همچنین. ۱۰. همچنان.

# Exercise 12.6

# Key to exercises

- ١. تازه دو جمله گفته بودم كه گفتند وقتم تمام است.
  - ۱. تازه روی صندلی نشسته بودم که برق رفت.
- ۲. تازه درسش تمام شده بود که کار خوبی پیدا کرد.
- ۴. تازه پایش خوب شده بود که سرش هم شکست.
- ۵. تازه حرف من تمام شده بود که سیگاری روشن کرد.
- ۶. تازه سوار هواپیما شده بودیم که گفتند موتورش خراب است.
- ۷. تازه یک داستان کوتاه نوشته بود که تصمیم گرفت یک رُمان بلند بنویسد.
  - ٨. تازه ماشين را ديده بودم كه فرياد بچهها را شنيدم.
    - ۹. تازه عینکش را پیدا کرده بود که اتوبوس ایستاد.
      - ۱۰. هنوز به مدرسه نرسیده بودم که پروین را دیدم.

# Exercise 12.7

1. By the time it is our turn, the bank is closed. 2. As soon as it saw the neighbor's dog, it ran towards it. 3. So long as the neighbor's dog is here, we can't ['one cannot'] leave the cat alone. 4. Two of the birds came as far as inside our room. 5. Close the door, so that they don't come in our room. 6. I won't let him go until he tells his name. (= So long as he doesn't tell his name, I...) 7. I'll keep him here until he tells his name. 8. I turned on the light so that the room wouldn't be dark. 9. He won't leave here until you give him his money. (= So long as you don't give him his money, he won't leave here.) 10. While you're taking care of the check [= paying for dinner], I'll quickly go use the bathroom.

# Unit 13

### Exercise 13.1

- ۱. نه، دیگر یدرم زنده نیست.
- ۲. نه، دیگر غذا نمی خورند. (!.Note the omission of dārand in neg!)
  - ۳. نه، دخترم دیگر تو را نمی شناسد.
    - ۴. نه، دیگر شطرنج بازی نمی کنم.
  - ۵. نه، دیگر فارسی برایم سخت نیست.
    - ۶. نه، دیگر سرم درد نمی کند.

۷. نه، از ییاز دیگر بدش نمی آید.

۸ نه، دیگر نباید منتظر باشیم.

ه، دیگر نمی خواهم کتاب بخوانم.

۱۰. نه، دیگر نمی تواند فارسی حرف بزند.

#### Exercise 13.2

1. You haven't yet shown your other house to me. 2. We must slowly prepare to leave. 3. Don't ask him any more. 4. He is not in the office today, come some other day. 5. Let's go finally, waiting is useless. 6. She doesn't know you yet, but she knows me already. 7. Didn't she tell you anything else? 8. If the doctor says he's okay, why then are you crying? 9. Don't you now answer me (any more)? 10. Okay, you had no time to come, why then didn't you call?

### Exercise 13.3

1. d; 2. a; 3. a; 4. e; 5. d; 6. c [form.] or d [col.]; 7. b; 8. e; 9. d; 10. b.

## Exercise 13.4

1. a; 2. a and c [form.]; 3. b and c [form.]; 4. a and c [form.]; 5. a; 6. b; 7. a; 8. b and c [form.]; 9. a and c [form.]; 10. a.

#### Exercise 13.5

In 1, 4, 7, 8, 9.

#### Unit 14

#### Exercise 14.1

۱. یاد داد. ۲. یاد بدهد. ۳. یاد گرفته باشد. ۴. یاد گرفت. ۵. یاد بگیری. ۶. یاد بدهد. ۷. یاد گرفتن. ۸. یاد گرفتن. ۸. یاد گرفتن. ۸. یاد می گرفتم. ۱۰. یاد نداد.

#### Exercise 14.2

- 1. بادت رفته بود که استاد مریض است؟ (Had you forgotten that the professor was sick?)
- 2. يادت نرود كه در خانه اصلاً ميوه نداريم. (Don't forget that we have no fruit at all at home.)

- 3. .گاه کن. (If you have forgotten his number, check the phone book.)
- 4. تمامِ چیزهائی را که یادم رفته بود، به یاد آوردم. (I remembered everything that I had forgotten.)
- 5. براى اينكه يادت نرود، همين الأن توى كيفت بگذار. (To make sure that you don't forget, put it in your bag right now.)
- 6. اسمِ همه را گفت بی آنکه حتّی اسمِ یک نفر یادش رفته باشد. (He said everybody's names without having forgotten even one person's name.)
- 7. اگر آدرس یادت رفته باشد نمی توانیم برویم. (We can't go if you have forgotten the address.)
- 8. این که زبان مادریاش یادش رفته است باورکردنی نیست. (That he has forgotten his mother tongue is unbelievable.)
- 9. اگر یادش نرود به او جایزه می دهم. (I'll give him a prize if he doesn't forget.)
- 10. ممكن نيست تمام آن حرفها يادش رفته باشد. (It's not possible that he has forgotten all those words.)

#### Exercise 14.3

- 1. Today I have three appointments in three different offices.
- 2. Isfahan lies to the south of Tehran.
- 3. I've arranged it with my husband that he takes the children to school on Wednesdays.
- 4. They pardoned a few other prisoners, but he was not pardoned.
- 5. Wasn't your mother also supposed to accompany you on this trip?
- 6. After the kids went to bed, complete silence dominated the house.
- 7. Call Bābak before you make arrangements with Nimā.
- 8. The next speaker rose from his place and stood behind the podium.
- 9. You shouldn't give personal information to anyone.
- 10. Ask your doctor for an appointment for me also.

#### Exercise 14.4

## Exercise 14.5

1. c; 2. b; 3. d; 4. c; 5. a; 6. b; 7. a; 8. c; 9. d; 10. c.

# PERSIAN-ENGLISH GLOSSARY

# Including all Persian simple verbs

Though basically a glossary of all the words used in this series in examples and exercises, you will also find here all of the Persian simple verbs (and their present stems), whether mentioned in the series or not. To make it easier for you to find these verbs, we have used bold type for them. Causative forms of verbs (all regular) do not usually have separate entries. When two pronunciations are given for the present stem, the first one is the *official* one, needed for the [singular] imperative, and the second one is what you need for present-tense conjugation.

For compound verbs that use *kardan* or *shodan* as their respectively *transitive* and *intransitive* versions, often the *transitive* version with *kardan* is the only one mentioned here. Most of the compound verbs are to be found under the entry for the non-verbal part.

Parts of speech and similar information (like transitive/intransitive) are given only when found necessary. Arabic broken plurals have been given only if common in Persian, and they appear separately on the list, except for the plurals formed by simply adding  $-\bar{a}t$ .

A few proper nouns are also included, for the sake of spelling and pronunciation.

The hyphens used before  $ez\bar{a}fes$  [-e] should be disregarded in syllabification, but those used to separate different parts of compound words serve at the same time as markers of syllabic divisions.

An asterisk in impersonal compound verbs shows where you should add the pronoun. A tilde indicates the omission of the entry word (or part of a compound).

For the abbreviations used, see the Introduction. The order of letters in the Persian alphabet (from the right) is:

```
[\bar{a}] \rightarrow \bar{a}
آب [\bar{a}b] water
   c] to شبو → [~ sho.dan] أميدن ~ [~ sho.dan]
       melt, turn to water
[ā.bes.tan] pregnant
آبی [\bar{a}.bi] blue
[ā.pār.te.mān] apartment آبار تمان
[ā.tash] أتش
   زدن\sim [\sim za.dan] \rightarrow (3) to set
   c] to گير → [~ ge.ref.tan] (ح گير خاتن
   س ~ [~ bas] ceasefire; truce
   ~ [~ -su.zi] fire accident سوزى ~
       incineration
آخر [ā.khar] last (adj.); lastly,
       finally (adv.)
[ā.kha.rin] last آخرين
[ād.res] address آدر س
آدم [\bar{a}.dam] man (impersonal),
       person, human being;
[ā.dam bo.zorg] grown-up آدم بزرگ
[ā.dam-kosh] murderer
[ā.da.mi] (impersonal; poet.) man,
       human being
آذر [\bar{a}.zar] Azar (girl's name)
[\bar{a}.r\bar{a}] \rightarrow [\bar{a}.r\bar{a}] آرا
رأي [\bar{a}.r\bar{a}'] pl. of رأي
آر استن [\bar{a}.r\bar{a}s.tan] آر استن [\bar{a}.r\bar{a}] to
       decorate (lit.)
آرام [\bar{a}.r\bar{a}m] [\rightarrow آرام calm; quiet;
   دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کن ~] to
       pacify; to soothe, to calm
```

down

```
\bar{a}.re.zu] wish
     [- دار \rightarrow [ [ā.re.zu dāsh.tan] آرزو داشتن \sim
         to have (the) wish (no mi- in
        pres. and progressive tenses)
    [ā.re.zu kar.dan] آرزو کردن
        [\rightarrow \dot{\mathcal{S}} \sim] to wish
[ār.kā.'ik] archaic آر کائیک
آرمیدن [ā.ra.mi.dan] [\rightarrow آرمیدن, \bar{a}.r\bar{a}m] to
اًره [\bar{a}.re] yes (col.)
آری [\bar{a}.ri] yes [stress on \hat{a}-] (poet.)
آز اد [\bar{a}.z\bar{a}d] free; liberated
    c [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~ ] to
        free; to release from prison
آزادي [\bar{a}.z\bar{a}.di] freedom
|\tilde{i}; \epsilon : \bar{a}.z\bar{a}r | \rightarrow \bar{i}; |\tilde{a}:z\bar{a}r |
آزردن [\bar{a}.zor.dan] \rightarrow \bar{a} [\bar{a}.z\bar{a}r] to
        torment (form.)
[\bar{a}.ze.m\bar{a}] \rightarrow \bar{b} آزما
آزمو دن [\bar{a}.ze.mu.dan] [\rightarrow آزما أزما ما آزما
        to try, to test (form.)
آسو دن\bar{a}.s\bar{a} آسا
[ā.sān] easy آسان
[ā.se.mān] skv آسمان
[ā.se.mā.ni] from sky; heavenly; آسماني
آسو دن [\bar{a}.su.dan] [\rightarrow آسا , \bar{a}.s\bar{a}] to rest
[āsh] varieties of Persian thick soup
[\bar{a}.sh\bar{a}m] \rightarrow [\bar{a}.sh\bar{a}m] آشام
آشام [-] آشامیدن [ā.shā.mi.dan]
        \bar{a}.sh\bar{a}m] to drink (form.)
    آبِ آشامیدنی [ar{a}b-e ar{a}.shar{a}.mi.da.ni] drinking water
يُختن paz \rightarrow يَز [āsh.paz] cook [ يَز paz \rightarrow يُختن
        pokh.tan]
[āsh.paz-khā.ne] kitchen آشيز خانه
```

Persian-Enalish alossarv

[āsh.pa.zi] cooking آشيزي آله دن [ $\bar{a}.lu.dan$ ] [ $\rightarrow$  )آ,  $\bar{a}.l\bar{a}$ ] to pollute, [→ کر: (~ kar.dan ] (→ کردن to cook (intr.) [āsh.ti] reconciliation آشتی [~ dā.dan (bā)] آشتی دادن (با)  $[\rightarrow \ \ \, \sim]$  to reconcile (to or with) (tr.) [~ kar.dan (bā)] آشتی کر دن (با)  $[\rightarrow : \xi \sim]$  to reconcile (to or with) (intr.) آشو [a.shof.tan] آشو [a.shof.tan] آشو to make chaotic (form.) [ā.she.nā] acquaintance; آشنا acquainted; familiar (يا) مشدن ~ [~ sho.dan (bā)] to become acquainted (with); to get to know آشفتن  $\rightarrow [\bar{a}.shub]$  آشو ب آغاز بدن  $[\bar{a}.gh\bar{a}z]$  آغاز الدن beginning دن  $\sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow \sim \sim 1$  to begin آغاز پدن [ $\bar{a}.gh\bar{a}.zi.dan$ ] [ $\rightarrow$  آغاز پدن ,  $\bar{a}.gh\bar{a}z$ ] to begin (lit.) [ā.ghush] embrace آغو ش [dar ~ ge.ref.tan] در آغوش گرفتن  $[\rightarrow]$  to embrace; to hold in the arms [āf.tāb] sunshine آفتاب [*āf.tā.bi*] sunny اَفتابي آفرین  $[\bar{a}.fa.ri.dan]$  [ $\rightarrow$  آفرین ,  $\bar{a}.fa.rin$ ] to create افريقا [āf.ri.ghā] Africa (also أفريقا), ef.ri.ghā) آفریدن  $[\bar{a}.fa.rin]$  آفرین bravo! well done! آقا  $[\bar{a}.gh\bar{a}]$  Mr.; gentleman  $| \bar{a}.l\bar{a} | \rightarrow \bar{a}$  آلو دن [āl.mān] Germany آلمان [*āl.mā.ni*] German ألماني

to dirty [ā.lu.de kar.dan] to make آلو ده کر دن آمدن [ $\bar{a}$ .ma.dan] [ $\rightarrow$   $\bar{i}$ ,  $\bar{a}$ ] to come .نظر see under به نظر آمدن For  $[\bar{a}.morz] \rightarrow \bar{a}$  آمر زيادن آمرز دن  $[\bar{a}.mor.zi.dan]$  آمرز دن  $\bar{a}.morz$ ] to absolve [ām.ri.kā] America; the United States (also امریکا, em.ri.kā) [ām.ri.kā.'i] American (also امريكائى, em.ri.kā.'i) آمو خترن [ $ar{a}$ .mukh.tan] [ightarrow آمو ز to learn [sth. from: ;|]; to teach [sth. to: ما]  $[\bar{a}.muz] \rightarrow \bar{a}$  آمو ز آمو زش  $[\bar{a}.mu.zesh]$  education; teaching; learning دادن  $\sim [\sim d\bar{a}.dan] \rightarrow \sim [\sim d\bar{a}.dan]$  دادن educate: to teach [ā.mu.zesh.gāh] educational آمو زشگاه institute [ā.muz.gār or ā.mu.ze.gār] آمو ز گار teacher of elementary school آميز  $[\bar{a}.mikh.tan]$  [ $\rightarrow$  آميز,  $\bar{a}.miz$ ] to mix  $[\bar{a}.miz] \rightarrow \bar{a}$ آمیز آن [ $\bar{a}n$ ] it; that (adj. and pr.) از آن [az  $\bar{a}.n-e$ ] that of; belonging to (poet.) آنان  $[\bar{a}.n\bar{a}n]$  they, those (pr.; form.; for people only) آنجا [ $\bar{a}n.j\bar{a}$ ] there از آنجا که  $[az \sim ke]$  since, because أنقدر /أنقدر /أنقدر /أنقدر /أنقدر /أنقدر /أنقدر much; to the extent (that) آنها [ $\bar{a}n.h\bar{a}$ ] they; those (pr.)  $|\bar{a}.v\bar{a}z|$  traditional singing

```
\bar{l}_{e}, دن\bar{a}.var آو
آوردن [\bar{a}.var.dan] \rightarrow \bar{0}, \bar{a}.var
       to bring
آويز \rightarrow [ā.vikh.tan] [\rightarrow آويختن , ā.viz]
       to hang
آويز [\bar{a}.viz] \rightarrow \bar{a}
[\bar{a}h] O!; oh (interj.); sigh
[ā.hes.te] slow/slowly; quiet/quietly
[ā.han] iron آهن
[ā.han-gar] ironsmith
[ā.hu] gazelle آهو
آننده [ā.yan.de] future; coming,
       approaching, next
آسنه [ā.ye.ne] mirror (also, more formal:
       (ā.'i.ne, آئينه/آيينه
[abr] cloud ابر
آب و [ab.ru] eyebrow (pl. with both -h\bar{a}
       and -\bar{a}n)
[ab.ri] cloudy ابري
[o.tāgh] room اتاق
[et.te.fāgh] happening; incident; اتَّفاق
       event (pl. اتفاقات, et.te.fā.ghāt)
```

افتادن  $\sim [\sim of.t\bar{a}.dan] \rightarrow [\sim ]$ 

[et.te.fa.ghan] incidentally, by اتّفاقاً

[a.sar] 1) effect or influence ( pl.

(اتار or اثرات or اثرات)

or influence; to impress

 $[\rightarrow$  گیر  $\sim$ ] to be affected,

اثر ات, a.sa.rāt); 2) a work of art

or literature ( pl. آثار,  $\bar{a}.s\bar{a}r$ ); 3) impression; trace; mark

[a.sar go.zāsh.tan] اثر گذاشتن (بر /روی)

[a.sar ge.ref.tan (az)] اثر گرفتن (از)

influenced or impressed (by)

(bar/ru.ye)] [ $\rightarrow$  گذار  $\sim$ ] to affect

to happen

chance

o.to.bus] bus] اتو ہو س

```
دادن \sim [\sim d\bar{a}.dan] [\rightarrow \sim \sim] to give
      permission; to allow
[ej.bār] obligation
   [~ دار → [~ dāsh.tan] (→ داشتن
      to be obliged or to have an
      obligation; to have to
[ej.bā.ri] obligatory اجباري
eh.te.rām] respect احترام
   [~ go.zāsh.tan (be)] م گذاشتن (به)
      to respect
[eh.te.māl] likelihood, probability احتمال
      (pl. = l. eh.te.mā.lāt)
   دار → [~ dāsh.tan] (ح دار حار ~ [
      be likely (no mi- in pres. and
      progressive tenses)
احتياج [eh.ti.y\bar{a}j] need (pl. احتياج,
      eh.ti.yā.jāt)
   [~ dāsh.tan (be)] ما داشتن (به)
      [\rightarrow \, c] to have need (of),
      to need (no mi- in pres. and
      progressive tenses)
[ah.mad] Ahmad (boy's name)
[ah.magh] stupid (adj.); stupid
      person (n.)
[ah.ma.ghā.ne] foolish; احمقانه
      foolishly
اخبار [akh.bār] news (pl. of اخبار,
      kha.bar)
اختراع [ekh.te.rā'] invention (pl.
      (ekh.te.rā.'āt) اختر اعات
   دن ~ [~ kar.dan] to invent
      [\lambda; \leftarrow \lambda \text{ ci}]
[ekh.te.lāf] difference; اختلاف
      discrepancy; dispute (pl.
      اختلافات, ekh.te.lā.fāt)
   (با) داشتن (با ~ [~ dāsh.tan (bā)]
      [\rightarrow] to be different (from);
      to have a difference (with)
```

[e.jā.ze] permission; permit

```
[ekh.ti.yār] choice; control (pl.
                                                [~ kar.dan/sho.dan] ک دن/شدن
      (ekh.ti.yā.rāt اختيار ات
                                                   [\rightarrow] to memorize
   e] در اختيار [dar ~ -e] در اختيار
                                             از بکستان [oz.ba.kes.tān] Uzbekistan
      of: under the control of
                                             [ez.de.vāj] marriage از دو اح
اداره [e.da.re] office (pl. ادارات, e.da.rat)
                                                (لا) کې دن (اد) ~ [~ kar.dan (bā)]
                                                   [\rightarrow \dot{\hat{z}} \dot{\hat{z}} \sim ] to marry (with;
[e.da.me] continuation ادامه
                                                    no direct object)
   (مه دادن (مه) ~ [~ dā.dan (be)]
      [\rightarrow \sim \sim] to continue (tr.) (often
                                             ن نا [az now] anew; again
      with 4)
                                             اسطوره [a.sā.tir] pl. of اساطبر
[a.dab] manners; politeness
                                             اسم [a.sā.mi] pl. of اسامي
[a.da.bi] literary
                                             [asb] horse اُسب
[a.da.biy.yāt] literature
                                             [os.tād] professor; master of a craft
ادّعا [ed.de.'\bar{a}] claim (n.)
                                             [os.tā.dā.ne] masterful; استادانه
   دن ~ [~ kar.dan] to claim
                                                    masterfully
      [\lambda: \leftarrow \lambda دن]
                                             [os.tān] province
[ad.vi.ye] spice[s] (originally pl.
                                             [es.teh.zār] knowledge (form.;
      of (دو da.v\bar{a})
                                                    polite language)
دين [ad.yān] pl. of اديان
                                             [es.tekh.dām] hiring
ذهن [az.hān] pl. of اذهان
                                                c [~ kar.dan] [→ کُر دن ~] to
                                                   employ, to hire
[a.rā.jif] balderdash, baloney;
      nonsense (originally pl. of an
                                             [es.takhr] pool, pond
      obsolete word)
                                                استخر شنا [~ -e she.n\bar{a}] swimming
[ar.bāb] boss, master, feudal
      landowner (originally pl. of
                                             [es.te.rā.hat] rest استراحت
      رَّتْ, rabb, Lord)
                                                دن \sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow \dot{\mathcal{L}} \sim [\sim kar.dan]
|c| ارز عدن |arz| \rightarrow 1
[ar.zān] cheap ارزان
                                             [es.te'.dad] talent
[ar.zesh] worth; value
                                             [es.te.fā.de] use; benefit
[ar.zesh.mand] valuable ارزشمند
                                                (از) ح دن \sim [\sim kar.dan (az)] \rightarrow (
ارزیدن [ar.zi.dan] [\rightarrow ; ], arz to be
                                                    to use; to make use of; to employ
      worth; to cost
                                             [es.tem.rā.ri] progressive استمراري
[o.ru.pā] Europe ارويا
                                                    (gr.); continuous
[o.ru.miy.ye] Lake Urmia in
                                             [serr] سر" as.rār] pl. of اسرار
      northwestern Iran
                                             [as.ra'] Arabic comparative form
||[az]| than; from; of
                                                    of سريع, sa.ri', fast used mainly
ز بر [az bar] by heart; by memory
                                                    in expressions like
   [~ bu.dan/dāsh.tan] ~ بو دن/داشتن
                                                وقت [dar as.ra.'e vaght] as
      to know by heart ~ باشر/دار →
                                                   soon as possible
```

```
a.sā.tir) اسطوره [os.tu.re] myth (pl. اسطوره
[es.lām] Islam اسلام
[es.lā.mi] Islamic اسلامي
إسامي [esm] name; noun (gr.) (pl. اسم,
      a.sā.mi)
[es.m-e maf.'ul] past
      participle (gr.)
[e.shā.re kar.dan (be)] اشاره کر دن (به)
      [\rightarrow : \geq \sim] to point (out/at), to
      refer (to)
سند [as.nād] pl. of اسناد
[esh.te.bāh] mistake (n.); wrong اشتباه
      (adj.) ( pl. اشتباهات, esh.te.bā.hāt )
   to کُن → [~ kar.dan] (→ کُر دن
      make a mistake; to be mistaken
[esh.te.hā] appetite اشتها
[ash.khās] persons, people اشخاص
      (pl. of شخص)
[esh.ghāl] occupation (of land, etc.) اشغال
[ashk] tears اشک
   ر بختن ر ~ [~ rikh.tan] [→ ريختن ~] to
      shed tears
شكل [ash.kāl] pl. of اشكال
[es.rār] insistence; urging
   ~ داشتن (در) or ~ کر دن (مه)
      [~ kar.dan (be)/dāsh.tan (dar)]
      [\rightarrow \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ ] to insist or urge
[es.fa.hān] Isfahan (city in Iran) اصفهان
[as.lan] (not) at all
[es.lāh] correction;
      improvement; a haircut (pl.
      اصلاحات, es. l\bar{a}.h\bar{a}t = reforms)
[es.lā.hāt] reforms (pl. of
      es.lāh correction) اصلاح
إضافِه [e.z\bar{a}.fe] addition; the connector
      '-e' (gr.)
[ez.te.rāb] anxiety اضطراب
```

طبيب [a.teb.bā'] pl. of اطبّاء

```
(pl. of طرف, ta.raf)
[et.te.la'] information (pl.
       et.te.lā.'āt) اطلاعات
   (به) \sim [\sim d\bar{a}.dan\ (be)] \rightarrow \sim \sim 
      to inform: to let know
   (از) داشتن (از) ~ [~ dāsh.tan
      [\rightarrow] to have information
      (about); to know (of)
[et.mi.nān] certainty; trust اطمينان
   (به) ~ [~ dā.dan (be)] (حده ~ ]
      to assure; to reassure
   [~ dāsh.tan (be)] ما داشتن (مه) ~
      [\rightarrow] to have trust (in) (no mi-
      in pres. and progressive tenses)
   (به) ~ [~ kar.dan (be)]
      [\rightarrow : \mathcal{S} \sim] to trust
[ ح کن ( [ez.hār kar.dan اظهار کر دن ~]
      to state; to express
اعتراض [e'.te.rāz] protest (pl.
       اعتر اضات, e'.te.rā.zāt)
   (به/عليه) ~ [~ kar.dan
      (be/a.ley.he)] [\rightarrow کن \sim] to
      protest (against)
إعتقادات [e'.te.ghād] belief (pl. اعتقاد
      e'.te.ghā.dāt)
   (به) ماشتن (به ~ [~ dāsh.tan (be)]
      [\rightarrow] دار \sim to believe (in);
      to be of the opinion (that: که)
[e'.te.mād] trust, confidence
   (مه) ~ [~ dāsh.tan (be)] [→
       دار ~] to trust; to have trust (in)
   (به) ماد کر دن (به ا = [e'.te.mād kar.dan
       (be)] [\rightarrow : \mathcal{S} \sim] to trust
عدد [a'.d\bar{a}d] pl. of عداد
عرب [a'.rāb] pl. of اعراب
غذا [agh.zi.ye] pl. of اغذ به
غلط [agh.lat] pl. of غلط
افت (oft ) افت
```

[at.rāf] around; surroundings اطراف

افتادن [ $of.t\bar{a}.dan$ ] [ $\rightarrow$  افتادن , oft] to fall [oftān-o-khizān] falling and rising; walking with difficulty (pres. (خاستن and افتادن participles of [af.rād] persons; individuals (فرد pl. of فرد) افران افتتن $af.r\bar{a}z$  افراز افتتن افر از  $\rightarrow$  [af.rāsh.tan] افر اشتن  $af.r\bar{a}z$ افرو ختن [af.rukh.tan]  $[\rightarrow]$  افرو ختن [af.ruz]to kindle (lit.) افر و ختن af.ruz افر و ز اف: و دن  $af.z\bar{a}$  اف: ا [af.zā.yesh] increase افزالش دادن  $\sim [\sim d\bar{a}.dan] \rightarrow \sim [\sim c]$  to increase (tr.) ردن ~ [~ yāf.tan/pey.dā [-] [ $\rightarrow$  یاب/کن [-] [-]to increase (intr.) افزودن [af.zu.dan] [ $\rightarrow$  افزا,  $af.z\bar{a}$ ] to increase (form.) افسر دن (af.sor] افسر افسر دن [af.sor.dan]  $[\rightarrow]$  افسر دن, af.sor] to freeze; to extinguish (lit.); also فسر دن [af.sor.de] depressed افسر ده افشاندن $\rightarrow [af.sh\bar{a}n]$ افشان افشان → [af.shān.dan] ا**فشاندن** af.shān] to scatter; to sprinkle افشر دن [af.shor.dan]  $\rightarrow$  افشر دن, af.shor] فشردن see فعل [af.'āl] pl. of افعال [af.ghā.nes.tān] Afghanistan [af.ghā.ni] Afghan; Afghani افغاني فكر [af.kār] pl. of افكار افکندن $\rightarrow$  [af.kan] افکن افكن  $[af.kan.dan] \rightarrow (af.kan)$  to throw (lit.); see also فكندن

[a.ghal.lan] at least [a.ghal.liv.vat] minority اقلُتت قوم [agh.vām] pl. of اقوام [ak.bar] Akbar; boy's name  $\mathcal{L}[a.gar]$  if (in conditional; not for indirect questions) [a.gar-che] although اگرچه اگر نه [a.gar-ná] if not; if not so, otherwise  $\mathcal{V}[\acute{e}l.l\bar{a}]$  except; other than [stress on va el.la ] otherwise [stress on] و الأ [al.'ān] now إلاغ [o.lāgh] donkey (only form.) لياس (only form.) [el.te.zā.mi] subjunctive (gr.) التزامي [el.te.mās] begging earnestly التماس (م) کن  $\sim [\sim kar.dan (be)] [\rightarrow \rightarrow \sim \sim ]$ to plead with, to beg earnestly الزام [el. zām] obligation (pl. الزام el.zā.māt) [a.lef.ba] alphabet [em.te.hān] exam, test (pl. (em.te.hā.nāt امتحانات دادن $\sim [\sim d\bar{a}.dan]$  ( $\rightarrow \sim \sim$ ) to take a test [amr] imperative (gr.); order, command (pl. او امر, a.vā.mer) em.ruz] today امروز  $[em.ri.k\bar{a}] \rightarrow [em.ri.k\bar{a}]$  امریکا آمریکائی  $(em.ri.k\bar{a}.'i) \rightarrow [em.ri.k\bar{a}.'i]$  امریکائی [ām.ri.kā.'i] امكانات [em.kān] possibility (pl. امكانات, em.kā.nāt) دار → [~ dāsh.tan] (→ دار حار ~] to be possible or likely (no mi- in

pres. and progressive tenses)

```
مال [am.v\bar{a}l] امو ال
[o.mid] hope اميد
   يه اُميد [be o.mi.d-e] in the hope of
   [be o.mi.d-e ān.ke] به اُميد آنکه
      hoping (that)
[o.mid.vār] hopeful
   دن ~ [~ bu.dan] [→ بو دن ~] to
      hope (lit. 'to be hopeful')
انبار [an.b\bar{a}r] \rightarrow [iul]
[an.bāsh.tan] [انبار, an.bār] to store
[en.te.khāb] selection; choice
      ( pl. انتخابات, en.te.khā.bāt =
      elections)
   دن \sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow > > \sim ] to
      choose, to pick
[en.te.khā.bāt] elections (pl. of
      انتخاب, en.te.khāb, selecting)
[en.te.zār] waiting; expectation
   expect; to anticipate
[an.jām] [\rightarrow انجام] انجام] conclusion;
      performance
   دادن \sim [\sim d\bar{a}.dan] \rightarrow \sim \sim ] to do
      (an assignment)
[an.jā.mi.dan (be)] انجاميدن (يه)
      [\rightarrow انجام, an.j\bar{a}m] to lead to;
      to result in; to end up
اندا [an.d\bar{a}] اندا
انداز \rightarrow [an.dākh.tan] انداختن an.dāz]
      to throw
[an.d\bar{a}z] \rightarrow [ik] انداز
[an.dā.ze] size; extent; amount;
   be ~ -ye] as much as; انداز ة
      to the extent of
   [bish az ~] too much بيش از اندازه
,اندوز → [an.dukh.tan] اندوختن
      an.duz] to save; to accumulate
```

```
اندو دن [an.du.dan] [\rightarrow اندا دن an.d\bar{a}] to
      plaster (lit.)
[an.duz] \rightarrow [an.duz] اندو ز
[an.dish] \rightarrow اندیش
اندیش → [an.di.shi.dan] (اندیش ح
      an.dish] to think (form.)
[en.sān] human being; one (pr.)
[en.sā.ni] human; humane انسانی
[en.'e.kās] reflection
en. 'e. kā. si] reflexive انعكاسي
[en.ghe.lāb] revolution (pl.
       (en.ghe.lā.bāt انقلابات
انگاشتن(en.gar] \rightarrow انگار
   (45) \sim [\sim (ke)] as if, as though
انگار [en.g\bar{a}sh.tan] \mapsto [en.g\bar{a}r] انگار و [en.g\bar{a}sh.tan]
       to assume; to suppose
[an.gosht] finger (pl. with both
      -h\bar{a} and -\bar{a}n)
انگلستان [en.ge.les.tān] England
[en.ge.li.si] English انگلسی
[an.gikh.tan] [→ انگيخ an.giz] انگيختن
      to stir, to provoke
انگىختى: → [an.giz] انگىز
\mathfrak{g}[u] he or she
امر [a.v\bar{a}.mer] او امر
[ow.zā'] circumstances;
      conditions (pl. of وضع)
وقت ow.ghāt] pl. of اوقات
[av.val] first اوّ ل
[av.va.lan] firstly او ا
ow.lād] children [in relation to] او لاد
      parents]; offspring (originally pl.
      of the Arabic り, [va.lad], son)
[av.va.lin] first اوّ لين
اهالي [a.h\bar{a}.li] residents or inhabitants
```

(pl. of (lal)

Persian-Enalish alossarv

هدف  $[ah.d\bar{a}f]$  pl. of هداف ر  $[b\bar{a}r]$  'time' as counting word اهل [ahl] native [of a place] (pl. اهالي), الرها [bār-hā] many times ahāli, residents or inhabitants) باختن [bākh.tan] [ $\rightarrow$  باختن, bāz] to lose; [ah.l-e . . . bu.dan] اهل . . . بو دن to play or gamble [→ ماشر ~] to be from [a city لد [bād] wind or country]; to be of [a certain [~ \bar{a.var.de}] easily gained trait]; to be interested in ('brought with the wind') (s) [ev] oh; O! رو  $\rightarrow$  [bar ~ raftan] [ $\rightarrow$  ابر باد رفتن  $\sim$ [i.tā.li.yā] Italy ايتاليا to be lost; to go with the wind [i.rān] Iran اد ان [bā.dām] almond بادام [i.rā.ni] Iranian (n.; adj.) يار  $[b\bar{a}r]$  1) time [counting word]; استادن  $\rightarrow$  [ist] است 2) load ر دن ~ [~ bor.dan] [→ بُر دن ~] to carry استادن [is.tā.dan] [ $\rightarrow$  استادن, ist] to stand; to stop/pause (causative: (ایستاندن  $b\bar{a}r] \rightarrow$ ىار ىدن [ist.gāh] station الدان [bā.rān] rain آمدن $\sim [\sim \bar{a}.ma.dan] \rightarrow [\sim ]$  to rain [i.shān] they (for people only; more polite than (انها) بار اني [bā.rā.ni] rainy (adj.); raincoat [i.meyl] email (n.) [in] this (adj. and pr.) ار بدن  $[b\bar{a}.ri.dan] \rightarrow b\bar{a}r$  to rain اننان [i.nān] these (pr.; form.; ياختن  $(b\bar{a}z]$  1) از  $(b\bar{a}z]$  2) again; 3) open for people only) یاز کر دن [ $\sim kar.dan$ ] [ $\rightarrow$ کن  $\sim$ ] to in.ter.net] اینترنت open: to unfasten or untie (tr.) *in.jā*] here النحا ازار  $[b\bar{a}.z\bar{a}r]$  market, bazaar [in.towr] in this way; اينطور/اين طور بازيسين [bāz.pa.sin] last (lit./poet.) باز جو ئى [bāz-ju.'i] investigation; [in.towr ke] the way اینطور/این طور که interrogation دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~] to [in-ghadr] so, so much اینقدر investigate; to interrogate النها [ $in.h\bar{a}$ ] these (pr.) باز گشتن → [bāz-gard] باز گرد [in ha.me] so much; [bāz-gasht] return (n.) عاذ گشت so many: so بازگرد] [bāz-gash.tan] **بازگشتن**  $\lfloor [b\bar{a}]$  with (prep.); also used as prefix  $b\bar{a}z$ -gard] to return ( $b\bar{a}z$ - is a لا أنكه [bā ān-ke] even though prefix) (lit.; see ربر گشتن) (form./wrt.) ازنده [bā.zan.de] loser ل النكه [bā in-ke] even though باز هم [bāz ham] again, anew; still; الک [bā.bak] Babak (boy's name)

nonetheless

```
رح إلى [b\bar{a}.zi] play; game
بازی کر دن [b\bar{a}.zi\ kar.dan] [\rightarrow کن \sim] to
[bā.zi.kon] player [in sports] بازیکن
بو دن(b\bar{a}sh) باش
/bā.'es sho.dan باعث شدن/باعث...شدن
       b\bar{a}.'e.s-e . . . sho.dan] [\rightarrow  شبو \sim] to
       cause
إباغ [bāgh] garden (usually large)
اغچه [bāgh.che] small garden
[bā.gh-e vahsh] zoo باغ وحش
باف [b\bar{a}f.tan] [\rightarrow باف, b\bar{a}f] to knit;
       to weave: to braid
[bāf.ta.ni] product of hand-knitting بافتني
[bā.ghi] remaining باقى
الدن [b\bar{a}l] \rightarrow 
الله [b\bar{a}.l\bar{a}] (adj./adv.) high, up, above
   إلاي [bā.lā-ye] (prep.) over,
       above. on
   [bā.lā raf.tan (az)] بالأرفتين (از)
       [\rightarrow 9, \sim] to climb
[bel.'a.kha.re] finally
بال (b\bar{a}.li.dan] [\rightarrow بال , b\bar{a}l] to grow;
       to boast
[bām] roof بام
انک [bānk] bank
ياور کردن [bā.var kar.dan] [\rightarrow : S \sim]
       to believe
   کر دنی ~ [~ kar.da.ni] believable
   ~ نکر دنی [~ na-kar.da.ni]
       unbelievable
إبا هم [bā ham] together
   [~ ساز → [~ sākh.tan] مساختن ~]
```

to conspire; to join forces

[bā ham-di.gar] with each با همديگر

other, with one another

[bā-hush] intelligent باهو ش

```
verb; same form for all persons).
      Other variants sometimes used
      as synonyms: می باید [mi-bāyad],
      مى بايست [b\bar{a}yest] بايست
      [mi-bayest] or the rather
      بایستی/میبایستی archaic
      [bāyesti/mi-bāyesti]
بايست/بايستي [bāyest/bāyesti] (both
      used also with mi-) \rightarrow باید
ل کدگر [bā yek-di.gar] with each
      other, with one another
      (form./wrt.)
[be.bakh.shid] (I beg
      your) pardon!; excuse me!
      [بخشيدن → ا
[be-tā.ze.gi] recently بتازگی /به تازگی
      (تازه see)
يجاي/(به) جاي [be.j\bar{a}.ye] in place of; instead of
(جز be-joz] except (see بجز
يچّگانه [bach.che.gā.ne] childish,
      childlike, of children or
      children's
يچگے [bach.che.gi] childhood;
      childishness
[bach.che] child (pl. usually
      with -h\bar{a})
/bach.che.dar] having child بَيِّه دار
      children; pregnant
إيحث [bahs] argument; dispute
[bahs-an.giz] controversial بحثانگيز
نخت [bakht] fortune; luck
بخش [bakhsh] [\rightarrow بخش] section;
بخش (bakh.shi.dan) [→ بخشيدن
      bakhsh] to forgive;
      to pardon
```

یخشیدن یه [~ be] to bestow upon

ايايد [bā.yad] must; should (modal

Persian-Enalish alossarv

```
لك [bad] bad
                                                [bar khor.dan (be*)] بر خور دن (به*)
   (از) د آمدن (از) الد* آمدن (از) الد آمدن (از)
       [\rightarrow \tilde{1} \sim] to dislike; to hate
   [~ go.zash.tan (be*)] بد گذشتن (به*)
       [\rightarrow] گذر \sim to have a bad time
يدىخت [bad bakht] unfortunate;
       ill-fated; unlucky
يدىختانه [bad.bakh.tā.ne] unfortunately,
       unluckily
يدىختى [bad bakh.ti] misery;
       misfortune; bad luck
لديو [bad.bu] malodorous; smelly
[bad.bin] pessimist (from
       (ىد دىدن
[ba.dal kar.dan (be)] بدل کې دن (په)
      [\rightarrow \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ ] to change (to)
[be.du.n-e] without
[bar] \rightarrow [bar] (میر دن on, over, above (lit.)
بر ابر [ba.rā.bar] equal; facing; against
   در برابر [dar \sim -e] in front of;
[ba.rā.dar] brother
یر ادری [ba.r\bar{a}.da.ri] brotherhood;
       brotherliness
بر انداز \rightarrow [bar-an.dākh.tan] بر انداز ختن ,
       bar-an.d\bar{a}z - 'bar-' here is a
       prefix] to overthrow
[ba.rā-ye] for (prep.)
يراي اين [ba.rā.ye in] for this; for this
       reason
إبراي اينكه [ba.rā.ye in-ke] because,
       for (conj.)
بر خيز \rightarrow [bar-khās.tan] بر خيز,
       bar-khiz] to rise; to stand up
       (bar- is a prefix)
```

بر خوردن  $\rightarrow [bar\ khor]$  بر خور

برخورد [bar-khord] encounter;

approach; clash

```
ا خور → حور ~] to be offended
       (impersonal in this sense only);
       to encounter, to come across
بر داشتن[bar.d\bar{a}r] 	o [bar.d\bar{a}r] بر دار
بر دار \rightarrow [bar-dāsh.tan] بر دار \rightarrow
       bar.dar] to pick up (+ mi- in
       pres. and progressive tenses)
يُر دن [bor.dan] [\rightarrow \dot{y}, bar] to take
       (away), to carry; to win (a prize
       or match)
بررسي [bar.ra.si] consideration;
       deliberation; examination
   دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~] to
       consider; to deliberate; to
       examine
[be ragh.m-e] despite برغم/به رغم
       (عليرغم see) (عليرغم)
[barf] snow برف
برف آمدن [barf \bar{a}.ma.dan] [\rightarrow آ ~]
پ ق [bargh] lightning; electricity
[bar-gha.rār kar.dan] برقرار کردن
       [\rightarrow : \leq \sim] to set up; to establish
[barg] leaf د گ
بر گشتن → [bar-gard] بر گر د
برگرداندن (bar.gar.d\bar{a}n] \rightarrow [bar.gar.d\bar{a}n]
بر گر دان\rightarrow [bar.gar.dān.dan] بر گر داندن
       bar.gar.d\bar{a}n] to return sth. or so.
برگشتن [bar-gash.tan] [\rightarrow برگشتن,
       bar-gard] to return (bar- is a
       prefix)
[bar.nā.me] program برنامه
بر نده [ba.ran.de] winner (see بر دن,
       bor.dan)
[bo.zorg] big; great; large
بزودی [be-zu.di] soon; before long
       (see زود)
```

```
[bas] enough بَسر
   [→ باش → [bas* bu.dan] بس * بو دن
      to have enough of; to be enough
اسا [ba.s\bar{a}] (how) many or (how) much
      (poet.; exclamative)
   يه سيا [che ~] many a . . . ; maybe;
      it could be that
يسان/به سان [be-sā.n-e] similar to,
      like (lit.)
بستن [bas.tan] [\rightarrow بند, band] to close,
      to shut; to tie, to fasten; to
      attach
[bas.ta.ni] ice-cream بستني
سته [bas.te] package
لشر [ba.shar] human being, mankind
[ba.si] a lot of (poet.)
سيار [bes.yār] very; a lot
   انساري از [bes.yā.ri az] a lot of
[bot.ri] bottle بطري
اعد [ba'd] next (adj., as in 'next week');
      afterwards, later, then (conj.)
إبعدا [ba'.dan] afterwards, later, then
      (adv.)
ار [ba'd az] after (prep.)
العد از ظهر [ba'd az zohr] afternoon
يعدي [ba'.di] next
(bá'.zi] some (for countables) بعضي
      (ends in unstressed indefinite -i)
عبد [ba. 'id] unlikely; distant
غير [be-gheyr] see بغير
[bagh.ghāl] grocer نقّال
[be-gu.ne.ye] similar to, بگونهٔ ایه گونهٔ
      like (lit.)
[bol.bol] nightingale بلبل
to ~ باش → [ba.lad bu.dan] بَلَد بو دن
      know (how to do sth.); to have
      learned sth.
```

```
[bal.ke] but rather
لند [bo.land] high, tall; loud
لله [ba.le] yes [stress on bá-]
للي [ba.li] yes [stress on bá-] (wrt.)
للط/بلت [be.lit] ticket [from the
      French billet]
موقع [be-mow.ghe'] see بموقع
إينابر اين [ba.nā-bar-in] therefore ('based
      on this')
rope [بستن → [band] بَند
   بند کفش [~ -e kafsh] shoelace
[ban.d-o-bast] collusion or
      a secret deal
نده [ban.de] slave; servant; bondman
نناد [bon.yād] foundation
and خو شبو [bu] smell, scent (see بو
یو دادن [bu d\bar{a}.dan] [\rightarrow ده \sim] to stink
      (intr.)
ل دن [bu.dan] [→ باش, bāsh] to be
بوسیدن bus] بوس
[bu.se] kiss
يو سيدن [bu.si.dan] to kiss (pres. stem:
      [bus]) بوس
bu kar.dan] [→ کن ~] to ابو کر دن
      smell; to sniff
له [be] to; also 'in' for languages
      (prep.)
[ba.hār] (season of) spring
[be.hesht] paradise
یه مذّت [be mod.da.t-e] for (temp.),
      for the duration of
be va.si.le-ye] by, by means of يه و سيلهٔ
يه هيچو جه [be hich-vajh] no way; not
```

[→ شو → [ba.lad sho.dan] بَلَد شدن ~]

to learn (how to do sth.)

```
[beh.tar] better
                                                سکار [bi-kār] jobless; having free
be on.vā.n-e] as] يه عنو ان
                                                سمار [bi.mār] sick (adj.); sick person,
[bi] without
                                                       patient (n.)
سان [ba.yān] statement, expression
                                                سمار ستان [bi.mā.res.tān] hospital
   کر دن \sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow \rightarrow \sim \sim 1 to
                                                cدیدن(bin) \rightarrow [bin] بین
      state, to express
                                                لينا [bi.nā] capable of seeing; not blind
حوصله [bi-how.se.le] see يبحو صله
                                                       (دىدن →)
از = bi-kha.bar] unaware [of = بي خبر
                                                [bi.nesh] insight بينش
      ignorant; not knowing or not
                                                [bi.ni] nose سني
      having heard (of/about)
                                                يائىدن (p\bar{a}] 1) ائىدن; 2) foot
بيختن [bikh.tan] [\rightarrow بيختن, biz] to sift
                                                [pār.ti] party (for amusement) يارتي
ينخو د [bi.khod] in vain; for no reason
      (col.)
                                                ا بار سال [pār.sāl] last year
يىدار [bi.dār] awake
                                                [ pārk ] بار ک
   c [~ sho.dan] [→ شدن ~] to
                                                يار و [p\bar{a}.ru] oar, paddle; snow shovel
      wake up (intr.)
                                                    زدن ~ [~ za.dan] [→ زن ~] to row
   دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~] to
                                                       or paddle
      wake up (tr.)
                                                    دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~] to
يبرون [bi.run] outside (adv.)
                                                       shovel the snow
   [bi.ru.n-e/bi.run az] بير و ن/بير و ن از
                                                یار و زنی [p\bar{a}.ru-za.ni] rowing
      outside (prep.)
                                                [pā.re] torn
   آور دن \sim [\sim \bar{a}.var.dan] \rightarrow [\sim \bar{a}.var.dan] to
                                                    دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~] to
      take off (clothes); to take out
   [~ رو → [~ raf.tan (az)] (از) ~ رفتن (از)
                                                [pā.sokh] answer (form.)
      to go out; to leave (a place)
                                                    (به) ~ دادن (به ~ [~ dā.dan (be)] (حده ~ ~]
\mu بيز[biz] \rightarrow 
                                                       to answer; to give an answer
[bist] twenty
                                                       (to) (form.)
[bish] more (lit./wrt.)
                                                یاشیدن \rightarrow [p\bar{a}sh] یاش
   [bish az] more بيش از
                                                ياش [p\bar{a}.shi.dan] ياش باش [p\bar{a}.shi.dan] ياش باش با
      than (form.)
                                                       strew; to sprinkle (causative:
                                                       (باشاندن
يشتر [bish.tar] more; mostly
                                                ا ياكستان [pā.kes.tān] Pakistan
   [~ -e] most of
                                                ياكستاني [pā.kes.tā.ni] Pakistani
[bi-sab.rā.ne] impatiently
                                                \forall l \ [p\bar{a}.l\bar{a}] \rightarrow J الله دن
      (صبر see)
يقرار [bi-gha.rār] restless; impatient
                                                يالا جن [p\bar{a}.lu.dan] [\rightarrow ] يالو دن p\bar{a}.la
                                                       to refine
   [~ -i] restlessness;
      impatience
                                                [pānz.dah] fifteen یانز ده
```

```
[pān.sad] five hundred یانصد
المان [pā.yān] end
   [be ~ ā.ma.dan] (به) بابان آمدن
      [\rightarrow \tilde{1} \sim] to end (intr.)
   [bi- ~] endless بي يايان
يائيدن [p\bar{a}.'i.dan] [\rightarrow يائيدن, p\bar{a}] to last;
      to watch or guard
يائيز /ياييز [pā.'iz] autumn
pokh.tan] [→ يَختن [pokh.tan] يُختن
      (tr./intr.)
   [pokht-o-paz] cooking يُخت و يَز
   [na.pokh.te] uncooked
[pe.dar] father پذر
[pe.dar-bo.zorg] grandfather
pe.da.r-o mā.dar] parents
pa.zir] پذیر فتر
يذيرش [pa.zi.resh] acceptance;
      consent; admission;
      reception
يذير\rightarrow [pa.zi.rof.tan] (\rightarrow يذيرpa.zir]
      to accept, to agree; to consent
      (form./wrt.)
يذير فتني [pa.zi.rof.ta.ni] acceptable
(از) پُر [por (az)] full (of); filled
      (with)
یر اکندن(pa.ra.kan)یر اکن
یر اکن [pa.r\bar{a}.kan.dan] یر اکندن
      pa.rā.kan] to scatter (lit.)
par.dākht] payment برداخت
ير داز[par.d\bar{a}kht] ير داز, [par.d\bar{a}z]
[par.d\bar{a}z] \rightarrow [par.d\bar{a}z]ير داز
y یر سیدن y [pors] y یر س
[por.sān-por.sān]: (while) يُر سان يُر سان
      asking many times (for
      directions)
```

```
یر ستیدن [pa.ras.ti.dan] [\rightarrow ستیدن,
      pa.rast] to worship
[por.sesh] question (form.) ير سش
[por.se.shi] interrogative یر سشی
[por.s-o-ju] inquiry يرس و جو
   دن \sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow > \sim \sim 1 to
      make a search or inquiry
[por.si.dan (az)] ير سيدن (از)
      [\rightarrow پُرس, pors] to ask a
      question (from)
[pa.ran.de] bird يَرَ نلاه
[par.vāz] flight يرواز
   کر دن \sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow \rightarrow \sim \sim 1 to fly
ير وانه [par.vā.ne] butterfly; also girl's
      name (Parvaneh)
[par.var] \rightarrow ير ور دن
يروردن [par.var.dan] [\rightarrow] يروردن, par.var]
      to cherish; to rear
يرويز [par.viz] Parviz (boy's name)
يروين [par.vin] Parvin (girl's name)
ير هيز [par.hiz] avoidance
   (از) ح دن (از) ~ [~ kar.dan
      [\rightarrow ; \leq \sim] to avoid
يرى [pa.ri] fairy; Pari (girl's name)
يريدن [pa.ri.dan] [\rightarrow y, par] to fly
      (not used for planes); to jump or
      leap (causative: يراندن)
يريروز [pa.ri.ruz] the day before
      vesterday
يُختن → [paz] يَز
[pe.zeshk] doctor يز شک
[pe.zesh.ki] medicine یز شکی
یژ مر دن [pazh.mor.dan] [\rightarrow] پژ مر دن,
      pazh.mor] to wither (causative:
       (یژمراندن
```

یر ست  $[pa.rast] \rightarrow$ ی ست

```
يس [pas] then (in conditional sentences);
                                               pu] \rightarrow يو ئيدن
      therefore; back or behind
                                               pust] skin بو ست
   [pas dā.dan (be)] يَس دادن (به)
                                               یو شیدن\rightarrow [push] یو ش
      [\rightarrow \ \sim] to give back (to),
                                               يوشيدن [pu.shi.dan] [\rightarrow يوشيدن, push] to
      to return (tr.)
                                                      wear; to cover (causative: يو شاندن)
   [pas fe.res.tā.dan] یس فر ستادن
                                               [pul] money يول
      ا to send back خرست →
                                               [pul.dar] wealthy يو لدار
   پس گرفتن [pas\ ge.ref.tan] [\rightarrow گیر \sim]
      to take back
                                               يو بان [pu.yān] Puyan; boy's name
                                               يو ئيدن [pu.'i.dan] [\rightarrow yu, pu] to run in
   [pas az] after (prep.) پس از
                                                      search of (lit.)
   یس فر دا [pas-far.d\bar{a}] the day after
                                               ياده [pi.yā.de] on foot
      tomorrow
                                                   [~ شبه → [~ sho.dan (az)] (از) مثبه ~[
[post] post
                                                      to get off (a vehicle, a horse, etc.)
   دن \sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow > \sim [\sim kar.dan] to mail
                                               ياز [pi.yāz] onion
[post.chi] mailperson پُستچي
                                               [pi.yā.no] piano يبانو
يسر [pe.sar] boy; son
                                               ييچ [pich] [\rightarrow ييچ turn; screw
يسر انه [pe.sa.rā.ne] boys', of boys
                                               پيچيدن [pi.chi.dan] [\rightarrow پيچ, pich]
تشت [posht-e] behind (prep.); at the
                                                      to turn or twist (causative:
      back of
                                                      (پېچاندن
شه [pa.she] mosquito
                                               ییدا کر دن [pey.dā kar.dan] [\rightarrow  کن \sim]
يشىمان [pa.shi.mān] regretful
   [pa.shi.mān sho.dan] ىشىمان شدن
                                               پر [pir] old (for animates only)
      [→ شو ~] to regret; to change
      one's mind
                                                   يبرزن [pir-zan] old woman
                                                   pir-mard] old man
   [pa.shi.mān kar.dan] يشيمان کر دن
      [\rightarrow : \geq \sim] to make so. regret or
                                               ييراهن [pi.rā.han] shirt (form.);
      change his mind
                                                      يير هن see
[po.lis] police بلس
                                               [pey.row] follower يير و
[panj] five پنج
                                               ييرهن [pir.han] shirt (more form.:
[pan.jāh] fifty بنجاه
                                                      (پېراهن
نجشنه [panj-sham.be] Thursday
                                               ييش [pish] past, last (as in 'last
[pen.d\bar{a}r] \rightarrow يندار
                                                      week') (adj.)
                                               [pi.sh-e] to or with a
يندار \rightarrow [pen.dāsh.tan] يندار بندار \rightarrow يندار pen.
      d\bar{a}r] to assume; to think (form.)
                                                      person (similar to chez in
                                                      French)
ينهان [pen.hān] hidden
                                               [pish az] before (prep.) پیش از
   [pen.hān kar.dan] پنهان کر دن
                                               [pish az ān-ke] before (conj.) ييش از آنکه
      [\rightarrow : \le \sim] to hide
[pa.nir] cheese پنير
                                               [pish-bi.ni] foresight ييش بيني
```

```
یشرفت [pish.raft] progress کردن [~ kar.dan] [→ کن ~] to make progress رفتن [pish raf.tan] [→ رو ~] to go forward, to advance [pish-row] forerunner, pioneer, progressive [pish.ra.vi] advance, moving forward (specially of troops)
```

iorward (specially of thoops)  $\sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow \sim$  to advance (as troops)

پیشنهاد [ $pish.na.h\bar{a}d$ ] suggestion پیشنهاد  $\sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow \sim \sim$  to suggest, to propose

[pey.ghām] message [pif] Eew! (interj.; used for bad smell)

 $[pey.m\bar{a}] \rightarrow$ پيما

پیمودن [pey.mu.dan] [ $\rightarrow$  پیمو دن to traverse; to measure

ييوست [ pey.vast] appendix; attachment

(به) **پیو**ند  $[pey.vas.tan\ (be)]$  **پیو**ند pey.vand to join

[pey.vas.te] connected; joined پيو سته ييو ستن → [pey.vand] ييو ند

ت [ $t\bar{a}$ ] until; as soon as; so long as

 $\[ [t\bar{a}] \]$  'item' as counting word (preferably for non-humans)

تافتن $t\bar{a}b$  تاب تافتن

تا به حال [tā be hāl] until now, so far

تابستان [tā.bes.tān] summer

تابستانی [tā.bes.tā.ní] summer's; of summer; summerly

تأثیر [ta'.sir] effect or influence; impression (pl. تأثیرات,  $ta'.si.r\bar{a}t$ )

 $(yoz, \sqrt{yo})$  مگذاشتن (بر /روي)  $\sim [-go.z\bar{a}sh.tan]$  to affect or influence; to impress

(از) مگرفتن  $\sim [\sim ge.ref.tan\ (az)]$  مگرفتن  $[\rightarrow]$  to be affected, influenced or impressed (by)

[tā.jik] Tajiki (of people) تاجيک

تاجيكى [tā.ji.ki] Tajiki (of people or language)

تاجيكستان [tā.ji.kes.tān] Tajikistan

تاختن [ $t\bar{a}kh.tan$ ] [ $\to$  تاخر,  $t\bar{a}z$ ] to assault; to rush (lit.)

تار [ $t\bar{a}r$ ] thread; string; a musical instrument

تارزن [tār-zan] tār-player تاريخ [tā.rikh] history; date (pl. تواريخ, ta.vā.rikh)

tā.ri.khi] historical تاريخي

*tā.rik*] dark تاریک

تاختن  $t\bar{a}z$ ] تاز

تازه [tā.ze] fresh (adj.); just (adv.)

بتازگی/به تازگی [be-tā.ze.gi] recently

تافتن [ $t\bar{a}f.tan$ ] [ $\to$  تاب  $t\bar{a}b$ ] to shine (tit.) (causative: تاباندن)

تا کر دن [ $t\bar{a}$  kar.dan] [ $\rightarrow$  کن  $\sim$ ] to fold  $^{-}$  تاشه

*[tāk.si*] taxi تاكسى

تأكيدات [ta'.kid] emphasis (pl. تأكيدات, ta'.ki.dāt)

[~ kar.dan] ~ کردن (روي/بَر)

[ o کن  $\sim$ ] to emphasize

ا تأکیدی [ta'.ki.di] emphatic

(4) تبدیل کر دن  $[tab.dil\ kar.dan\ (be)]$  تبدیل کر دن [-] to change (to) [tr.]; to alter; to convert (currencies) – for intr. use یافتن or [torm.] instead of [torm.]

```
[tab.rik] congratulation تبریک
                                                 ترانه [ta.rā.ne] song; also girl's name
      ( pl. تبریکات , tab.ri.kāt )
                                                        (Taraneh)
   [~ gof.tan (be)] م گفتن (په)
                                                 تر او یدن[ta.rar{a}v] \rightarrow [ta.rar{a}v]
       [\rightarrow گو \sim] to congratulate
                                                 تر او یدن [ta.r\bar{a}.vi.dan] \rightarrow [ta.r\bar{a}v]
[ta.ba.'i] subordinate (gr.) تىعى
                                                       to trickle; to ooze (lit.)
[tap] \rightarrow تييدن
                                                 تر تیب [tar.tib] order; arrangement
[tap.pe] hill تته
                                                    [tar.ti.bi dā.dan] تر تيبي دادن
                                                       ا ده حا ا ده حا ا حاد ا
تيدن [ta.pi.dan] [\rightarrow ; tap] to beat;
                                                        arrangement; to arrange
       to pulsate
                                                 [tar.jo.me] translation ترجمه
[tah.t-e] under; beneath (prep.)
                                                    دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~] to
   e . . . قرار گرفتن [~ -e . . . gha.rār
      ge.ref.tan] [\rightarrow \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ ] to undergo;
                                                        translate
       to become the object of; to be
                                                 [tar.jih] preference
       subjected to
                                                    (به/بر) ~ دادن (سه/بر ~ [~ dā.dan (be/bar)]
[tah.sin] praise; admiration; تحسين
                                                        [\rightarrow \iota \circ \sim] to prefer (to) ( ب in
       applause
                                                       form./wrt.)
   دن \sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow > \sim [\sim kar.dan] to
                                                 [tar.did] doubt تر دىد
       admire; to praise; to applaud
                                                    (در) ~ داشتن (در) ~ [~ dāsh.tan
[tah.sil] education (pl. always
                                                       [\rightarrow] دار \sim to doubt; to have
       (tah.si.lāt , تحصيلات
                                                       doubts (in)
تحقيق [tah.ghigh] research; investigation
                                                 fear [تر سیدن → [tars] تر س
       (pl. تحقیقات , tah.ghi.ghāt)
                                                 تر سان [tar.sān] fearing
   دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~] to
                                                 تر سناک [tars.nāk] frightening
      investigate
                                                 [tar.si.dan (az)] ټر سیدن (از)
[takht] bed
                                                       [\rightarrow ترس, tars] to be afraid (of);
تخته [takh.te] board, plank, piece of
                                                        to fear (causative: ترساندن)
       flat wood
                                                 sour [تر شيدن → [torsh] تر ش
تخته سیاه [takh.te si.yāh] blackboard
                                                 تر شیدن [tor.shi.dan] [\rightarrow تر شیدن, torsh] to
[takh.fif] discount
                                                       become sour
[tokh.m-e morgh] egg
                                                 z \in [tark] \rightarrow تر ک
[tad.ris] teaching تدريس
                                                 ترک کر دن [tark kar.dan] [\rightarrow کن \sim] to
   c [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~] to
                                                        leave a place (object always
      teach (a subject) (form.)
                                                        definite)
\ddot{z} [tar] wet (adj.); also: comparative suffix
                                                 تر کیدن [tar.ki.dan] [\rightarrow \zeta تر کیدن, tark]
                                                        to explode (causative:
تراشیدن\rightarrow [ta.r\bar{a}sh] تراش
                                                        (تر کاندن
[ta.rā.shan.de] carver تراشنده
                                                 [term] term, semester ترم
,تراش → [ta.rā.shi.dan] تراشیدن
       ta.rāsh] to carve, to whittle
                                                 te.ri.bun] podium; lectern تريبون
```

```
[tash.khis] recognition; تشخيص
      distinction; diagnosis
   دادن \sim [\sim d\bar{a}.dan] (\rightarrow \sim \sim) to
      distinguish; to discern
تشریف [tash.rif] honor; honoring (pl.
      تشریفات, tash.ri.fāt = formalities)
      (for its usage in polite language
      see Appendix I)
[tesh.ne] thirsty تشنه
[tash.vigh] encouragement تشويق
   دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~ ] to
      encourage; to applaud
[tas.fi.ye] purification تصفیه
   دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~] to
      purify; to refine; to purge
[tas.mim] decision (pl.
      تصميمات, tas.mi.māt)
   co اشتر: ~ [~ dāsh.tan] (→ دار حار ~ ا
      intend; to have the intention
      (to ...)
   گير \sim [~ ge.ref.tan] [\rightarrow گير \sim] to
      decide; to make up one's mind
[ta.sav.vor] assumption; تصوّر
      imagination (pl. تصورات,
      ta.sav.vo.rāt)
   دن \sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow \geq \sim [\sim kar.dan] to
      assume or imagine
يب [tas.vib] approval; ratification
   دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~] to
      ratify; to approve
[ta.'ā.rof, in col. also tā.rof] تعار ف
      pleasantries exchanged to
      show politeness (pl. تعارفات,
      ta.'ā.ro.fāt)
ta.'aj.job] astonishment تعجّب
   کر دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~] to be
      surprised
te'.dād] number تعداد
   ازی از [te'.dā.di az] a number of
```

```
[ta'.til] closed (a store or office);
       a holiday ( pl. تعطيلات, ta'.ti.lāt =
       vacations)
[ta'.lim] instruction; education
      ( pl. تعليمات, ta'.li.māt)
[ta'.mir] repair, fixing
   c [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~ ] to
       repair, to fix
تغيير ات [tagh.yir] change (pl. تغيير
       tagh, vi, rāt)
   دادن \sim [\sim d\bar{a}.dan] [\rightarrow \sim \sim] to change
   [~ kar.dan/yāf.tan] کے دن/بافتین
      [\rightarrow \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ ] to change (intr.)
      ( more form. افتن )
ta.fā.vot] difference تفاوت
   (با) ماشتن (سا ~ [~ dāsh.tan
      [\rightarrow \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ ] to be different (from)
[ta.ghā.zā] demand; request
   دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~] to
      demand: to request
تقرسا [tagh.ri.ban] almost;
       approximately
تكليف ta.kā.lif] pl. of تكاليف
تکان [ta.k\bar{a}n] تکان shake; jolt;
      budging
   c (دن ~ (- khor.dan (→ خوردن ~ - [~ khor.dan
      shake, budge or move (intr.)
   دادن \sim [\sim d\bar{a}.dan] \rightarrow \sim [\sim d\bar{a}.dan] to
      shake, move or rock (tr.)
تكاندن [ta.kān.dan] [\rightarrow تكاندن, ta.kān] to
      cause to shake
[tek.rār] repetition
   [tek.rār kar.dan] تکرار کردن
      [\rightarrow : \leq \sim] to repeat
[tak.lif] homework, assignment تكلف
      (pl. تكاليف, ta.kā.lif)
تكميل [tak.mil] making complete;
      supplementing; finishing
```

```
[tek.ye] stress; emphasis; leaning
                                                     تن * کر دن [tan* kar.dan] to wear or
                                                         put on (col.) [\rightarrow : \leq \sim]
   (به) حادن /ک دن ~ [~ dā.dan/kar.dan
       (be)] [\rightarrow : \leq \sim \to \sim] to lean
                                                     [be/bar tan dāsh.tan] به/بر تن داشتن
       (against)
                                                         [\rightarrow] دار \sim to be wearing
                                                         (clothes) (form.)
   (بر /روى) ~ کر دن (بر /روى) ~ [~ kar.dan
       (bar/ru.ye)] [\rightarrow : \leq \sim] to put
                                                     [be/bar tan kar.dan] به/بر تن کردن
                                                        [\rightarrow \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ ] to put on (clothes)
       emphasis (on); to emphasize
                                                         (form.)
ta.lāsh] effort تلاش
                                                 [ton.bak (col.: tom-)] a small
   کر دن \sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow \rightarrow \sim \sim 1 to
                                                         drum common in Iran; also
       make an effort; to attempt; to
                                                         [zarb] ضرب called
       try [کن \leftrightarrow کر دن]
                                                 [tan.bal] lazy
[talkh] bitter
                                                 تند [tond] fast (adj./adv.); abrupt; spicy
تلف کر دن [ta.laf kar.dan] [\rightarrow \ \ \ \sim \ ] to
                                                         and hot (taste)
       waste (tr.)
                                                 tang] tight] تنگ
[te.le.fon] telephone تلفن
                                                 تنها [tan.hā] only; alone
[te.le.fon za.dan/kar.dan] تلفن ز دن/کر دن
      [\rightarrow \dot{}زن/\sim] to telephone,
                                                     [... bal.ke . . .] نه تنها . . . لکه
                                                        not only ... but also ...
                                                 [tan.hā.'i] solitude تنهائي
te.le.fo.ni] per phone تلفني
                                                 [to] you (sg.) تو
تلويزيون [te.le.vi.zi.yon] television
                                                 تاریخ [ta.vā.rikh] pl. of تواریخ
[ta.mā.shā kar.dan] تماشا کے دن
       [\rightarrow : \leq \sim] to watch
                                                 توان توانستن ta.van] توان
تمام [ta.mām] whole, complete; full;
                                                 تو انا [ta.vā.nā] capable; mighty
       finished
                                                 تو انستن [ta.vā.nes.tan] [\rightarrow تو انستن , ta.vān]
   [~ -e] all of
                                                        can, to be able to
   [~ شو → ] [~ sho.dan] تمام شدنَ
                                                 [tup] ball تو ب
       to get finished
                                                     يوپبازى [tup-bā.zi] children's play
   تمام کردن [\sim kar.dan] [\rightarrow \sim
      to finish (tr.)
                                                 [ta.vaj.joh] attention تو حّه
[tam.rin] exercise تمرين
                                                     (په) کې دن (سه ~ [~ kar.dan (be)]
[ta.miz] clean
                                                        [\rightarrow : \leq \sim] to notice; to pay
                                                         attention (to)
   حردن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کن ~] to
                                                 [tu.rist] تو ریست
[tan] counting word for people
                                                 [ta.vas.sot-e] by (means of), تو سّط
       (form. in this sense)
                                                         through (the mediation of)
                                                  [tow.si.ye] recommendation تو صیه
[tan] body ترن
   tan* bu.dan] to be تن * بو دن
                                                     (به) کر دن (سه ~ [~ kar.dan (be)]
       wearing (col.) [\rightarrow باش \sim]
                                                        [\rightarrow \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ ] to recommend
```

```
[tow.zih] explanation
   [tow.zih dā.dan] توضيح دادن
      [→ ده ~] to explain
[tow.figh] تو فيق
   [~ yāf.tan/dāsh.tan] ميافتن /داشتن
      [\rightarrow اب /دار\sim] to find/have
      success, to succeed; to be lucky
      enough to
[ta.vagh.gho'] expectation توقّع
   [ - دار → [ ~ dāsh.tan ] حار ~ [
      to expect
ta.vagh.ghof] stop, halt تو قُف
   دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کن ~] to
      stop (intr.), to make a stop
[ta.val.lod] birth تو لد
يو مان [tu.mān] tuman or toman, a
      currency unit (= 10 Iranian rials)
tow.hin] insult تو هين
   (به) کر دن (من (سه) ~ [~ kar.dan (be)]
      [\rightarrow : \leq \sim] to insult
[tu-ye] in; inside (col.) تو ي
[sā.le.san] thirdly ثالثاً
[sā.ni.yan] secondly ثانياً
[sā.ni.ye] second (1/60th of a minute) ثانيه
[ser.vat] شروَت
[ser.vat.mand] wealthy ثرو تمند
[sols] one-third (used especially) ثلث
      for quarters/terms in academic
      year - excluding summer)
اج [j\bar{a}] place
   (به) جاي ((be) jā.ye] in place
      of; instead of
إراك [jā.leb] financial
jā.me.'e] society جامعه
jā.me. 'e-she.nās] sociologist حامعه شناس
[jā.me.'e -she.nā.si] جامعه شناسي
      sociology
```

```
ان [jān] life (as opposed to death)
حانب [jā.neb] side, direction (pl.
       بجو انب, ja.vā.neb)
   از جانب [az \sim -e] by, through, from
جايزه [jā.ye.ze] award (pl. جوايز, javāyez)
jo.da separate حدا
   (از) مثلان (از) ~ [~ sho.dan (az)] to be
      separated (from); to be divorced
ja.did] new حديد
jor.'at] courage (often written) جرأت
      as ج, ئت, same pronunciation)
   [~ kar.dan/dāsh.tan] کر دن/داشتن
      [\rightarrow \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ ] to dare; to have the
      courage [دار \leftarrow داشتن /کن \rightarrow کر دن
[form] crime; misdeed جُر م
جر أت jor.'at] see جر ئت
جز (به/ب) [(be) joz] except; other than
      (prep.)
   عز اینکه [~ in ke] except that (conj.)
[ios.to.ju] search حستحه
   c [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~ ] to
      search or look for
جستن [jas.tan] [\rightarrow جستن, jah] to leap; to
جستن [jos.tan] [\rightarrow جستن, ju] to seek; to
      [search for sth. and] find (form.)
above جستجو jos.t-o-ju] see جست و جو
jashn] celebration جشن
   c] to گبر → [~ ge.ref.tan] (ح گبر ح)
   [~ -e ta.val.lod] birthday
      party (lit. 'celebration of
      birth[day]')
ioft] pair حُفت
   yek ~] a pair of ک جُفت
جلد [jeld] volume (counting word for
      books)
```

[ja.la.se] session; meeting  $\sim$  [jah]  $\rightarrow$  خستن (pl. جلسات, ja.la.sāt) ja.hān] world حهان je.low] front; ahead جلو *ja.hā.ni*] of the world; je.lo.w-e] in front of international جمهوري  $[ja.m\bar{a}.hir]$  pl. of جماهير [ja.hat] reason; direction jam'] plural (gr.) جَمع *be* ~ -e] because of به جهت iom.'e] Friday حمعه c جهت [dar ~ -e] in direction of [jom.le] sentence (gr.) (pl. [ja.han.nam] hell , jo.me.lāt/jo.ma.lāt) حملات jib] pocket جيب [jom.le-ye mow.su.li] جملة موصولي  $= [ch\bar{a}p] \ 1) \rightarrow$  يحاييدن; relative clause (gr.) 2) publication جمهوري [jom.hu.ri] republic (pl. دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کن ~] to (ja.mā.hir, جماهير publish = جنب [jonb] جنب چاييدن [chā.pi.dan] [ $\rightarrow$  حاييد, chāp] to جنب [jon.bi.dan] [ $\rightarrow$  جنبیدن, jonb] to plunder move; to wiggle; to hurry إدره [chā.re] remedy; cure; solution; (causative: حناندن) resort; alternative; choice  $[jang] \rightarrow نگدن (gang)$  war پذیر ~ [~ pa.zir] remediable jan.g-e ja.hā.ni] World ونگ جهانی رچایی or چائی or چایی, chāy] tea chā'i) [jan.gal] forest; woods; jungle  $= [chap] \ 1) \rightarrow يحييد; 2)$  left ا منگدن [jan.gi.dan]  $\rightarrow$  حنگدن, jang] to چپيدن [cha.pi.dan]  $[\rightarrow \downarrow \downarrow \downarrow, chap]$  to fight crowd into (causative: حياندن) jo.nub] south جنو ب  $= [char] \rightarrow يحر يدن$ چر [che.rā] yes (use only to contradict ja.vāb] answer جو اب negative statements/questions; [ja.vāb dā.dan (be)] جو اب دادن (به) stress on ché-)  $[\rightarrow$  ده  $\sim$ ] to answer; to give an  $!! = [ch\acute{e}.r\bar{a}]$  why? (stress on ché-) answer (to) *ché.rā ke*] because چرا که ja.vān] young حوان *[che.rāgh]* light, lamp = انب  $[ja.v\bar{a}.neb]$  = جو انب  $\neq$ رخ [charkh] [ $\rightarrow$  پرخ wheel ja.vā.ni] youth جو اني = [char.khi.dan] چرخ خیدن = [  $ja.v\bar{a}.yez$ ] pl. of جابزه charkh] to turn (around); to ju.je] chicken جو جه revolve (causative: چر خاندن) چریدن [cha.ri.dan]  $[\rightarrow$  چریدن, char] to = جو شیدن= [jush] جو ش graze (causative: چراندن) جو شيدن [ju.shi.dan] [ $\rightarrow$  جو شيدن, jush] to  $= [chasb] [ \rightarrow ]$  يحسب glue boil (intr.) (causative: حو شاندن)

```
[chas.bi.dan] [\rightarrow _{}  يسبيدن [chas.bi.dan]
      to stick; to adhere (causative:
      (چساندن
 = [chesh] \rightarrow چشیدن
يشم [cheshm] eye (pl. with both -hā
      and -\bar{a}n)
چشیدن [che.shi.dan] [\rightarrowر چشر, chesh] to
      taste (causative: چشاندن)
[che-towr] how چطو ر
[che-ghadr] how much (stress
      on ché-)
 = [chek] \rightarrow چکىدن
چکار (or چهکار) [che-kār] used to
      ask what someone is doing
      (کار کردن see)
چکّه [chek.ke] drop (n.)
   [~ کن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن
      to fall in drops, to trickle,
      to leak
چکيدن [che.ki.dan] [\rightarrow \zetaچ, chek] to
      trickle (causative: چکاندن)
[che-gu.ne] how (form./wrt.) چگو نه
[che.l\bar{a}n.dan] [\rightarrow يحلاندن , che.l\bar{a}n]
      to squeeze; to wring
[che.low] cooked rice
يلو كياب [che.low-ka.bāb] a Persian
      dish: rice and kabab
= [cham] \rightarrow چمیدن
/- cham. حماتمه (اچناتمه) زدن
      chan.b\bar{a}t.me\ za.dan] [\rightarrow ; \sim]
      to squat
[cha.me.dān] suitcase
[cha.mi.dan] [\rightarrow چمیدن [cha.mi.dan]
      to strut (poet.)
[che.nān] so; such; in such a way
   as; the way [~ ke] عنانکه/چنان که
      that
```

```
[chand] 1) several; 2) how many?
   chand bār] 1) several حند بار
      times; 2) how many times?
   يند ساله [chand sā.le] how old?
   [chand vaght] 1) for some
     time; 2) for how long?
   [chan.dom] (question about چندم؟
      ordinal numbers)
[chan.dan] so, so much, so many چندان
      (poet.); that much (col.)
[chan.din] several; more than
     iust a few
[che.nin] such چنين
[chon] because (conj.) چون
يون [chon] similar to, like (lit.)
[che] what
[che . . . che . . .] چه . . . چه
     whether ... or ...
[ - باش → [che* bu.dan] چه* بو دن ~
     What's wrong with ...? (col.)
چکار che-kār] see چهکار
[che vaght] what time? when? عه وقت
[cha.hār] four] چهار
[cha.hār.dah] fourteen
[cha.hār-sham.be] Wednesday چهارشنبه
[cha.hār.sad] four hundred
[che.hel] forty چهل
چه [chi] what (col. of) چی
[chiz] thing چيز
[hā.zer] ready حاضر
[hā.fez] Hafez or Hafiz (poet, ca.
      1326-89)
[hāfeze] memory
حال [h\bar{a}l] state (of being); presently;
      (زمان حال present (see also)
   در حال [dar hā.l-e] during (prep.); while
   edar hā.li-ke] while در حاليكه
```

(conj.), as; whereas

كالا [ $h\bar{a}.l\bar{a}$ ] now حالت [ $h\bar{a}.lat$ ] state: mood (pl. حالات. [habs] imprisonment کر دن  $\sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow \rightarrow \sim \sim 1$  to imprison حتّے [hat.tā] see حتّا [hat.man] certainly حتماً [hat.ta] even (adv.) (sometimes (حتّا spelled [hadd] limit; extent از حد ز حد ز از حد [zi.vā.de az ~] too much مدس [hads] guess ندن ; ~ [~ za.dan] [→ زن ~] to guess [hazf] deletion حذف دن  $\sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow > \sim [\sim kar.dan]$  to delete أ خَ ف [harf] talk; words (= what someone says) (ل) دن  $\sim [\sim za.dan (b\bar{a})] [\rightarrow ; \sim]$ to talk (to/with) يُر حَرِ ف [por-~] gabby; talkative <sup>2</sup> ف [harf] letter of alphabet (gr.; pl. څروف horuf) ج ف اضافه [har.f-e e.zā.fe] preposition ج ف ربط [har.f-e rabt] conjunction (gr.) حَرِ ف [ho.ruf] pl. of حُروف احسز [ha.san] Hasan (also written Hassan); boy's name [hefz] preservation; protection; حفظ memorization دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کر ~] to preserve; to protect /az ~ kar.dan (از) حفظ کر دن/شدن sho.dan] [ $\rightarrow$  کن/شو ح] to memorize /az) ~ bu.dan] (از) حفظ بو دن/داشتن  $d\bar{a}sh.tan$ ] [ $\rightarrow$  باش /دار  $\sim$ ] to have in memory (what you memorized)

حقّ [haghgh] right (n.) ( pl. حقّ, ho.ghugh) دار → [~ dāsh.tan] [→ داشتن ~] to have the right; to be right ية الموقى [ho.ghugh] salary; rights ( pl. (حقّ of [ho.ghu.gh-e ba.shar] حقو ق بشر human rights [ha.ghir] lowly; humble; petty حكايات *[he.kā.yāt] pl.* of حكايات مکایت [he.kā.yat] story; tale (pl. حكايات, hekāyāt) ا حلوا [hal.vā] halva; kind of sweet Persian confection [ham.mām] bath [ham.le] attack (به) ~ كر دن (به ~ [~ kar.dan] ( كر دن (به ) [how.se.le] patience; حوصله forbearance ابى حوصله [bi ~] impatient; in a bad [ha.yāt] life (form.) [ha.yā.ti] vital حياتي [ha.vāt] vard حياط [hey.rat] surprise حب ت کر دن  $\sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow > \sim [\sim kar.dan]$  to be amazed [hey.rat-an.giz] حير تانگيز astonishing حيوان [hey. $v\bar{a}n$ ] animal (pl. حيوان hev.vā.nāt) خار دن  $[kh\bar{a}r]$  خار دان خار دار خارجي [khā.re.ji] external; foreign (adj.); foreigner (n.)خاریدن [khā.ri.dan] ( $\rightarrow$  خاریدن, khār] to itch; to scratch (causative: (خار اندن

```
خاستن [khās.tan] [\rightarrow خيخ, khiz] to rise
      (usually with prefix , bar)
[khā.ter] mind خاطر
   به خاطر /بخاطر [be- \sim -e] for the sake of
   [be ~ ā.var.dan] به خاطر آوردن
      [\rightarrow, ] ~] to remember
   [az ~ bor.dan] از خاط بُر دن
      [→ بَر ~] to forget
   [~ رو → [az ~ raf.tan] از خاطر رفتن
      to be forgotten
   [(be) ~* ā.ma.dan] (يه) خاط * آمدن
      [\rightarrow \tilde{1} \sim] to remember
   [~ باش → [~* bu.dan] (→ باش ~]
      to remember
   (از) خاطر * رفتن [(az) ~* raf.tan]
      [\rightarrow 9, \sim] to forget
[khā.me.san] fifthly خامساً
خامو ش [khā.mush] extinguished; off
      (≠ 'on'): silent
   دن ~ [→ کر دن ~ ] to turn off;
      to extinguish; to silence
[khā.nom] Mrs. or Miss, lady خانُم
      (pl. only with -h\bar{a})
[khā.ne.vā.de] خانو اده
[khā.ne] house خانه
[khā.ne.dar] housewife خانه دار
نحبر [kha.bar] news (countable in
      Persian; pl. also اخبار, akh.bār)
   (از) با خبر بو دن [bā ~ bu.dan (az)]
      [	o باش \sim] to know (about/of/
      from)
   [~ dā.dan (be)] خبر دادن (به)
      [\rightarrow ده \sim] to let know, to inform
   [~ dāsh.tan (az)] خبر داشتن (از)
      [\rightarrow] to know (about) (no
      mi- in pres. and progressive tenses)
```

(با) خبر کر دن  $[(b\bar{a}) \sim kar.dan]$ 

 $[\rightarrow \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ ]$  to let know, to inform

```
خحالت [khe.jā.lat] embarrassment;
      humiliation: shame
   (از) م کشیدن (از) ~ [~ ke.shi.dan (az)]
      [\rightarrow کش \sim] to be embarrassed
      (about) or feel ashamed (of)
[khe.jā.lat-ā.var] خجالت آور
      embarrassing
خجالتي [khe.jā.la.ti] shy, bashful, coy
kho.dā] god خدا
خدا حافظ [kho.dā hā.fez] good-bye;
      adieu (lit., 'may God protect
خداحافظي [kho.dā hā.fe.zi] farewell;
      goodbye; leave-taking
   (یا) کې [\sim kar.dan (b\bar{a})] [\rightarrow \ \ \sim \ ]
      to say goodbye (to)
[kho.da.ya] O God! خدايا
خدمت [khed.mat] service (pl. خدمت,
      kha.da.māt) (for its usage in
      polite language see Appendix I)
a stupid person; stupid
نج اب [kha.rāb] broken [down]; not
      functioning; in ruins
خراش [+] scratch خراش [+]
,خراش → [kha.rā.shi.dan] خراشيدن
      kha.rāsh] to scratch (causative:
      (خراشاندن
خرام \leftarrow [kha.rā.mi.dan] \rightarrow اخرام
      kh.rām] to strut (poet.)
[khar.bo.ze] melon خربزه
خرج کردن [kharj kar.dan] [\rightarrow کن \sim] to
      spend (money)
khers] bear خرس
خُر ما [khor.m\bar{a}] date (fruit of date
      palm)
```

[kha.bar.sāz] newsmaking خبر ساز

خروش (kho.rush]  $[\rightarrow$  وشيدن  $[\leftarrow]$ *kha.mir*] paste; dough خمبر uproar خمى دندان [kha.mir dan.dan] toothpaste خروشیدن [kho.ru.shi.dan]  $\rightarrow$ خند [khand]  $\rightarrow$  خند kho.ru.sh] to clamour (lit.) خندان [khan.dān] laughing (from خنديدن) خرید [kha.rid] shopping; purchase خند بدن [khan.di.dan]  $\rightarrow$  خند بدن khand] دن  $\sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow > \sim [\sim kar.dan]$  to to laugh (causative: خنداندن) shop, to do shopping khan.de] laughter خنده ندار [kha.ri.dār] purchaser دن ~ [~ kar.dan] to laugh خ بداري [kha.ri.dā.ri] purchase کنان ~ [~ ko.nān] (while) laughing دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کر ~] to [~\* ge.ref.tan] خنده \* گرفتن nurchase to have to laugh ~ گہ خآ خ بدن [kha.ri.dan] [→ خ, khar] to  $[+ i \rightarrow [kh\bar{a}b]] \rightarrow [+ i \rightarrow [kh\bar{a}b]]$  خواب sleep (n.); asleep (adi.)خ: ىدن → [khaz] خ آمدن  $*\sim [\sim * \bar{a}.ma.dan] \rightarrow [\sim ]$  to خ; بدن [kha.zi.dan] [→ خ; بدن feel/get sleepy crawl (causative: خزاندن) ار دن \*~ [~\* bor.dan] (→ بُر دن \* ما to خستن [khas.tan] [only past tense] to wound (obsolete) خو اب آور  $[kh\bar{a}b$ - $\bar{a}.var]$  sedative khas.te] tired; bored خسته خوابيدن  $[kh\bar{a}.bi.dan]$   $[\rightarrow \cup , kh\bar{a}b]$ کننده ~ [~ -ko.nan.de] tiring; boring to sleep; to go to bed (causative: [khoshk] dry خشک (خواباندن/خوابانيدن [khatt] handwriting; line (on a [khāst] wish خواست page or in geometry) [khās.tār] one who wants; خواستار khat.ti] handwritten خطی desirous [kha.tar] danger [khāst.gār or khās.te.gār] خو استگار [kha.tar.nāk] dangerous خطرناک خواستن [khās.tan] [ $\rightarrow$  امخواستن, khāh] to خواب [khof.tan] خواب  $kh\bar{a}b$ ] to want sleep (lit.; see خواسدن) (که) to ask (so. to) (از کسی) خواستن [khalgh] creation خلق [khāstani] desirable خواستني دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کر ~] to خواندن  $\rightarrow [kh\bar{a}n]$  خوان create [khā.nā] legible خوانا [kha.lij] gulf خليج خو اندن  $[kh\bar{a}n.dan] \rightarrow kh\bar{a}n$  to خم [kham]  $[\rightarrow$  خمیدن, kham] bent; read; to study (tr.); to sing; to call نحواندني [khān.da.ni] readable; worth خمس [khoms] one-fifth; religious tax reading in Islam [khā.nan.de] reader, singer خو اننده خميدن [kha.mi.dan] [ $\rightarrow$  خميدن, kham] to خواستن $\rightarrow [kh\bar{a}h]$  خواه bend (causative: خماندن)

```
\ldots خواه \ldots خواه \ldots whether \ldots or \ldots whether \ldots or \ldots [kh\bar{a}.h\bar{a}n] one who wants;
```

خواهان [kha.han] one who wants; desirous

*khā.har*] sister] خواهَر

خواهر برادر or خواهر برادر ba.rā.dar or khā.ha.r-o ba.rā.dar] siblings

خواهش [khā.hesh] request (n.) خواهش [ $\sim \lambda : [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow \lambda : \sim ]$  to

ردن  $\sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow \subset \sim ]$  request

illy-nilly; خواه ناخواه (khāh nā-khāh) willy-nilly; no matter what

خواهى نخواهى [khā.hi na.khā.hi] willy-nilly

khub] good خوب

khod] self; one's own خود

خودت [kho.dat] yourself; your own (sg.)

خودتان  $[kho.de.t\bar{a}n]$  yourselves; your own (pl.)

خودش (kho.dash) himself/herself/ itself; his/her/its own

خودشان  $[kho.de.sh\bar{a}n]$  themselves; their own

خودم [kho.dam] myself; my own خودمان [kho.de.mān] ourselves; our own

خودخواه [khod-khāh] selfish; egocentric

خودکشی [khod.ko.shi] suicide  $\sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow \sim \sim ]$  to commit suicide

خوردن $(khor) \rightarrow [khor]$  خور

نوردن [khor.dan] [→ خوردن, khor] to eat (also 'to drink' in colloquial Persian) (causative: خورانيدن) خوشبخت [khosh.bakht] fortunate; happy (in life); lucky

ز (khosh.bakh.tā.ne خو شبختانه fortunately; luckily

خو شبختی [khosh.bakh.ti] happiness (in life)

خوشبو [khosh.bu] fragrant; sweet-smelling

خوشبين [khosh.bin] optimist (from خوش ديدن)

*khosh.bi.ni*] optimism خو شبینی [*khosh.hāl*] happy, glad

ن مشدن ~ [~ *sho.dan*] [→ شدن ~] to become happy

کر دن  $\sim [\sim kar.dan] [\rightarrow$ کن  $\sim ]$  to make happy

ينحالى (khosh.hā.li) delight; cheerfulness

خوشگل (khosh.gel) pretty; cute خوشمزه [khosh-ma.ze] delicious, tasty خوشنویسی [khosh-ne.vi.si] calligraphy خو (khun) blood

خونخوار [khun-khār] bloodthirsty; bloodsucker

يش [khish] self; one's own [form./ lit.]

زيشتن [khish.tan] self; one's own [form./lit.]

خيابان [khi.yā.bān] street خياط [khay.yāt] tailor

```
[dā.nesh-ā.muz] student of دانش آمو ز
[khay.yā.ti] sewing; the tailor's
   کن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کی ~] to sew
                                                         elementary or high school
خيال [khi. yāl] imagination, fancy
                                                  الشجو [dā.nesh.ju] a college/university
                                                         student
   دار → [~ dāsh.tan] (→ دار حار ~] to
                                                  ا دانشکده [dā.nesh.ka.de] faculty
                                                  ا دانشگاه [dā.nesh.gāh] university
   دن \sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow \geq \sim [\sim kar.dan] to
      imagine, to suppose
                                                  [dā.nesh.mand] scientist
[kheyr] no (polite/form.) خير
                                                  دانه [d\bar{a}.ne] 'item' as counting word for
[khi.re sho.dan (be)] خبره شدن (به)
                                                         inanimates
       [\rightarrow شبو \sim] to stare (at)
                                                  [da.bes.tān] elementary school
خاستن \rightarrow [khiz] \rightarrow خيز
                                                  [da.bi.res.tān] high school دير ستان
khis] wet خيس
                                                  أدُختَر [dokh.tar] girl; daughter
خىساندن \leftarrow [khi.s\bar{a}n] خىسان
                                                  دخترانه [dokh.ta.rā.ne] girls', of girls
خيساندن [khi.sān.dan] [\rightarrow خيساندن, khis]
                                                  در [dar](1) \rightarrow (cdar)(1) (prep.) در عدن (dar) در عدن (dar) در
                                                  (از از de.rāz] long
خىلى [khey.li] (stress on khéy-) very;
                                                     [~ کش ~ [~ ke-shi.dan] [→ کشیدن
       a lot (of. il)
                                                         to lie down
[dā.khe.l-e] in; inside (form.) داخل
                                                  در آوردن [dar-ā.var.dan] [\rightarrow , وآ\sim] to
[dā.khe.li] internal داخلي
                                                         take off (clothes)
دادن [dā.dan] [\rightarrow دادن, deh] to give
                                                  [dar.bā.re-ye] about (prep.) دربارهٔ
داشتن d\bar{a}r دار
                                                  [da.re.je/da.ra.je] degree, grade;
                                                         rank: thermometer
دارا [d\bar{a}.r\bar{a}] (عارا عادرا معنا) دارا (طرقات عادرا عنارا المعنا) دارا (طرقات عنارا المعنا) دارا
       name
                                                  در خت [de.rakht] tree (pl. with both
                                                         -h\bar{a} and -\bar{a}n)
داراي [dā.rā.ye] having; outfitted with
                                                  c \leftarrow ide.rakhsh در خش در خشیدن
دارو [d\bar{a}.ru] medication; drug
                                                  در خش (de.rakh.shi.dan] [→ در خشیدن
[dās.tān] story داستان
                                                         de.rakhsh] to shine
دار [d\bar{a}sh.tan] دار راد [d\bar{a}sh.tan] دار دار دار دانتن
                                                  درخور [dar.khor] suitable; appropriate
       (no mi- in pres. and progressive
       tenses)
                                                     درخور [\sim -e] befitting; worthy of
[dāgh] hot (≠ cold) داغ
                                                  (ard] pain (n.) در د
دان [d\bar{a}n] \rightarrow [d\bar{a}n] دان
                                                     دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کن ~] to
                                                         ache, to feel pain
[dā.man] skirt دامن
                                                     [sar* ~ kar.dan] سر * در د کر دن
لانا [dā.nā] wise
                                                        [\rightarrow : \leq \sim] to have a headache
دان (d\bar{a}.nes.tan] دان ران (d\bar{a}.nes.tan) دان
                                                 [dar.d-e sar] trouble درد سَر
       know (something, not someone:
                                                  [dar.d-ā.var] causing pain درداَور
       (شناختن see)
دانش [dā.nesh] knowledge
                                                  در دناک [dard.nāk] painful
```

```
[dars] lesson در س
   خوان \sim [\sim kh\bar{a}n.dan] \rightarrow \sim [\sim kh\bar{a}n.dan]
      to study (intr.)
   (به) ~ [~ dā.dan (be)] (حده ~ ]
      to teach (sth. to so.)
correct; fixed] در ست
   c [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~] to
      correct; to fix; to do or make (as
      doing hair, cooking food)
   مثل ~ [~ mes.l-e] exactly like
درستی [do.ros.ti] correctness; accuracy
[~ گذر →] [dar-go.zash.tan] در گذشتن
      to pass away
do.rugh] lie دروغ
   کفتر: \sim [\sim gof.tan] \rightarrow گفتر: to tell
do.rugh.gu] liar در و غگه
درون [da.ru.n-e] in; inside (poet.)
در یا [dar.yā] sea
clar.yā.che] lake در باچه
در بافت [dar yāft] receiving, receipt;
      perception
   دن \sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow \sim \sim 1 to receive
در مافتر: [dar yāf.tan] [dar is a prefix
      here; يافتن \rightarrow يافتن to find out;
      to realize
در یدن [da.ri.dan] (حرdar] to tear
      (apart) (lit.)
[dozd] thief دزد
```

 $c: c \cup [dozd] \rightarrow c$  دز د

and  $-\bar{a}n$ )

steal

دزدیدن [doz.di.dan]  $[\rightarrow$  دزدیدن , dozd] to

دُست [dast] hand (pl. with both - $h\bar{a}$ 

to shake hands (with)

to touch; to undertake

(با) ده  $\sim [\sim d\bar{a}.dan\ (b\bar{a})] \rightarrow \sim [\sim d\bar{a}.dan\ (b\bar{a})]$ 

(به) ~ [~ za.dan (be)] [→ زدن (به)

```
[dast.shu.'i] lavatory; toilet دستشو ئي
       (دست شستر: from)
دستگاه [dast.gāh] apparatus; machine
[dast.gir kar.dan] دستگیر کردن
       [\rightarrow : \leq \sim] to arrest
(دستگیر ک [dast.gi.ri] arrest
(as.tur] order (n.) دستور
    دادن\sim [\sim d\bar{a}.dan] (\rightarrow \sim \sim) to order
أدسته [das.te] handle; haft; bunch, bundle
[dosh.man] enemy دشمن
[do.'ā] prayer دُعا
    ک دن \sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow \rightarrow \sim \sim 1 to pray
دعائي [do.'ā.'i] related to prayers;
       optative (gr.) (also written دعایی)
[da'.vat] invitation
[da'.vat kar.dan] دُعو َت کِ دن (از)
       [\rightarrow : \leq \sim] to invite (so.)
دفتر [da.fā.ter] pl. of دفاتر
رفاتر [daf.tar] notebook (pl. دفاتر,
       da.fā.ter)
دفترِ تلفن [daf.ta.r-e te.le.fon]
(a private) phone book
cفعه [daf.'e] 'time' as counting word دفعه
       ( pl. دفعات , da.fa.'āt)
دقاية [da.ghā.yegh] pl. of دقايق
دقّت [degh.ghat] care; precision; attention
دقيق [da.ghigh] precise, accurate, exact,
       careful
دقايق [da.ghi.ghe] minute (pl. دقاية),
       da.ghā.yegh)
[dok.tor] doctor دُكتُر
    بازی \sim [\sim -b\bar{a}.zi] playing doctor (no
       bad associations in Persian)
[de.gar.gun/di.gar.gun] دگر گو ن/دیگر گو ن
       different; transformed
   to [کن → [~ kar.dan] کر دن
       change or transform
```

```
دل [del] heart; figuratively 'inside'; also
                                                ^{1} دو ز(dukh.tan) دو ز(+\infty) to sew
      stomach (col.)
                                                   نگاه را دوختن ایجشم دوختن (به)
   (یای) دل* تنگ شدن (یا ای) [del* tang sho.
                                                       [ne.gāh rac{a} ~/cheshm ~ (be)]
      dan (ba.r\bar{a}.ye)] [\rightarrow شو \sim] to miss
                                                       [\rightarrow] to fix the eyes (on);
                                                       gaze (at)
   [del* khās.tan] دل* خو استن
      [\rightarrow \dot{\sim}] to wish, to want
                                               ^{2} دو شdush] (خترن (dukh.tan) دو خترن (dush) to
   *del دل* سو ختن (برای/به حال)
                                                       milk (more common form:
                                                       (دو شىدن
      such.tan (ba.rā.ye/be hā.l-e)]
                                                [dow.r-e] around دُور
      [\rightarrow ; \downarrow \sim] to feel pity for or
      take pity on
                                                دور [dur] far, faraway; remote, distant
ا دلار [do.lār] dollar
                                                    افتادن \sim [\sim of.t\bar{a}.dan] (افتادن \sim
دلايا [da.lā.yel] pl. of دلايا
                                                       be thrown away, to be discarded
[del-su.zi] pity دلسوزي
                                                    [~ انداز → [~ an.dākh.tan] [→ انداختن
دلايل [da.lil] reason (pl. دلايل , da.lā.yel)
                                                       to throw away, to discard (tr.)
breath [دمىدن → ] [dam] دم
                                                    ر بختن ر ~ [~ rikh.tan] [→ ريختن ر ~] to
[da.mā] temperature (form.)
                                                       pour out (tr. only)
دميدن [da.mi.dan] [\rightarrow , dam] to
                                                cece cece cece دو ختن <math>1 \to 1 دو ز
      blow; to grow (of plants)
                                                [dust] friend دو ست
دنال [don.bāl] behind; after
                                                [dus.tā.ne] friendly دو ستانه
   [don.bā.l-e . . . gash.tan] دنبال . . . گشتن
                                                دار \rightarrow [dust dāsh.tan] (حدار \rightarrow دار حالت داشتن
      to search for ... [گرد \leftarrow گشتن]
                                                       to like (no mi- in pres. and
[dan.dān] tooth دندان
                                                       progressive tenses)
[dan.dān-pe.zeshk] dentist دندانيز شک
                                                [dust-dāsh.ta.ni] دو ست داشتنی
لانيا [don.yā] world
                                                       adorable, lovely
   به دنیا آمدن [be ~ \bar{a}.ma.dan] [\rightarrow آ ~]
                                                [دوشیدن or دوختن \rightarrow 2 (dush) دوش
   یه دنیا اَو ر دن [be \sim \bar{a}.var.dan]
                                                   to [~ ge.ref.tan] [→ گير ~] to
      [\rightarrow \ ] \sim ] to bear, to give
      birth to
                                                [do-sham.be] Monday دو شنبه
[do] two دو
                                                دو شيدن [du.shi.dan] [\rightarrow دو شيدن, dush] to
   [har do] both هر دو
                                                       milk (see also: 2 دو ختر)
(dow/dav] \rightarrow [dow/dav] دُو
                                                do-gho.lu] twin دو قلو
دو ا [da.v\bar{a}] medicine, medication
                                                دو لت [do.val] pl. of دو ل
[da.vāz.dah] twelve دوازده
                                                دولت [dow.lat] government (pl. دولت,
doval)
يو بار ه [do-bā.re] again
                                                [dow.la.ti] of government or دو لتي
do char.khe] bicycle دو چر خه
                                                       state; governmental
```

```
[dov.vom] second (2nd) دوّم
[dov.vo.man] secondly دوٌ ما
[dov.vo.min] second (2nd) دو مين
دو يدن [da.vi.dan] [\rightarrow , dow \rightarrow dav] to
                  run (causative: دو اندن, da.vān.dan)
[de.vist] two hundred دو ست
[dah] ten که
coeh] village ده
colon = col
(da.hān] mouth (form./wrt.) دُهان
[da.han] mouth دَهَن
دىد [did] view; opinion
ا دىدار [di.dār] visit
         to visit کر دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن
( نین di.dan [ → نین , bin] to see
ديدني [di.da.ni] sight; worth seeing;
                  spectacular
late دیر [dir] دیر
         [~ شو → [dir sho.dan] دير * شدن ~]
زر و ز [di.ruz] yesterday
[dik.te] dictation, spelling ديكته
دگر [di.gar] other (adj.); else; any
                  longer (adv., in negative
                  sentences); already
         [daf.'e-ye di.gar] next دبگر
                  time [lit. 'other time']
         [yek sā.'a.t-e di.gar] ىک ساعت دىگر
                  within or after (an hour) [lit. 'in
                  another hour']
دگر گون [di.gar.gun] see دگر گون
دين [din] religion (pl. اديان, ad.yān)
[din.dar] believer
[di.vār] wall
ديوانه [di.vā.ne] crazy; insane
(هر: [zehn] mind (pl. اذهان, az.hān) ذهن
         be ~ se.por.dan] to به ذهن سير دن
                  commit to memory
```

```
| , [r\bar{a}] 'definite direct object' marker
أيعاً [r\bar{a}.be.'an] fourthly
راجع به [rā.je'be] about; concerning
احت, [r\bar{a}.hat] comfortable; easy
    be rā.ha.ti] easily براحتي/بهراحتي
(اد به , [rā.di.yo] radio
است راست (rāst right
    راستش [rās.tash] the truth of it; to
       be honest (col.)
راضی [r\bar{a}.zi] content; contented; happy,
       satisfied, pleased
    دن \sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow \geq 1 to
       satisfy; to cause to agree
    -az khod ~] self از خود راضي
       satisfied; self-important; smug
اندن (r\bar{a}n] اندن,
اندن, [r\bar{a}n.dan] \rightarrow (1, \infty) to drive
[rā.nan.de.gi] رانندگی
    دن \sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow : \leq \sim] to drive
اننده [rā.nan.de] driver
اه, [r\bar{a}h] way, road; method
راه رفتن [r\bar{a}h \ raf.tan] \rightarrow -\infty to walk/
       stroll (at or in some place, not to)
rāh.row] corridor راهر و
رِجْأً , [ra'y] vote; verdict; opinion
       (pl. | \bar{l}, \bar{a}r\bar{a}')
   رأى دادن [ra'y dā.dan] [
ightarrow دادن \sim] to
[ra'y.gi.ri] voting رأي گيري
ل , [ro.b\bar{a}] \rightarrow ن , ر بو دن
ربط [rabt] relation; connection
ربع [rob'] a quarter
ر بو دن [ro.bu.dan] \rightarrow (ro.ba.da] to
       steal (form.)
[rad sho.dan (dar/az)] ر د شدن (در /از)
       [\rightarrow شبو \sim] to fail (in [a test]), to
       be rejected; also to pass
       (locational, as on the street)
```

```
ra.dif] row ردىف
                                                فتار (raf.tār behavior; conduct;
                                                       manners
رزم [razm] [ رزم battle
                                                    دن \sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow > \sim [\sim kar.dan] to
رزمیدن [raz.mi.dan] [\rightarrow cرزمیدن, razm]
                                                       behave or act
       to combat (lit.)
                                                رو (عترن [raf.tan] (باز نترن [raf.tan] (باز نترن [raf.tan] (باز نترن [raf.tan]
(res] \rightarrow رس
                                                رو ب [-\infty, rof.tan/ruf.tan] رُفتن / روفتن ر
سا , [re.sā/ra.sā] far reaching and loud
                                                       rub] to sweep
رسان (re.sān] \rightarrow ساندر
                                                [raf.t-o-ā.mad] coming and رفت و آمد
/re.sān.dan رسانيدن / رسانيدن
                                                       going; traffic
       re.s\bar{a}.ni.dan] [\rightarrow سان, re.s\bar{a}n]
                                                رقص [raghs] (مقصدن \rightarrow dance
       to cause to reach; to deliver
                                                [ragh.sān] dancing رقصان
رستن [ras.tan] [\to \infty, rah] to escape or
                                                رقصیدن [ragh.si.dan] [\rightarrow رقص, raghs]
       be saved
                                                       to dance (causative: رقصاندن)
رُستن [ros.tan] [\to , ru] to grow (of
       plants) (causative: رو باندن)
                                                رمیدن \rightarrow [ram] رم
                                                ro.mān] novel رُمان
ر ستو ر ان [res.to.rān] restaurant
                                                (از) رمیدن [ra.mi.dan] (میدن (از), ram] to
[ras.mi] formal رسمي
                                                       shy (away from) (causative:
رسيد [re.sid] receipt (of purchase,
                                                رنج [ranj] [\rightarrow رنج pain; torment
رس (re.si.dan] [\rightarrow , res] to
                                                (از) رنج [ran.ji.dan] رنج (از), [ran.ji.dan]
       reach, arrive
                                                       to take offence (at)
   .نظر see under به نظر رسیدن
                                                       (causative: رنجاندن)
   [che re.sad be] چه رسلا به
                                                [rang] color نگ
(سیده [re.si.de] ripe (used for fruits)
                                                ر فتہ: → [row/rav] ر و
رشتن [resh.tan] [\rightarrow , ris] to spin
                                                رو [ru] 1) \rightarrow رو ئیدن (ru] رو ژبیدن (ru] رو ژبیدن
شته (reshte) field (of knowledge or
       study); major (in education);
                                                [ra.vān] going; flowing; running;
       line, thread
                                                       fluent; soul
resh.te-ye tah.si.li] major رشتهٔ تحصلي
                                                روبروى [ru-be-ru-ye] in front of; facing
       (in education)
                                                rud.khā.ne] river رو دخانه
resh.ve] bribe رشوه
                                                ; 9, [ruz] day
رضایت [re.zā.yat] satisfaction;
                                                روزانه [ru.z\bar{a}.ne] daily
       agreement
                                                [ru.z-e ta.val.lod] birthday روز تولد
   دادن \sim [\sim d\bar{a}.dan] \rightarrow \sim [\sim d\bar{a}.dan] to
       approve; to give consent
                                                [ra.vesh] method روش
رعایت [re.'ā.yat] consideration;
                                                روشن [row.shan] bright (also 'on' as
                                                       light or fire or a device)
       observance
   دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~] to
                                                    دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~] to
       observe; to follow
                                                       turn on; to fire up
```

```
روشنی [row.sha.ni] light; brightness
[rof.tan] رُفتن [ruf.tan] روفتن
[ru-ye] on (prep.) روى
روئيدن [ru.'i.dan] [\rightarrow, ru] to grow
       (of plants) (causative: رو باندن)
ره [rah] \rightarrow (auc) or رُستن or
ه , [ra.hā] free
   a [~ sho.dan] [→ شدن ~] to be
       freed or rescued
رهيدن [ra.hi.dan] [\rightarrow , rah] to escape
       or be saved (form./lit.)
ر باضي (ri.yā.zi] mathematical (adj.);
       mathematics (n.) (pl. باضتات ,
       ri.yā.ziy.yāt);
ریخ [rikh.tan] [\rightarrow, riz] to pour; to
       spill (tr./intr.)
ريخت و ياش [rikh.t-o-pāsh] spillage;
       squandering
ريز (riz) \rightarrow (riz)
(ris] \rightarrow (cm) ریس
شه ر [ri.she] root; stem (gr.)
ر ئيس [ra. 'is] chief; boss; head or
       director ( pl. ئوسا , ro. 'a.sā)
[ra.'is[-e] jom.hur] رئيس جمهور
       president of the republic (ezāfe
       usually dropped in colloquial
       Persian)
زائىدن and زادن[z\bar{a}] \rightarrow (z\bar{a}] زا
زادن [z\bar{a}.dan] [\rightarrow 1;, z\bar{a}] to bear a child
       (form.; see زائيدن)
انو [z\bar{a}.nu] knee (no -y- glide needed
       for pl. with -\bar{a}n)
زائيدن [z\bar{a}. 'i.dan] [\rightarrow 1;, z\bar{a}] to bear a
       child
زَان [za.bān] tongue; language
```

زبان مادري [za.bā.n-e mā.da.ri] mother

tongue

زدودن $(zo.d\bar{a}] \rightarrow$ زدا

```
زدن [za.dan] [\rightarrow \dot{\upsilon};, zan] to hit, to
      strike; to play an instrument
زدو دن [zo.du.dan] (حو دن zo.da) to
      clean: to rub off
زنگ ; [ze.rang] clever
زرنگی [ze.ran.gi] cleverness
زشت [zesht] ugly
زشتی [zesh.ti] ugliness
مان ; [za.mān] tense (gr.); time
   زمان حال [~ -e hāl] present tense (gr.)
ز مستان زze.mes.tān] winter
زمين [za.min] earth; ground; field (in
      sports); floor
(be) za.min (به) زمین خوردن
      khor.dan] [\rightarrow \sim to fall
      down; to fall on the ground
زمین شناس [za.min-she.nās] geologist
[za.min-she.nā.si] geology زمین شناسی
زُن [zan] (عن (zan) عن (zan) ) woman; wife
نانه [za.nā.ne] womanly, feminine, of
      women or women's
زنبيل [zan.bil] basket
زندان [zen.dān] prison
[zen.dā.ni] prisoner زندانی
[zen.de.gi] life (= the period) زندگی
      from birth to death)
   دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~] to live
زنده [zen.de] alive
   [zen.de bād] well نده باد (...)
      done!; long live ...!
[zang] [sound of] ring; bell
   [[zang za.dan (be] زنگ زدن (به)
      [\rightarrow \dot{\upsilon}; \sim] to call (per phone);
      to give [so.] a ring
و د ; [zud] early; fast
   ;be-zu.di] soon بزودي/بهزودي
      before long
```

, 9; [zur] force ساکن [sā.ken] resident (n.; pl. ساکن, sa.ka.ne); settled (adj.); not به زور/بزور [be-zur] forcibly; by moving force; against your will; with too much persistence or [sāl] vear سال begging سالانه [sā.lā.ne] yearly; annual (also  $(zi] \rightarrow (zi)$  زی بالبانه, sā.li.vā.ne) سالم [sā.lem] healthy; healthful نادى زير زيزي [zi. vā.dí] too much [sān.ti.ge.rād] centigrade سانتگراد  $: ub] \rightarrow نسدن (zib]$ سابه [sā.ye] shadow ل ز [zi.bā] beautiful سائيدن [ $s\bar{a}$ . 'i.dan] [ $\rightarrow$  سائيدن,  $s\bar{a}$ ] to grind; to abrade (form.; less formal: [zi.bā.'i] beauty زيبائي (ساىيدن زيب (zi.bi.dan] (zi.bi.dan) زيبيدن zib] to [sa.bab] cause; reason befit, to become به سبب [ $be \sim -e$ ] because of زيپ [zip] zip, zip fastener, zipper سبب شدن سبب شدن ( $\sim$  sho.dan/  $\sim$  -e . . . sho.dan] ( $\rightarrow$   $\sim$  1 to ازيرا [zi.rā] because *[zi.rak*] smart ز ہر ک ز بر کانه زzi.ra.kā.ne] smart; smartly [sa.ba.bi] causative, factitive (gr.) زيستن [zis.tan]  $[\rightarrow \zeta; zi]$  to live [sa.bad] basket (form.) [sabz] green سي زينت [zi.nat] ornament [sab.zi] vegetable (pl. sometimes سائىدن $\rightarrow [s\bar{a}] \rightarrow$ سائىدى (سى: ىجات, sab.zi.jāt ساسدن  $\rightarrow$  [sāb] ساس [sabk] style سابيدن  $[s\bar{a}.bi.dan]$  [ $\rightarrow$  سابيدن,  $s\bar{a}b$ ] to  $[se.p\bar{a}r/se.por] \rightarrow سیار /سیر$ grind; to abrade (see also سير دن [se.por.dan] [→ سير دن, se.por, or (سائىدن سيار, se.pār] to entrust ساحل [sā.hel] shore; beach se.tā.re] star ستاره [sākh.te.mān] building ساختمان ستا [se.t $\bar{a}$ ]  $\rightarrow$  ستا ساختن [sākh.tan] [ $\rightarrow$  ساختن, sāz] to build ستاندن  $\rightarrow$  [se.tān] ستان (in formal Persian used as a substitute for کر دن, but not ستاندن [se.tān.dan] [ $\rightarrow$  ستاندن, se.tān] recommended) to take (lit.) [sā.de] simple ساده [se.tā.yesh] praise ستايش ساختن  $s\bar{a}z$  ساز دن  $\sim [\sim kar.don] \rightarrow \geq \sim [\sim kar.don]$ ساعت  $[s\bar{a}.'\bar{a}t]$  pl. of ساعات to praise, to admire [sā.'at] hour; watch; clock se.tor] ستر دن se.tor( pl. ساعات , sā. 'āt) ستر دن [se.tor.dan]  $[\rightarrow]$  ستر دن, se.tor] to eliminate or erase [sā.ghi] saki; cup-bearer ساقی

```
[so.tu.dan] [→ ستا دن se.tā] سُتو دن
      to praise, to admire
[so.tu.da.ni] admirable, سُتو دني
      praiseworthy
sa.har] dawn سحر
[sa.har-khiz] early riser (from
      sleep)
[sakht] hard سخت
   [~ گب → [~ ge.ref.tan] [→ گ فتر:
      to be strict and harsh
[sakht-gir] unyielding, سختگبر
      inflexible, serious
[sakht-gi.ri] severity; harsh سختگبری
      treatment
   دن \sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow > \sim [\sim kar.dan] to be
      strict and harsh
سختى [sakh.ti] difficulty; hardship;
      hardness
   be- ~] with بسختي /به سختي
      difficulty; hard (adv.)
[so.khan] speech, talk (form.) سخن
   (يا) ~ [~ gof.tan (bā)]
      [\rightarrow \& \sim] to speak (to) (form.)
so.khan.rān] speaker (at a سخنران
      podium) (from سخن راندن)
[so.khan.gu] speaker (n., as a
      position); talking (adj.) (from
      (سخن گفتن
[sar] head سُب
\mathring{m} [sor] \rightarrow سُر بدن
[serr] secret (pl. اسرار, as.rār) سر"
اسُر و دن so.r\bar{a}] سُر ا
[sar.bāz] soldier سرباز
[sorkh] red سرخ
[sard] cold سب د
   velto اشر → [~* bu.dan] (→ بودن ~ المرابع
      feel cold
[sar* ~ kar.dan] سر * درد کردن
      [\rightarrow : \xi \sim] to have a headache
```

```
[sar-za.nesh] blaming سرزنش
   دن \sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow > \sim \sim 1 to
[sor.'at] speed سُر عَت
   يسر عت/بهسر عت (be ∼] speedily;
[sor.fe] cough (n.) سد فه
   c [~ kar.dan] [→ کن ~] to
سرگرم کردن [sar-garm kar.dan] [	o کن \sim] to amuse; to entertain
[sar-garm ko.nan.de] سرگرم کننده
       amusing
[so.rud] song; hymn سُر و د
سُر و دن [so.ru.dan] [\rightarrow \downarrow] سُر و دن so.rā] to
       compose a poem
[sar-o-se.da] noise سر وصدا
   دن \sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow (\sim \sim) to
[so.ri.dan] \rightarrow m, sor to slip
[sa.ri'] fast (adj./adv.) سريع
سريعا [sa.ri.'an] fast (adv.); speedily
سز او ار [se.z\bar{a}.v\bar{a}r] deserving; worthy
    to ~ إش → [~ bu.dan] بو دن
       deserve; to be worthy of
يىعدى [sa'.di] Saadi (poet, 13th
       century)
[sa'y; y here is a consonant] سعى
       effort (pl. مساعى, masā'i)
   کر دن \sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow \sim \sim 1 to try
- se.fā.rat/se.fā.rat سفار تخانه [se.fā.rat/se.fa.rat
       khā.ne] embassy
[sa.far] travel سفر
   (به) کر دن (من (سه) ~ [~ kar.dan (be)]
       [\rightarrow : \leq \sim] to travel (to)
se.fid] white سفيد
[se.fid-pust] of white
       skin/race
```

```
[saghf] ceiling سقف
                                            [su.zān] ablaze; burning; hot; سوزان
                                                   (سوختن scorching (from)
ساکن [sa.ka.ne] pl. of سکنه
                                            [su.zesh] burning sensation or
so.kut] silence سکو ت
                                                   twinge
[sag] dog سگ
                                            [sev.vom] third (3rd) سوّم
[sa.lām] hello, hi
                                            [sev.vo.man] thirdly سوّ ما
   کن /گو \rightarrow کر دن /گفتن \sim ] to say
                                            [sev.vo.min] third (3rd) سو مين
   (به) ماندن (به) مرساندن (به) to give
                                            se] three سه
      greetings (to)
                                            [se-sham.be] Tuesday
[sa.li.ghe] taste; style
                                            [si] thirty سی
   [bi- ~] lacking good taste
                                            [si.yā.sat] politics
   [bi-sa.li.ghe.gi] lack good] بي سليقگي
                                            [si.yā.sat-ma.dār] politician
                                            [si.yāh] black
[senn] age (i.e., years lived) سرت
                                            [si.yāh-pust] of black skin/race
[son.nat] tradition
                                            [sib] apple سبب
[son.na.ti] traditional سنّتي
                                            [sib za.mi.ni] potato سيب زميني
اسناد .[sa.nad] document (pl. سند
                                                   ('pomme de terre')
      as.nād)
                                            [sir] full, no more hungry; garlic
[sang] stone سنگ
                                            [siz.dah] thirteen سبز ده
[san.gin] heavy سنگين
                                            [si.sad] three hundred
[su] side; direction (form.)
                                            [si.gār] cigarette سیگار
   [az su-ye] by, through, from
                                               ~ کشدن ~ [~ ke.shi.dan] [→ کشدن
   (به) سوى (ایه) (be) su-ye
                                                   to smoke cigarettes
[sa.vād] literacy سواد
                                            [si.ne.mā/si.na.mā] cinema
   [bā- ~] literate
                                            [si.ne] chest; breast
   ييسو اد/بے سو اد bi- \sim] illiterate
                                            [si.ne-za.ni] chest-beating سینه زنی
[sa.vā.r-e . . . sho.dan] to سوار . . . شدن
                                                   a Shiite ritual
      gét on or ride in/on (a vehicle/
                                            limetharpoonsignal in [sh\bar{a}] \rightarrow i شاستن
      [شو → شدن] (horse
                                            [shākh] horn شاخ
,سؤالات .[so.'āl] question (pl. سؤال
                                            [shā.khe] branch شاخه
      so.'ā.lāt)
                                            [shād] happy, glad شاد
   کن → [~ kar.dan (az)] (خن (از)
                                            [shā.di] happiness, gladness شادي
       ~] to ask (a question from)
                                               دن \sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow > \sim [\sim kar.dan] to
سوز\rightarrow [sukh.tan] (\rightarrow سو ختن, suz] to
                                                   rejoice; to cheer
      burn (tr./intr.) (causative:
                                            sho.'a.rā) شعرا [shā.'er] poet (pl. شعرا, sho.'a.rā)
      (سوزاندن
suz] سوز suz
                                            [shā.'e.rā.ne] poetical شاعرانه
```

```
[shā.'e.re] poetess شاعره
[shā.gerd] pupil شاگ د
   اوّل ~ [~ av.val] best student in
      the class: class winner
[shām] supper; dinner شام
[shānz.dah] sixteen شانز ده
shā.ne] shoulder; comb شانه
شابان [shā.yān] deserving; worthy
شايد [shā.yad] maybe, perhaps; may
      (modal verb; same form for all
      persons) (stress on shā-)
[shā.yes.te.gi] merit; worthiness شايستگي
   deserve; to be worthy of
شایستن [sh\bar{a}.yes.tan] [\rightarrow شاsh\bar{a}] to
      deserve; to be appropriate
      (poet.)
شاسته [shā.yes.te] deserving; worthy
   to ~ إشر → [~ bu.dan] بو دن
      deserve; to be worthy of
[shab] night شُب
[she.bā.hat] similarity شياهت
   (مه) حاشتن (مه ~ [~ dāsh.tan (be)]
      [\rightarrow] to be similar (to)
[shab-kār] night shift worker
[sha.bih] similar شبیه
   سىه/شىيە يە [~ -e/~ be] similar to
شتافتن [she.t\bar{a}b] شتاب hurry
   ک دن \sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow \rightarrow \sim \sim 1 to hurry
شتاك [she.t\bar{a}f.tan] \rightarrow شتافتن, she.t\bar{a}b
      to hurry (lit.)
[sho.tor] شتر
[sho.tor-morgh] شتر مرغ
[sho.jā'] brave شجاع
sho.jā.'ā.ne] brave; bravely شحاعانه
اشخاص [shakhs] person (pl. شخص
      ash.khās, persons, people)
```

```
[shakh.si] personal شخصي
شدن [sho.dan] [\rightarrow شدو, show/shav]
      to become
[sho.da.ni] doable; possible شدني
[sha.rāb] شراب [sha.rāb]
sha.rā.yet] treated as pl. of شبرابط
      :circumstances شرط = شرط
      conditions: situation
شروط [shart] condition (pl. شرط
      sho.rut)
   be] به شرطی که/به شرط اینکه/آنکه
      shar.ti ke/be shar.t-e in ke/ān ke]
      provided that
[shar.ti] conditional (gr.) شرطی
[shargh] قبرق [shargh] قبرق
[shar.ghi] قبر قي
[sharm] شرم
[sharm.nāk] شبر مناک
[sho.ru'] beginning شبر وع
   دن \sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow > \sim 1 to
      begin (often with 4)
[shast] thumb; toe
[shos.to.shu] washing شستشه
شبتن [shos.tan] [\rightarrow شبو \rightarrow , shu; in
      colloquial شور, shur] to wash
شستشو [shos.t-o-shu] see شبو
[shesh] six شش
[shesh.sad] six hundred
[shast] sixty شصت
[shat.ranj] شطرنج
[sho.'ār] slogan; motto شعار
أشعر [she'r] poem; poetry (pl. شعر),
      ash'ār)
شاعر sho.'a.rā] pl. of شعرا
[shoghl] occupation; job (pl. شغل
      (ma.shā.ghel مشاغل,
```

[shak] doubt شک [sho.mā.l-e ghar.bi] شمال غربي / در (به/در) ~ داشتر: (به/در) ~ داشتر: (به/در) Northwest: northwestern (dar) [ $\rightarrow$  دار حار to have doubts شمر دن  $(she.mor; also sho.-] \rightarrow$  شمر (in/about) (no mi- in pres. and [she.mor.dan; also sho.-] شمر دن progressive tenses)  $[\rightarrow$  شمر, she.mor – or (form.) (به/در) حن (به/در) ~ [~ kar.dan (be/dar)] شمار, sho.mār] to count  $[\rightarrow : \leq \sim]$  to doubt [she.nā] swimming [she.kār] hunt شکار ک دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~] to swim ک دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کر ~] to hunt (she.nākht] knowledge شناخت [she.kār.chi] hunter شکارچی understanding [she.kar] sugar ,شناس → [she.nākh.tan] **شناخت**رن, [she.kast] defeat (n.) [short shenās] to know (a person), to infinitive or past stem of the be familiar with; to recognize verb شکستن, she.kas.tan] (causative: شناساندن) (از) خوردن (از) ~ خوردن (از) ~ خوردن (از) شناختن  $\rightarrow [she.n\bar{a}s]$  شناس [→ → ~~] to be defeated (by); [shan.be/sham.be] Saturday شنبه شنفتن → [she.nof] شنف دادن  $\sim [\sim d\bar{a}.dan]$  ( $\rightarrow \sim \sim$ ) to defeat she.nof.tan] [→ شنف, she.nof, شنف نابذر ~ [~ -nā-pa.zir] invincible or شنو, she.now  $\rightarrow$  she.nav] to شکستن [she.kas.tan]  $[\rightarrow$  شکن, she.kan] hear (see شندن) to break (tr. and intr.)  $she.now \rightarrow she.nav$ ] شنو (causative: شکاندن) [she.na.va] capable of hearing شنوا اشكال .[shekl] shape; form (pl. شكار) not deaf ash.kāl)  $(sho.nu.dan] \rightarrow m$ شنو دن, she.now [sho.ko.lāt] chocolate شكلات خىنىدن she.nav] (poet.) see [she.kam] belly شکم she.ni.dan] [ شنو, she.now → شكستن → [she.kan] شكن she.nav] to hear [she.kan.je] torture شکنجه [she.ni.da.ni] worth listening شندني ک دن  $\sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow \to \sim [\sim kar.dan]$  to torture  $(show/shav] \rightarrow شدن$ [she.ka.nan.de] fragile شكننده shu] شو شما [sho.m $\bar{a}$ ] you (pl.) شوریدن (shur] شور شوریدن (shur] شور 3) salty; having too much salt شمر دن  $(sho.m\bar{a}r]$  (form.) شمار [shu.resh] rebellion شورش [be ~ ā.ma.dan] (به) شمار آمدن  $[\rightarrow \tilde{\ } \sim]$  to be counted or [shu.re.shi] rebel شورشي considered شوريدن [shu.ri.dan]  $[\rightarrow]$  شوريدن, shur] to [sho.mā.resh] شمارش rebel (causative: شه راندن) [sho.mā.re] number شماره [show.har] husband شو هر [sho.māl] North شمال [shahr] city شُهر

```
[shahr.dar] mayor شهر دار
[shah.ri] urban شهري
[shah.nāz] Shahnaz (girl's name) شهناز
شيطان sha.yā.tin] pl. of شياطين
[shir] milk; lion; faucet شير
[shi.rāz] Shiraz (city in Iran) شبر از
(نسرزن [shir-zan] courageous woman,
      heroine (lit. 'lion-woman' or
      lioness)
[shi.rin] sweet شيرين
   c [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~] to
      sweeten; to make or change into
(ا شيطان shev.tān] Satan (n.); naughty
      (adj.) (pl. شياطين, sha.yā.tin)
[shi.kā.go] Chicago شبكاگو
[sā.heb] owner صاحب
[sā.degh he.dā.yat] Sadegh
      Hedayat (writer, 1903-51)
[sobh] morning
[sabr] patience
   صبر داشتن [sabr dāsh.tan] [\rightarrow دار \sim]
      to have patience [دار → داشتن]
      (no mi- in pres. and progressive
      tenses)
   (دن [~ kar.dan] (→ کن ~] to wait
   بي صبر انه [bi-sab.rā.ne] impatiently
[soh.bat] conversation
   دن \sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow > \sim [\sim kar.dan] to speak
[sad] hundred
[se.da] sound; voice
   [\rightarrow \dot{\wp}]/\dot{\wp} to call so.
صرف کر دن [sarf kar.dan] [\rightarrow \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ ] to
      spend, to consume, to have; also
      to conjugate (gr.)
```

صفات [se.fat] adjective (gr.) (pl. صفات,

se.fat)

```
[se.fa.t-e e.shā.re] صفت اشاره
      demonstrative adjective (gr.)
[se.fa.t-e taf.zi.li] صفت تفضيلي
      comparative adjective
[se.fa.t-e ā.li] superlative صفت عالى
      adiective
[se.fa.t-e maf.'u.li] صفت مفعو لي
      'participial adjective' or past
      اسم مفعول = participle
saf.he] page (pl. صفحات, sa.fa.hāt)
sefr] zero صف
[solh] peace صلح
[sa.lib] cross
   e sorkh] red cross صلیب سرخ
[san.da.li] chair صندلي
(صورَت so.var] shapes (pl. of صُور
[su.rat] face; case; shape (pl. in
      this sense صُور, so.var)
   be su.ra.ti ke] in such] به صورتی که
      a way that
   ldar su.ra.ti ke] in در صورتی که
      case, in the event that; whereas
   ldar ghey.r-e in] در غیر این صورت
     su.rat] if not so; otherwise
[zed.de] used as prefix meaning ضدّ
      anti- or counter-; also used after
      to mean against بر or په
   [zed-de-en.ghe.lā.bi] ضدٌ انقلابي
      counter-revolutionary
[za.ru.rat] necessity; need
   دار → [~ dāsh.tan] (حدار حار ~ اشتن
      be necessary
[za.ru.ri] necessary (pl.
      خروريّات, za.ru.riy.yāt,
      necessities)
ضعيف [zo.'a.fa] pl. of ضعفا
ينعيف [za.'if] weak (pl. ضعيف, zo.'a.fā)
```

[za.mā.'er/za.mā.yer] pl. ضمائر /ضماير zohr] noon ظهر ضمير of عادت [ $\bar{a}$ . dat] habit (pl. عادات,  $\bar{a}$ . d $\bar{a}$ t) [za.mir] pronoun (gr.) ضمبر (م) دادن  $\sim [\sim d\bar{a}.dan\ (be)] \rightarrow \sim \sim]$ (pl. ضمائر, za.mā.'er) to make accustomed to, to cause [za.mi.r-e e.shā.re] ضمير اشاره to get used to (tr.) demonstrative pronoun (gr.) (به) ~ [~ دار → [~ dāsh.tan] ماشتن (به) ~ [~ دار ضائعتن (به) to be accustomed (to) [ta.bib] physician (old-fashioned) طسب ( pl. اطتّاء, a.teb.bā') (به) کر دن (سه ~ [~ kar.dan (be)]  $[\rightarrow \ \ \ \ \ \ \ \ ]$  to get accustomed to, [ta.bi.'at] nature to get used to (intr.) طرح [tarh] plan; scheme; design عاشق [ā.shegh] lover (pl. عشاق, [ta.raf] direction; side; party طرف osh.shāgh) [involved] (pl. اطراف, at.rāf = [~ -e bu.dan] عاشق ... بو دن around or surroundings) ا ماش ~] to love ماش از طرف  $[az \sim -e]$  by, through, from به طرف [be  $\sim$  -e] towards; in [ā.she.ghā.ne] romantic, عاشقانه direction of amorous; amorously طريق to.rogh] pl. of طرق [ā.ghe.bat] conclusion; finally (pl. عو اقب, a.vā.gheb) طرق (ta.righ] way, road (pl., طرق, [ā.ghel] wise (used for humans) عاقا [az ~ -e] by [way of] از طریق a.ghe.lā.ne] wise; wisely عاقلانه [ta'm] taste (of food); flavor عالي [ $\bar{a}.li$ ] excellent [ta.lāgh] divorce je.nā.b-e 'ā.li] your جنابعالي طلب [ta.lab] طلب desire excellency [haz.ra.t-e 'ā.li] your حضر تعالى طلبیدن [ta.la.bi.dan] [ $\rightarrow$  طلبیدن, ta.lab] to desire [towr] manner, method طور [a.jab] (how) strange [be ~ -i (ke)] بطوري/به طوري (که) a.ja.le] hurry; haste; rush عجله in such a way (that) [~ kar.dan/dāsh.tan] ح کر دن/داشتن tu.ti] parrot طوطي  $[\rightarrow]$  دار  $\sim$  ] to hurry; to hasten tul] length طول a.jib] strange عجيب ~ کش ~ [~ ke.shi.dan] [→ کشیدن to continue in time, to go on, to عدد [a.dad] number (pl. اعداد, a'.dad) require or take (time) tu.lā.ni] long طولاني [ozr.khā.hi] apology عذر خو اهم [zā.he.ran] apparently ظاهراً دن  $\sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow > \sim [\sim kar.dan]$  to (zarf] dish (pl. ظروف, zoruf) ظرف apologize (zar.f-e] within (temp.) ظرف عر ب [a.rab] Arab (pl. عراب, a'.rāb) ظر ف zo.ruf] pl. of ظر وف [a.ra.bi] Arabic (language) عربي

```
عرض کر دن [arz kar.dan] [\rightarrow \ \ \ \ \ \ \ ] to
      say (for use in polite language
      see Appendix I)
[ar.ze] presentation; supply
   دن \sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow > \sim 1 to
      present; to supply
[a.ru.sak] doll عرو سک
[a.ziz] dear عَز يز
عاشق [osh.shāgh] pl. of عُشّاق
one-tenth عُشہ [oshr] عُشہ
[eshgh] love عشق
عصا [a.s\bar{a}] walking stick, cane
[a.sa.bā.ni] angry عصباني
[a.sa.bā.niy.yat] anger
عفه [afv] pardon
   دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~] to
عقا [aghl] wisdom; intellect; reason;
      common sense
عقا گرا [aghl-ge.ra] rationalist
[aghl-ge.rā.'i] rationalism عقل گرائی
aks] picture; photo عکس
   [<br/> ge.ref.tan (az)] مگر فتن (از)
      [\rightarrow] to take photos (of)
[a.lā.ghe.mand] علاقمند/علاقهمند (مه)
      interested (in); fond (of)
[a.lā.ghe] interest; liking; attachment علاقه
   (مه) حاشتن (مه ~ [~ dāsh.tan (be)] to be
      interested in; to like; to be fond
      [دار → داشتن] of
على [a.li] Ali; boy's name
عليرغم /على على [a.l\bar{a}\ ragh.m-e] in spite
      of (more form .: برغم/به رغم
[a.mal] act; action; practice; [surgical]
      operation ( pl. اعمال, a'.māl)
   ین ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~] to act;
      to perform surgery
```

```
[a.mu] uncle (father's side) عمو
o.mu.mi] public عمو مي
عنصر [a.nā.ser] pl. of عناصر
عنصر [on.sor] element (pl. عنصر,
      a.nā.ser)
a.nā.vin) عنو ين [on.vān] title (pl. عناوين
   be on.vā.n-e] as; in the معنوان
      position of
[a.vā.gheb] consequences عو اقب
      ( pl. of عاقبت, \bar{a}.ghe.bat)
عوض [a.vaz] exchange; substitute
   (در) عوض [dar ~ -e] in exchange
      for: instead of
   دن کر دن [~ kar.dan] [→ کر: ~] to
      change; to exchange
ahd] promise; oath] عهد
[ahd-she.kan] promise] عهد شکن
      breaker; disloyal
عيب [eyb] fault, deficiency (pl. عيو ب
      o.yub or معایب, ma.'ā.yeb)
[ey.n-e] exactly like (col.)
[ey.nak] eyeglasses (in Persian sg.)
عيو ب [o.yub] pl. of عيو ب
[ghā.le.ban] often] غالياً
(gha.zā] food (pl. اغذيه, agh.zi.ye) غذا
   ا بختن ~ [~ pokh.tan] [→ يختن ~] to
      cook (intr.)
   (دن ~ [~ khor.dan] [→ خوردن ~]
      to eat (intr.)
غذائي [gha.zā.'i] (of) food; nutritional,
      dietary
غرّيدن \rightarrow [ghorr] غرّ
gharb] West] غږ پ
[ghar.bi] Western غريي
غرق شدن [ghargh sho.dan] [\rightarrow شو \sim
      to drown (intr.)
وب [gho.rub] sunset; dusk; nightfall
```

غرّيدن [ghor.ri.dan] [→ غرّيدن, ghorr] to growl; to rumble غزل [gha.zal] ghazal; a genre in poetry (pl. غز ليّات, gha.za.liy.yāt) [ghos.se] grief غصّه [ghos.se khor.dan] غصّه خور دن (براي)  $(ba.r\bar{a}.ye)$ ]  $[\rightarrow \dot{\sim} \sim]$  to grieve, to be sad (about) غلت  $(ghalt] \rightarrow غلت$ غلتدن [ghal.ti.dan] [→ غلتدن, ghalt] to roll (causative: غلتاندن) غلط [gha.lat] wrong; mistake (pl. (agh.lat اغلاط [ghal.ti.dan] [→ غلط و ghalt] غلطندن غلتىدن see igham] grief, sadness غم [ → خور دن ~ [~ khor.dan] → خور دن to grieve, to be sad gham-an.giz] sad (used for غمانگيز inanimates); causing sadness [gha.m-e . . . dāsh.tan] غم . . . داشتن  $[\rightarrow]$  دار  $\sim$  to be sad about, to worry about (no mi- in pres. and progressive tenses) [gham.gin] sad (used for people) غمگین [gham.gin sho.dan] غمگین شدن  $[\rightarrow$  شبو  $\sim$ ] to become sad [gham.gin kar.dan] غمگین کر دن  $[\rightarrow : \le \sim]$  to make sad غنو [ghe.now  $\rightarrow$  ghe.nav] غنو دن غنو دن [gho.nu.dan]  $[\rightarrow]$  غنو و $ghe.now \rightarrow$ ghe.nav] to repose or sleep (poet.) [gheyr] other; also used as negating prefix (به/ب) غير از (be) ~ az] except; other than (prep.) (be) ~ az in ke] (به/بـ) غير از اينكه except that (conj.)

غير انساني [ghey.r-e en.sā.ni] inhuman; inhumane [ghey.r-e shakh.si] غبر شخصي impersonal (gr.); non-personal [ghey.r-e lā.zem] unnecessary غير لازم [ghey.r-e mos.ta.ghim] غير مستقيم impossible غیر ممکن [ghey.r-e mom.ken] غیر ممکن [ghey.r-e vā.ghe.'i] unreal غير واقعى فارس [ $f\bar{a}rs$ ] 1) Fars: a province in Iran; 2) member of the Persianspeaking ethnicity in Iran [fār.si] Persian (language) فارسي [fā.re.gh-ot-tah.sil] a فارغ التّحصيل graduate student [lit., 'free from studies'] فارغ التّحصيل شدن [fā.re.ghot.tah.sil sho. dan]  $[\rightarrow$  شبو  $\sim$ ] to graduate (from a college) [fā.ghe.d-e] lacking فاقد ف الله [fā.ye.de] use, benefit (pl. فو الله), fa.vā.'ed or فو ايد , fa.vā.yed) ا بے فالدہ [bi- ~] in vain; useless فتادن [fe.tā.dan or fo.-]  $[\rightarrow$  فتادن, fet or fot] shortened poetical version افتادن of فر ار [fa.rār] escape; running away ک دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~] to run [fa.rā-ge.ref.tan] [farā- is a فراگر فتن prefix;  $\rightarrow$  گیر to learn (form.) [fa.rā.mush sho.dan] فراموش شدن  $[\rightarrow$  شبو  $\sim$ ] to be forgotten to forget [~] فراموش \* شدن [fa.rā.mush kar.dan] فرامو ش کر دن  $[\rightarrow : \leq \sim]$  to forget [fa.rān.se] France; French فرانسه language [fa.rā.vān] a lot of فراوان

```
فر د [fard] individual (pl. افر اد af.r\bar{a}d,
       individuals, people)
ف دا [far.d\bar{a}] tomorrow
فرسو دن/فر سائیدن[far.s\bar{a}] \rightarrow [far.s\bar{a}] فرسا
, far.sā] فر سائندن [far.sā.'i.dan] فر سائندن
       فرسودن see
فر ستادن \rightarrow [fe.rest] فر ست
فر ست (fe.res.tā.dan] \rightarrow فر ستادن,
      fe.rest] to send
[fe.res.tan.de] sender في ستنده
فرسودن [far.su.dan] [\rightarrow افرسودن, far.s\bar{a}] to
       erode
[farsh] carpet فرش
فرشته [fe.resh.te] angel; girl's name
ف ق [ fargh ] difference
   (با) داشتن (ربا ~ [~ dāsh.tan
       [\rightarrow \  \  ] \sim ] to be different (from)
   ح دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~] to be
       or become different
   (برای) ~ دن (برای) ~ دن (برای) ~ دن (برای)
       [\rightarrow : \le \sim] to make a difference (to)
   [far.ghi ne.mi.ko.nad] فرقى نمى كند
       It makes no difference; it doesn't
       matter.
فر مو دن far.m\bar{a} فر ما
فر مان [far.mān] command
فر مانده [far.mān.deh] commander
فر مو دن [far.mu.dan] [\rightarrow] فر مو دن, far.m\bar{a}] to
       give a command; for its usage in
       polite language see Appendix I
فروش \rightarrow [fo.rukh.tan] فروختن,
      fo.rush] to sell
fo.rud.gāh] airport في و دگاه
فروختن fo.rush فروش [ فروش
ف و شگاه [fo.rush.gāh] store, shop
[fo.ru.shan.de] seller; cashier في و شنده
fo.rugh far.rokh.zād] Forugh فروغ فر خزاد
       Farrokhzād (poet, 1934-67)
```

```
فرياد [far.yād] shout; cry; yelling
   ندن \sim [\sim za.dan] \rightarrow \cup \sim [\sim za.dan] to shout;
       to cry; to exclaim
فریب [fa.rib] [ فریب deception;
       deceit
   to be deceived
   دادن \sim [\sim d\bar{a}.dan] [\rightarrow \sim \sim] to deceive
فريبا [fa.ri.b\bar{a}] charming
فريفترن [fa.rif.tan] [\rightarrow فريفترن, fa.rib] to
       deceive; to spellbind (form.)
فسر دن [fe.sor.dan] \rightarrow [fe.sor] فسر دن
       افسر دن see
[fe.shār] pressure فشار
   [ ~ [ ~ ā.var.dan (be) ] ~ آور دن (په)
       [\rightarrow, ] \[ \] \[ \] \[ \] \] to put pressure (on)
افشر دن fe.sh\bar{a}r] فشار pressure
    [\sim \bar{a}.var.dan (be)] 
       [\rightarrow] \[ \] \[ \] \[ \] \] to put pressure on
فشر دن fe.shor فشر
,فشر /فشار → [fe.shor.dan] فشردن
       fe.shor/fe.shār] to press; to
       squeeze (also افشر دن, af.shor.dan)
[fasl] chapter, unit; season فَصِا
       (pl. فصو ل , fo.sul)
فصل fo.sul] pl. of فصول
[fo.zul] meddler; nosy person فضو ل
لعال [fe'l] verb (gr.) (pl. افعال ,af.'āl)
[fe'.lan] for now, for the time فعلا
       being; presently
[faghr] poverty فقر
[fa.ghat] only فقط
   [na ~ ...bal.ke ...] نه فقط ... بلکه ...
       not only ... but also ...
ا فک [ fekr] thought ( pl. افکار , afk\bar{a}r)
   فکر کر دن [\sim kar.dan] (\rightarrow \sim \sim ) to
       think
```

إلى فكر [bi- ~] thoughtless;

inconsiderate

 $(fe.kan] \rightarrow فکندن$  فکندن

```
(adj.)
فكندن [fe.kan.dan] [\rightarrow نكند, fe.kan]
      to throw (poet.): see also افكندن
[fal.sa.fe] philosophy فلسفه
فو ائد/فو الد [fa.vā.'ed/fa.vā.yed] pl.
      فايده of
فوت [fowt] passing away; death
      (form.)
   to کن ← [~ kar.dan] فوت کردن ~]
      pass away
[fow.ran] immediately] فورا
[فهمیدن \rightarrow [fahm] فهم
      understanding
فهمیدن [fah.mi.dan] [\rightarrow فهمیدن, fahm] to
      understand; to realize (causative:
       (فهماندن
[fil] elephant فيا
[fil.suf] philosopher فيلسو ف
[film] film فيلم
قابل [ghābel] capable; qualified; fit
   قابل [\sim -e] fit for; worthy of
   jghey.r-e ~ -e] unfit for; غير قابل
      incapable of
[ghāb.la.me] [cooking] pot قابلمه
قاتا [ghā.tel] killer, murderer
قادر [ghā.der] capable; able
   [~ شو → [~ sho.dan] مثلان ~ [~
      to become capable (of doing);
      to manage (to do)
   دن \sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow \geq \sim [\sim kar.dan] to
      enable
قانع [ghā.ne'] contented; satisfied
   دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~] to
      persuade; to convince
,قوانين .[ghā.nun] law (pl قانون
      gha.vā.nin)
[ghā.yegh] boat قابق
```

[~ az] before (prep.) قبل از [~ az ān-ke] before (conj.) قبل از آنکه [ghab.lan] previously (adv.) قىلاً قىلى [ghab.li] former; previous; ex-[gha.bul] acceptance; consent [~ شبو → [~ sho.dan] (در/از) مثبو → [~ sho.dan] to be accepted (in); to pass (a test) دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~] to accept or admit قبو لاندن [gha.bu.lān.dan]  $[\rightarrow]$  قبو لاندن gha.bu.lān] to cause to accept; to convince [ghatl] murder قتل [ghat.l-e ām] massacre قتل عام [ghadd] (often a person's) height or stature پلند ~ [~ bo.land] tall (person) [neutral in usage] دراز  $\sim [\sim der\bar{a}z]$  tall (person) [not very flattering!] قدر [ghadr] amount; quantity; extent; value; worth [gha.dim] old (used with 'years/ times/ages') in the past در قدیم [gha.di.mi] old (for inanimates) قديمي قرار [gha.rār] arrangement; agreement; appointment ع دن ~ [~ bu.dan] [→ باش ~] to be supposed to دادن  $\sim [\sim d\bar{a}.dan]$  [ $\rightarrow \sim \sim$ ] to place, as قرارداد as to lay separate entry) داشتن  $\sim [\sim d\bar{a}sh.tan] \rightarrow clash$  داشتن  $\sim [\sim d\bar{a}sh.tan]$ lie, to be located; 2) to have an appointment

[ghabl] past, last (as in 'last week') قبل

```
[~ گذار →] [~ go.zāsh.tan ] ~ گذاشتن
      to make an arrangement or
      appointment
   o [~ ge.ref.tan] [→ گر فتن ~] to
      repose, to settle
[gha.rār.dad] contract قرار داد
ق بان [ghor.bān] sacrifice
قرباني [ghor.bā.ni] victim
ghors] pill قرص
قرض [gharz] debt (pl. قرض, gho.ruz)
   دادن \sim [\sim d\bar{a}.dan] \rightarrow \sim 1 to
      borrow: to take as loan
   c [~ ge.ref.tan] [→ گير ح] to
      borrow; to take as loan
[gher.mez] red قر مز
قرن [gharn] century (pl. قرون, gho.run)
قرض [gho.ruz] pl. of قروض
قرن [gho.run] pl. of قرون
[gha.sam] oath; pledge; swear
   (به) \sim [\sim khor.dan] \rightarrow \sim [\sim khor.dan]
      to swear; to take an oath
[gha.shang] pretty, beautiful] قشنگ
[ghasd] intention
   داشتن ~ [~ dāsh.tan] to intend;
      to have the intention to
[ghes.se] story; tale
[gha.tār] train قطار
[ghotb] pole قطب
[gha.lam] pen قُلُم
[ghom] Qom or Ghom (city in Iran) قم
قانون [gha.vā.nin] pl. of قو انس
[ghur.bā.ghe] frog; toad قور باغه
[ghu.ri] teapot قوري
[ghowl] promise] قو ل
   دادن \sim [\sim d\bar{a}.dan] [\rightarrow دادن \sim] to promise
قوم [ghowm] folk; ethnic group;
      relative (pl. اقوام, agh.vām)
```

```
[ghah.ve] coffee قهه ه
[ghah.ve.'i] brown قهو هاي
[ghi.vā.fe] features (mostly the
       face); appearance or looks
[ghi.mat/ghey.mat] price قىمت
کار [k\bar{a}r] 1) \rightarrow کاشتر; 2) work, job
   دن \sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow > \sim [\sim kar.dan] to
       work (intr.); 'to do' in questions
       (see چکار) with
کار پُر د [k\bar{a}r.bord] usage, function (gr.)
كار خانه [kā.r-e khā.ne] household
      (کارهای خانه .chores (pl
كار خانه [kār-khā.ne] factory (pl.
       (كارخانهها
ا کار د [kārd] knife
ا کار گر [kār-gar] worker; labourer
کار گر دان [kār-gar.dān] director (in
       cinema and theater) (see گر داندن)
[kār-gar.dā.ni] directing کار گر دانی
   دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~] to
       direct (in cinema and theater)
[kār-go.zi.ni] recruitment office کار گزینی
کاستر: [k\bar{a}s.tan] \rightarrow (k\bar{a}h) to decrease
كاشر/كاشكي [kāsh/kāsh.ki] 'if only' or
کار (k\bar{a}sh.tan] (\rightarrow کار k\bar{a}r) to plant
کاش see کاشکی [kāsh.ki] کاشکی
كاغذ [kā.ghaz] paper
[kā.far (originally kāfer)] کافر
       unbeliever; infidel; pagan (pl.
       (kof.fār كُفّار
كافي [kā.fi] enough; sufficient (adj.)
[kām-ra.vā] happy (in life) کامروا
کالسکه [kā.les.ke] carriage; coach
کامل [k\bar{a}.mel] perfect (gr.); complete
[kā.me.lan] completely کاملا
کاو بدن[k\bar{a}v] \rightarrow کاو
```

```
[kor.di] Kurdish کُر دی
کاو بدن [k\bar{a}.vi.dan] \rightarrow \{k\bar{a}v\} to
      excavate; to dig; to search (form.)
                                             [kas] person کس
کاستن \rightarrow [k\bar{a}h] کاه
                                                [ka.si] someone کسی
[kā.hesh] decrease
                                             [kas.re] the -e vowel (gr.); its
   دادن \sim [\sim d\bar{a}.dan] \rightarrow \sim 1 to
                                                   symbol
      decrease (tr.)
                                             \lambda کشیدن \lambda [kesh] کش
   ~ [~ yāf.tan/pey.dā مافتن /سدا کر دن
                                             \lambdaکشتن \lambda [kosh] کش
      kar.dan] [\rightarrow : اس / کر: \sim] to
                                             [kosh.tār] slaughter; butchery; کشتار
      decrease (intr.)
                                                   massacre
کاپ [ka.bāb] kabab or kebab,
                                             kosh.tan] [→ کُش (kosh) to kill کُشتن
      a grilled meat dish
                                             [kesh.ti] Ship کشتی
[keb.rit] matches کبریت
                                             [kesh-ma-kesh] struggle or
[ka.bu.tar] dove; pigeon
                                                   scuffle
[kot] jacket کت
                                             [ko.shan.de] fatal, lethal
کتاب [ke.tāb] book (pl. کتب , ko.tob –
                                             [ke.show] drawer
      not used in col.)
                                             [kesh.var] country کشو َ ر
ke.tāb-khā.ne] library كتابخانه
                                             کشدن [ke.shi.dan] [\rightarrow کشر, kesh] to
كتابخوان [ke.tāb-khān] a bookworm,
                                                   draw; to pull; to drag (causative:
      one who loves reading
                                                   (کشاندن
ke.tāb-fo.rush] book-seller کتابفر و ش
                                             [kafsh] shoe کفش
[ke.tāb-fo.ru.shi] کتابفر و شی
                                             کچل see کچل
      1) bookstore; 2) selling books
not used in col. کتاب الم [ko.tob] اکتب
                                             کلاس [ke.lās] class; classroom
[ko.tak] beating, thrashing
                                             ا کلاہ [ko.lāh] hat
   [ → خور دن ~ [~ khor.dan] → خور دن
                                             كلمات [ka.la.me] word (pl. كلمات,
      to be beaten or thrashed (intr.)
                                                   ka.la.māt)
   دن \sim [\sim za.dan] \rightarrow (3) to beat
                                             [kam] little; few
      or thrash (tr.)
                                             [ka.māl] perfection
[ka.sif] dirty کثیف
                                                در/با کمال [dar/b\bar{a} \sim -e] with utmost;
[kaj] slanted or crooked, not straight
                                                   at the height of; extremely
کجا [ko.j\bar{a}] where
                                             [kam.tar] less; fewer; less often
[kaj-ra.vi] deviation, aberration
                                             [ko.mak] help
[ka.chal/kal] baldhead کچا /کار
                                                [~ kar.dan (be)] کمک کر دن
[ko.dām] which?
                                                   [\rightarrow : \leq \sim] to help (sometimes
                                                   with direct object and no 4)
[ke.rā.ye] rent کر ایه
                                             [ká.mi] a little; a few
kord] Kurd کر د
                                             [kam.mi] quantitative
کر دن [kar.dan] \rightarrow (\xi, kon] to do;
                                             (kan] \rightarrow کندن (kan)
      to make
```

```
[ke.nā.r-e] beside, at the side of
      (prep.)
كندن [kan.dan] [\rightarrow ;\rightarrow , kan] to dig;
      to pull off
کو سدن or کو فتن \rightarrow [kub] کو ب
کو سدن [ku.bi.dan] [\rightarrow بىدن, kub] to
      pound or hammer, to mash
      (causative: کو باندن)
[ku.bi.de] kubideh (skewer of
      ground meat kebab)
[ku.bism] Cubism کو بیسم
[ku.tāh] short کو تاہ
[ku.chek] small کو چک
[ku.dak] child (form.) کو دک
ک د کانه [ku.da.kā.ne] childish, childlike
      (form.)
[ku.da.kes.tān] kindergarten کو دکستان
\lambda \in [kur] blind
[ku.shesh] وشش
   دن \sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow > < \sim [ to
      make an effort; to try
کو شیدن [ku.shi.dan] کو شیدن kush
      to try, to make an effort
کوفتن [kuf.tan] [\rightarrow کوفتن, kub] to
      pound, to hammer (lit.)
      (causative: کو باندن)
[kuf.te] kufta, kofta or köfte (ball
      of ground meat mixed with
      other ingredients)
[kuh] mountain کو ہ
```

~ az posh.t-e از پُشت کوه آمدن

behind the mountains')

[ke] that, which (used in noun

[ka.vir] desert کو پر

clauses)

 $\bar{a}.ma.dan$ ] [ $\rightarrow \tilde{1} \sim$ ] to be a churl

or simpleton (lit., 'to come from

```
(ke) who? (form./wrt.) (see (5, ki))
[koh.ne] worn out, used, old کهنه
       (inanimates)
[key] when?
[ki] who? (col.) کی
[kish] faith, religion کشر
[kif] bag کنف
ki.f-e pul] purse or wallet کنف بول
ki.lu] kilo کیلو
گاو [g\bar{a}v] cow
گاهي [g\bar{a}.hi] sometimes
گداختن [go.dākh.tan] [\rightarrow گداز \rightarrow , godāz]
       to melt (lit.)
گداختن[go.d\bar{a}z] \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}گداز
گذار[go.z\bar{a}r] \rightarrow گذار
گذار [go.z\bar{a}sh.tan] گذار [Jo.z\bar{a}sh.tan]
       to put; to leave behind; to let
گذشتن \rightarrow [go.zar] گذر
[go.za.rā] fleeting; transient گذرا
گذراندن (go.za.r\bar{a}n] \rightarrow گذران
گذران \rightarrow [go.za.rān.dan] (اندن گذران ران گذراندن
       go.za.r\bar{a}n] to spend (time)
گذشتن [go.zash.tan] [\rightarrow گذر و go.zar] to
       pass (causative: گذراندن)
[go.zash.te] past (adj.; n.; gr.) گذشته
گرو بدن or گرائندن ge.r\bar{a}] گرا
[ge.rā.mer] grammar گر امر
گران [ge.rān] expensive
[ge.rā.yesh] inclination گرایش
   y\bar{a}f.tan~(be)] [\rightarrow دار/یاب ~] to be
       inclined (to)
گرائيدن [ge.rā.'i.dan] [\rightarrow \lorگر ائيدن, ge.rā] to
       incline
[gor.be] گر به
گردیدن or گشتن or گردیدن
گر داندن[gar.d\bar{a}n] \rightarrow \mathbb{Z} دان
```

Persian-Enalish alossarv

```
[gar.dān.dan/gar] گر دانیدن
       d\bar{a}.ni.dan] [\rightarrow دان, gar.d\bar{a}n] to
                                                     کر دن \sim [\sim kar.dan] [\rightarrow ; < \sim] to cry,
       cause to turn; to manage and
                                                         to weep
       run an enterprise
                                                     کنان ~ [~ ko.nān] (while) crying
[gar.desh] a stroll; a leisurely گر دش
                                                      [~ گيہ → [~* ge.ref.tan] (→ گي دتن
                                                         to have to cry
   دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~] to
                                                  [gaz] \rightarrow گز يدن [ga.zi.dan]
                                                  \mathbb{Z}ار دن go.z\bar{a}r \exists ار
[gar.dun] firmament; heaven گر دو ن
                                                  گزار دن [go.zār.dan] [\rightarrow] گزار دن goz\bar{a}r to
گر دیدن [gar.di.dan] [\rightarrow گر دیدن, gard] to
                                                         perform; to carry out (form.)
       turn (= گشتن) (causative:
                                                  [go.zā.resh] report گزارش
       (گر داندن
                                                  گزیدن [ga.zi.dan] [\rightarrow , gaz] to bite;
[go.res.ne.gi] گر سنگی
                                                         to sting (form./lit.)
[go.res.ne] hungry گرسته
                                                  گزيدن [go.zi.dan] [\rightarrow يدن, go.zin] to
[ge.ref.tār] captive, occupied, گر فتار
                                                         choose, to select
       busy
                                                  \mathbb{Z} کا باز go.zin کا باز
   دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~] to
                                                  [go.zi.nesh] selection; choice گزينش
       catch or arrest, to entangle, to
                                                  گسستن [go.sas.tan] [\rightarrow گسستن, go.sal] to
       preoccupy
                                                         sever; to disconnect (lit.)
گر فتاری [ge.ref.t\bar{a}.ri] captivity,
                                                         (causative: گسلاندن)
       entanglement, trouble
                                                  گسیختن and گسستن [go.sal] گسل
گرفتن [ge.ref.tan] [\rightarrow گرفتن, gir] to take
                                                  [go.sikh.tan] [ \rightarrow ]گسیختر [go.sikh.tan]
       (≠ 'give')
                                                         to sever; to rupture (lit.)
[garm] warm گر م
                                                         (causative: گسلاندن)
   دن * ~ [~* bu.dan] [→ بو دن ~] to
                                                  \mathbb{Z}گشو دن \mathbb{Z} [go.shā] گشا
       feel warm
                                                  گشتن [gash.tan] [\rightarrow گ , gard] to turn;
گرویدن [ge.ra.vi.dan] [\rightarrow \mid \mathcal{S}, ge.r\bar{a}] to
                                                         to stroll
                                                      [don.bā.l-e . . . ~] دنبال . . . گشتن
ی [ge.reh] knot, tie (n.)
                                                         to search (for) (causative:
                                                         (گر داندن
گریستن \rightarrow [ge.ri] گری
                                                  گشو دن [go.shu.dan] [\rightarrow گشو دن , go.sh\bar{a}]
[ger.yān] crying, weeping گريان
                                                         to open (form.)
گريختن [go.rikh.tan] [\rightarrow گريختن, go.riz]
                                                  [gof.tār] saying; speech گفتار
       to flee (lit.) (causative:
       (گريزاندن
                                                  [gof.to.gu] conversation گفتگ
                                                         (گفتو گو originally)
\mathbb{Z}[go.riz] \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}گريز
                                                     دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~] to
گریستن [ge.ris.tan] [\rightarrow گریستن, ge.ri] to
                                                         talk (with/about: المرادر بارة)
       cry, to weep (lit.) (causative:
                                                  گفتر: [gof.tan] [\rightarrow گ, gu] to say (to = 4)
       (ger.yān.dan گریاندن
```

ger.ye] crying گ مه

```
[gu.shi] receiver (of a phone) گو شی
[gof.ta.ni] worth saying or گفتنی
       mentioning
                                                 ي ناگون [gu.nā.gun] diverse; different
above گفتگو gof.t-o-gu] see گفت و گو
                                                        (form.)
[gol] flower گار
                                                 [gu.ne] kind, type (form.); cheek
[gol.dān] vase گلدان
                                                 [gu.yan.de] announcer; speaker
                                                         or saver of sth.
[gol.zār] rose garden گلز ار
                                                 (که) گویی (که) [gu.'i (ke)] as if, as
[go.l-e sorkh] red rose گل سرخ
                                                         though (form.)
[gol.gun] rosy; rose-like] گلگو ن
                                                  [gij] giddy or dizzy; confused; silly گیج
[gom] lost گہ
                                                     سر * گیج رفتن [sar*\ gij\ raf.tan] سر [	o\ ] to feel dizzy or giddy
   شون [~ sho.dan] [\rightarrowو to be
                                                 \mathbb{Z} فتن \to [gir] گیر
   کن \sim [\sim kar.dan] کے کر دن \sim to
                                                 گبرا [gi.r\bar{a}] attractive; catching
      lose (sth.)
                                                 [gi.ran.de] receiver گبرنده
گمار دن/گماشتر: (go.m\bar{a}r] \rightarrow [go.m\bar{a}r] گمار
                                                 [lā.zem] necessary; intransitive (gr.)
[go.mār.dan/go.māsh.tan] گمار دن/گماشتن
      [\rightarrow] گمار, go.m\bar{a}r to appoint
                                                     to need داشتن ~ [~ dāsh.tan] [→ دار ~]
       (form.)
                                                 [lā.ghar] thin, slim
[ga.mān (form.: go.mān)] گمان
                                                 لاغر شدن [lā.ghar sho.dan] [\rightarrow شو \sim]
       assumption
                                                        to lose weight
   دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~] to
                                                 [lā.yegh] deserving; worthy; capable
       assume; to suppose; to guess
                                                     v [~ bu.dan] [→ باش ~] to
گنجیدن \rightarrow [gonj] گنج
                                                        deserve; to be worthy of
گنج (gon.ji.dan] [\rightarrow گنجيدن, gonj] to
                                                 \sqcup [lab] lip (pl. with both -hā and -ān)
      fit in; to be contained (causative:
                                                 لباس [le.bās] clothes (in general); dress
       (form.) (گنحاندن
                                                        (pl. السه, al.ba.se; only form.)
گندیدن \rightarrow [gand] گند
                                                     [~ -e she.nā] swimsuit
گند بدن [gan.di.dan] [\rightarrow گند بدن gand] to rot
                                                 [lab.khand] smile لىخند
گفتن \rightarrow [gu] گو
                                                     دن \sim [\sim za.dan] \rightarrow (3) to smile
گوار دن/گوار بدن[go.var] \rightarrow \mathbb{Z} گوار
                                                 [la.be] edge
/go.vār.dan] گواردن/گواريدن
      go.v\bar{a}.ri.dan] [\rightarrow گو ار go.v\bar{a}r]
                                                 لذت [lez.zat/laz.zat] enjoyment,
                                                        pleasure (pl. لذّات, laz.zāt)
       to digest
                                                     (از) بُر دن [\sim bor.dan~(az)] \rightarrow بُر دن (از) مُر دن (از) to enjoy ['get pleasure from']
[gus.fand] sheep گو سفند
[gush] ear گو ش
                                                 لرزيدن(larz) \rightarrow [larz] لرز
   (به) کر دن (سه ~ [~ kar.dan (be)]
                                                 [lar.zān] trembling لرزان
      [\rightarrow : \geq \sim] to listen to (used with
       direct or indirect object)
                                                 لرزيدن [lar.zi.dan] [\rightarrow] لرزيدن, larz] to
[gusht] meat گو شت
                                                         tremble (causative: لرزاندن)
```

```
[lo.zum] necessity لزوم
                                             مالدن (m\bar{a}l) \rightarrow مال
[lash.kar] army
                                             مال [m\bar{a}l] property, wealth (pl. مال,
                                                    am.vāl)
[lotf] benevolence لطف
                                                 مال [\sim -e] property of, belonging to
[lot.fan] please (adv., used with لطفاً
      imperative)
                                             m\bar{a}.l-e \ ki whose?
[la'l] ruby لعل
                                             مالي [mā.li] financial
لغ: بدن → [laghz] لغ:
                                              مالدن [m\bar{a}.li.dan] [\rightarrow مال مالدن, m\bar{a}l] to rub
                                                    (causative: مالاندن)
لغزيدن [lagh.zi.dan] [→ لغزيدن, laghz] to
                                             [ma'.mu.r-e po.lis] policeman مأمور يليس
      slip or slide (causative: لغزاندن)
لمىدن \rightarrow [lam] لم
                                             مان (m\bar{a}n] ماندن (also \rightarrow ماندن
لميدن [la.mi.dan] [\rightarrow لميدن, lam] to recline
                                             ماندن [m\bar{a}n.dan] [\rightarrow مان , m\bar{a}n] to stay,
                                                    to remain
[lan.dan] London لندن
lame [لنگىدن → النگالنگ
                                              [mān.da.ni] lasting ماندني
                                             (مان (be)] مانندن (سه m\bar{a}.nes.tan
[langān] limping لنگان
                                                    m\bar{a}n] to be similar to; to resemble
   (also لنگ لنگان [lang-langān] or
                                             [mā.nan.d-e] like; similar to (form.)
      (لنگان لنگان
                                             ماه [m\bar{a}h] month; moon
[lan.gi.dan] [→ لنگ الله, lang] to limp
                                             ماهانه [mā.hā.ne] monthly (also ماهانه
[lah.je] accent, dialect
                                                    mā.hi.yā.ne)
[li.yā.ghat] merit; worthiness;
                                             ماهر [mā.her] skilled
      capability
                                             [mā.hi] fish ماهي
   to [~ دار → [~ dāsh.tan] ما دار خار ~
      deserve; to be worthy of
                                             [mā.hi.gir] fisher
                                             [mo.bad.dal] changed
[li.vān] glass (for drinks); mug
                                             [mo.te. 'as.sef] sorry, regretful متأسّف
له [m\bar{a}] we
[mā.dar] mother
                                             [mo.te. 'as.se. fā.ne] regrettably, متأسفانه
                                                    unfortunately
مادر بزرگ [m\bar{a}.dar-bo.zorg]
      grandmother
                                             meter] متر
                                             [mo.te. 'ad.di] transitive (gr.)
امار [mār] snake
[māst] yoghurt ماست
                                             mo.te.fa.vet] different متفاوت
[mā.shin] car; machine
                                             [mo.te.vaj.jeh sho.dan] متو جّه شدن
                                                    lo notice شبو →
ماضي [m\bar{a}.zi] past (gr.)
                                             me.sāl] example مثال
   a -ye ba.'id] past perfect ماضي بعيد [~ -ye ba.'id]
      tense ('remote past')
                                             مثل [mes.l-e] like, similar to
   [~ -ye mot.lagh] simple ماضي مطلق
                                                 mes.l-e ham] alike; in the
      past tense ('absolute past')
                                                    sáme way
                                                 ادرست مثل (do.rost mes.l-e) exactly
   [~ -ye nagh.li] present ماضي نقلي
      perfect tense ('narrative past')
```

```
[mo.jāz] permissible; officially
     authorized
  دن \sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow \geq \sim [\sim kar.dan] to
     authorize [officially]; to legalize
[maj.bur] compelled; forced
  v [~ bu.dan] [→ باش ~] to be
     compelled to; to have to
   a [~ sho.dan] [→ شبو ~] to be
     compelled or forced
  [ - کن ح [~ kar.dan] [ → مجبور کر دن
     to force; to compel
مجلس [maj.les] parliament (pl. مجلس,
     ma.jā.les)
[maj.hul] passive (gr.);
     unknown
mo.hā.ve.re] conversation محاوره
[moh.ta.ram] respected; respectful
moh.ta.ra.mā.ne] respectfully محتر مانه
[mah.rum] deprived محروم
  (از) می دن (از) ~ [~ kar.dan (be)]
     [\rightarrow : \leq \sim] to deprive
ma.hal.le] neighborhood (pl.
      (ma.hal.lāt , محلات
[mo.ham.mad] prophet of Islam; محمّد
     boy's name
[mokh.ta.lef] different مختلف
[makh.su.san] especially] مخصو صأ
me.dad] pencil مداد
[me.dād ta.rāsh] مداد تراش
     pencil sharpener
مدرسه ma.dā.res] pl. of مدارس
[mo.dā.fe'] defending; defensive
[mod.dat] duration; period مذّت
mad.re.se] school (below a مدر سه
     college) (pl. مدارس, ma.dā.res)
مر تبه [ma.rā.teb] pl. of مراتب
[ma.rā.sem] ceremony مراسم
     (originally pl. of مرسوم, marsum)
```

```
مرتبه [mar.te.be/mar.ta.be] 'time' as
      counting word (pl. مراتب,
      ma.rā.teb)
mo.rakh.khas] released (for
      its usage in polite language see
      Appendix I)
[mard] man مَر د
[mar.dā.ne] manly, masculine, of
      men or men's
[mar.dom] people مر دم
مر دن [mor.dan] [\rightarrow] میر, mir] to die
مر دني [mor.da.ni] feeble, weak; about
مرده [mor.de] dead
ar.sum] custom or customary مرسوم
      (adj.) ( pl. مراسم , ma.rā.sem =
      ceremony)
غرغ [morgh] hen; chicken (as food);
mor.ghā.bi] duck مرغابي
مر کب [mo.rak.kab] complex (gr.);
      compound, multipart; ink
[marg] death مرگ
mo.rur] review] مرور
   دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~] to
مريض [ma.riz] sick (adj.); sick person,
      patient (n.)
مريم [mar.yam] Maryam (= Miriam,
      Mary)
مسئله [ma.sā.'el] pl. of مسائل
سعى [ma.sā.'i] pl. of سعى
[mo.sā.fe.rat] travel, journey (n.)
   [be ~ raf.tan] به مسافرت رفتن
      [\rightarrow 0, ~] to go on a trip
   (مه) کې دن (مه ~ [~ kar.dan (be)]
      [→ ; , ≤ ~] to travel (to)
```

[mar.but] related مربوط

[mos.tah.zar] aware; informed mesr] Egypt مصر (form., polite language) [mo.zā.re'] present tense (gr.) مضارع [mos.ta.ghim] direct, straight [mo.zā.'af] double مضاعف [mo.sal.mān] Muslim, Moslem [mo.tā.le.'e] studying; مطالعه مسه اک [mes. $v\bar{a}k$ ] toothbrush consideration; reading (pl. (mo.tā.le.'āt, مطالعات [mes.vāk za.dan] مسواک ز دن [mat.bu'] pleasant (an obsolete  $[\rightarrow \dot{\upsilon}; \sim]$  to brush (the teeth) meaning is 'printed matter') مسائل [mas. 'a.le] problem (pl. مسائل, mat.bu.'āt] the press (pl. of ma.sā.'el) ('mat.bu, مطبوع [mas. 'ul] responsible; in charge مطّلع [mot.ta.le'] well-informed; [mas'ulāne] responsible, مسئو لأنه knowledgeable; up-to-date responsibly (از) ما دن (از) ~ [~ bu.dan (az)] irresponsible, irresponsibly غير مسئولانه [→ ماشر ~] to know (about/of) دن  $\sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow > \sim [\sim kar.dan]$  to [mas. 'u.liy. yat] responsibility inform; to let know alike; similar (add مشايه [mo.shā.beh] [mot.ma.'en] sure, certain ezāfe for 'similar to') mo.'ā.del] equivalent [mo.shā.be.hat] similarity [mo.'ā.ser] contemporary معاصر شغل [ma.shā.ghel] pl. of مشاغل mo. 'ā.le.je] cure; treatment; مشهور [ma.shā.hir] pl. of مشاهير healing (pl. معالحات, mo. 'ā.le. jāt) [mash.rut] conditioned مشروط حردن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کن ~] to م به آنکه/بر آنکه ~ [~ be ān ke/bar ān cure; to treat; to heal kel on the condition that; معنى *[ma.'ā.ni] pl.* of معانى provided that عيب *[ma.'ā.yeb] pl.* of عيب مشكا [mosh.kel] difficult (adj.); ma'.dan-kār] miner, mine problem (n., pl. مشكلات, mosh.ke.lāt) ma.'a.zā.lek] nonetheless [mosh.kel-ā.fa.rin] مشكل آفرين معهذا  $[ma.'a.h\bar{a}.z\bar{a}]$  nonetheless problematic; creating problems aع, فه [ma'.re.fe] definite (gr.) [mash.had] Mashhad (city in mo. 'ar. re. fi] introducing معرّ في Iran) (په) کې دن (سه ~ [~ kar.dan (be)] مشاهیر [mash.hur] famous (pl. مشاهیر,  $[\rightarrow : \le \sim]$  to introduce (to) ma.shā.hir) [ma'.ruf] famous معروف [mo.sā.he.be] interview [ma'.shugh] beloved (masc.) معشوق [mas.dar] infinitive (gr.) [ma'.shu.ghe] mistress; beloved [mo.sad.degh] (Mohammad) مصدّق (fem.) Mosaddegh, PM of Iran (1951-53)[mo.'al.lem] teacher

```
[ma'.lum] obvious, clear, known معلو م
[ma'.mu.lan] usually معمو لأ
معنى [ma'.ni] meaning; also معنى
      [ma'.n\bar{a}] ( pl. معانی ma.'\bar{a}.ni )
[maf.'ul] object (gr.) مفعول
[maf.'u.li] objective (gr.) مفعو لي
a مغازه [ma.ghā.ze] shop, store
[mof.rad] singular (gr.) مُفرَد
[maf.'ul] object (gr.) مفعه ل
mo.fid] useful مفيد
[mo.ghā.be.l-e] in front of; opposite مقابل
مقدار ma.ghā.dir] pl. of مقادير
مقالات .[ma.ghā.le] article (pl. مقالات,
      ma.ghā.lāt)
[ma.ghām] status; position
   در مقام [dar \sim -e] as; in the position of
[mo.ghā.ye.se] comparison مقانسه
مقادیر .megh.dar] amount (pl مقادیر,
      ma.ghā.dir)
   megh.dā.ri] some amount of مقداري
[magh.sud] purpose; intention مقصو د
مک [mek or mak] \rightarrow مک
[me.ki.dan (form.: ma.-)] مكىدن
      [\rightarrow \&, mek or mak] to suck
گه [má.gar] unless; except that
      (conj.); except (prep.)
إلى [mol.la] mullah
[mo.lā.ghāt] visit; meeting
   (ال) کې دن (ال) ~ [~ kar.dan (bā)]
      [\rightarrow : \leq \sim] to visit; to meet
[melk] property ملک
[mel.ki] possessive ملکی
[mom.ken] possible; likely
[mam.nu'] forbidden ممنوع
   to forbid
```

```
[man] I (pr., 1sg.)
[mo.nā.seb] appropriate, suitable
[mon.ta.zer] waiting
   [~ -e] waiting for
[mon.jar sho.dan (be)] منجر شدن ربه
      [\rightarrow شبه \sim] to lead to; to result in
man.zur] purpose; aim
[man'] prohibition منع
   (از) من (از) ~ [~ kar.dan (az)]
      [\rightarrow : \leq \sim] to prohibit; to bar
مو رد ma.vā.red] pl. of مو ار د
mo.vā.zeb] watchful, alert
   v [~ bu.dan] [→ ماش ~] to be
      careful (intr.)
   [~ -e . . . bu.dan] مو اظت . . . بو دن
      [→ باش ~] to watch over, to
      look after; keep an eve on
mo.vā.fegh] in agreement; of
      one mind; in accord
[mo.vā.fe.ghat] agreement; مو افقت
   دن \sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow > \sim [\sim kar.dan] to
      agree; to consent
مو قع [ma.vā.ghe'] pl. of مو قع
mo.tor] engine; motor مو تو ر
[mow.jeb] causing, necessitating مو جب
   (-e) موجب شدن/موجب...شدن
      sho.dan] [\rightarrow شبو \sim] to cause
مورد [mow.red] case; instance (pl.
      ( د ma.vā.red مو ار د
   [dar ~ -e] about;
      concerning; in the case of
   مورد [\sim -e] object of; subjected to
   ... e ... مورد ... قرار گرفتن /واقع شدن
      gha.rār ge.ref.tan/vā.ghe' sho.dan]
      [\rightarrow] کیر /شو \sim] to undergo; to
      become the object of; to be
      subjected to
```

مه زه [mu.ze] museum نابود کر دن [ $n\bar{a}.bud\ kar.dan$ ] ( $\rightarrow کن \sim$ ] to annihilate, to destroy; to cause [mu.sā] Moses مو سی to become extinct or nonexistent [mu.si.ghi] music مو سبقى ناتو ان [nā.ta.vān] incapable mush] mouse موشر ناچار [nā.chār] inevitable; unavoidable mow.zu'] subject; issue; ناچيز [nā.chiz] insignificant, worthless matter; topic (pl. عات , الدان [nā-dān] ignorant; stupid mow.z.u.'āt) [nā.do.rost] incorrect نادر ست [mo.vaf.fagh] successful مو فُق ناراحت  $[n\bar{a}.r\bar{a}.hat]$  uncomfortable; c [~ sho.dan] [→ شدن ~] to upset; sad succeed; to manage to ناسالم [nā-sā.lem] unhealthy; harmful مواقع .[mow.ghe'] time (pl موقع), ma.vā.ghe' ناصر [nā.ser] Naser; boy's name ناقص [nā.ghes] incomplete; not whole; *be-mow.ghe'*] on time بمو قع /به مو قع deficient or defective mow.ghe.'i ke] when موقعي كه اگهان [nā.ga.hān] suddenly (conj.); also written joined: نالدن  $(n\bar{a}l)$  نال مو قعىكە نال ( $n\bar{a}.li.dan$ ] نالیدن ( $n\bar{a}.li.dan$ ) ito moan; [mow.la.vi] Rumi (poet, 1207–73) مو لو ي to lament مهر بان [meh.ra.bān] kind (adj.) نام [ $n\bar{a}m$ ] (نامیدن name (more meh.ra.bā.ni] kindness] مهر باني formal than اسم, esm) [mo.hemm] important [nā-ma'.lum] unclear, unknown نامعلو م [meh.mān] guest (see معلوم) meh.mā.ni] party] مهماني [nā-mom.ken] impossible (form.) [mi.yā.n-e] in the middle of; inside المه [nā.me] المه /mi-bāyad مى بايد/مى بايست/مى بايستى المهر سان [nā.me-re.sān] mailperson mi-bāyest/mi-bāyesti] [nā.meh.ra.bān] unkind نامهر بان  $\rightarrow$  باید نامیدن [ $n\bar{a}.mi.dan$ ]  $[\rightarrow$  نامیدن,  $n\bar{a}m$ ] to name nir] مبر مبر يختن [na.pokh.te] → يختن يسز [miz] table نتايج [na.tā.yej] pl. of نتايج [meyl] wish; inclination (for its نتيجه [na.ti.je] result (pl. نتايج, na.tā.yej) usage in polite language see در نتیجه [dar ~] as a result Appendix I) (ترس [na-tars] fearless (see ترس [mil.yon] million ميليو ن [ne.jāt] rescue نحات [mi.na] Mina (girl's name) مينا دادن ~ [<br/>  $\sim$  [<br/>  $\sim$  dā.dan] [<br/>  $\rightarrow$   $\sim$  ] to mi.ve] fruit ميوه rescue; to save [nā-o.mid] hopeless ناامىد / e [~ pey.dā kar.dan ميدا كر دن/يافتن ~ [~  $y\bar{a}f.tan$ ] [ $\rightarrow$  کن/یاب  $\sim$ ] to be [nā-o.mi.dā.ne] hopeless; hopelessly rescued

```
[no.jum] astrology (originally
      pl. of the Arabic نجم [najm],
نحس [na.jib] noble; gentle; honest
[no.khost] first (1st) نخست
[no.khos.tin] first (1st) نخستين
ino.khod] chickpea نخو د
ina.kheyr] no (polite) نخبر
lue.dā] call
ندائي [ne.dā.'i] vocative (gr.) (also
      (ندایی written)
[naz.dik] near (adj.) نَز دیک
   [~ -e] near (prep.) نَز دىک
   [ - باش → [~ bu.dan ke] م بو دن که
      to be about to
   c [~ sho.dan] [→ شدن ~] to
      approach, to come near
[nes.ba.tan] relatively
[nos.khe] copy; manuscript;
      a doctor's prescription
imic(ne.shan) \rightarrow imic(ne.shan)
[ne.shān dā.dan (be)] نشان دادن (به)
      [\rightarrow c \sim ] to show (sth. to so.)
نشان \rightarrow [ne.shān.dan] نشاندن, ne.shān]
      to cause to sit
ine.shā.ne] sign نشانه
[ne.shast] session
[ne.shas.tan] [→ نشين, ne.shin] نشستن
      to sit (causative: نشاندن)
نشين ( ne.shin ) نشين
نصيحت [na.sā.yeh] pl. of نصايح
[nesf] half نصف
نصایح [na.si.hat] advice (pl. نصیحت,
      na.sā.yeh)
   دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~] to
      advise (with direct object or
      with اله
```

```
نظر ات .[na.zar] view, opinion (pl. نظر
      na.za.rāt)
   ~ be] به نظر آمدن/به نظر رسيدن
      \bar{a}.ma.dan/re.si.dan \rightarrow \sqrt{|} \sim ]
      to look, to appear, to seem
   [dar na.zar dāsh.tan] در نظر داشتن
      [\rightarrow] دار \sim to be set to; to have it
      in mind: to intend
   tah.t-e ~] under surveillance تحت نظر
   [mow.re.d-e ~] intended
   [ez.hā.r-e ~ kar.dan] اظهار نظر کردن
      [\rightarrow : \  \  \sim] to express one's view
[na.far] person (only as counting
      word) ( pl. نفر ات, na.fa.rāt)
[nef.rat] hatred نفرت
   (از) ما داشتن (از) ~ [~ dāsh.tan (az)]
      [\rightarrow] دار \sim to hate
نفر تانگيز [nef.rat-an.giz] hateful;
      revolting
ina.fas] breath نفس
   [ - کش ~ [~ ke.shi.dan] [ → کشیدن
      to breathe
[na-fahm] stupid,
      uncomprehending (see فهم)
نفي [nafy; y here is a consonant]
      negation
نقا [naghl] conveying; transfer;
      narrating; quotation
[naghl-e ghowl] indirect (or
      reported) speech (gr.); citation,
      quotation
[nok.te] point (as 'a point made');
      epigram (pl. نكات, no.kāt/ne.kāt)
\sim 5 [na.ka.re] indefinite (gr.)
i > [ne.kuh] \rightarrow iنکو هندن
[ne.ku.hesh] blame; reproach
   c [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~] to
      blame; to reproach
```

```
نکو هیدن [ne.ku.hi.dan] (نکو هیدن,
                                              [na.vad] ninety نو د
      ne.kuh] to blame; to reproach
                                              [nuz.dah] nineteen نوز ده
      (form.)
                                              نو شیدن \rightarrow [nush] نو ش
نگار (ne.gār) نگار
                                              نو شتن [ne.vesh.tan] [\rightarrow نو شتن, nevis]
نگاشتن [ne.gāsh.tan] (خگار \rightarrow نگاشتن, ne.gār]
      to paint; to write (lit.)
                                              [nu.shi.dan] [→ نو شيدن, nush] نو شيدن
انگاه [ne.gāh] look; gaze
                                                     to drink
   دن ~ [~ kar.dan] [→ کر دن ~] to
                                              [nu.shi.da.ni] نو شىدنى
                                              [na.ve] grandchild نوه
   [→ کر دن به ~ [~ kar.dan be] (→ کر دن به
                                              نو شتن → [ne.vis] نو يس
      to look at
                                              ine.vi.san.de] writer نو سنده
نگ ان [ne.ga.rān] worried, concerned,
                                              (9) نه [noh] nine نه
                                              [na] no
   v [~ bu.dan] [→ بودن ~] to
                                              ... من ... من [na ... na . . .] neither . . . nor . . .
ine.ga.ris.tan [\rightarrow ,\ddot{z}, ne.gar] نگریستن
                                              نهادن \rightarrow [nah] نه
                                              نهادن [na.hā.dan] [\rightarrow i, nah] to lay;
[~ دار → [ne.gah dāsh.tan] نگه داشتن ~]
                                                     to put (form.)
      to keep (+ mi- in pres. and
                                              [nahāyat] end; extremity نهایت
      progressive tenses)
                                                 [dar/bā ~ -e] with
[no.m\bar{a}] \rightarrow نما
                                                     utmost; at the height of
نماش [na.mā.yesh/no.-] a play;
                                              [noh.sad] nine hundred نهصد
      showing or presenting
                                              [na.hof.tan] [only past tense; lit.]
   دادن \sim [\sim d\bar{a}.dan] [\rightarrow \sim \sim] to show;
                                                     to hide
      to present
                                              [na.hof.te] hidden (lit.)
[na.mā.yan.de/no.-] نماينده
                                              ني [ney] reed; traditional Iranian flute
      representative
                                              نتت [niy.yat] desire; objective
[nom.re] grade (at school);
                                              [ni.ru] power نير و
      number
                                              [ni.ru.mand] powerful نير و مند
نمو دن [no.mu.dan] [\rightarrow نما دن, no.m\bar{a}] to
                                              نيز [niz] also (form.)
      show; to appear; used also as a
      weak substitute for کر دن in wrt.
                                              دن (دن [nish za.dan] (→ نیش (دن ~) to
                                                     sting or bite (used for insects or
      (not recommended)
                                                     snakes)
i [now] new] نو
                                              [nik] good (form.)
   ن نا [az now] anew; again
                                              [nim] half (used especially for
نو از [na.v\bar{a}z] \rightarrow [i]
                                                     half-hours)
نو از \rightarrow [na.vākh.tan] نو اختن na.vaz
                                              [ni.ma] Nima; boy's name
      to play an instrument; to strike
                                              [nim.kat] bench
      (form.)
```

```
[ni.me] half
[ni.yo.york] New York نبو بو ر ک
[va/-o] and
[vā.pa.sin] last (adj.; lit.) وايسين
وارد شدن [v\bar{a}.red\ sho.dan] وارد شدن \sim]
      to enter
[vā.ghe'] real; reality (seldom
      used alone; واقعى and واقعي
      are more common)
   ~ در ~ [dar ~] in fact; as a matter of fact
   اثر ہے دن ~ [~ bu.dan] (→ بو دن ~] to be
      located (form.)
   c [~ sho.dan] [→ شبو ~] to
      happen; to be subjected to (form.)
[vā.ghe.'an] really واقعا
[vā.ghe'-ge.rā] realist واقعگرا
[vā.ghe'-ge.rā.'i] realism واقعگر ائي
[vā.ghe.'i] real واقعى
[vā.ghe.'iy.yat] reality واقعتت
      (pl. و اقعتات, vā.ghe.'iy.yāt)
[vā.le.deyn] parents والدين
vo.jud] existence و جو د
   یا و جو د [b\bar{a} \sim -e] in spite of
و حه [vajh] mode (gr.)
[vah.shi] wild; barbarous و حشي
[vah.shi.yā.ne] savagely; وحشبانه
      brutally; wildly
evarz] \rightarrow evarz ورزيدن
yar.zesh] sport, exercise ورزش
   دن \sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow > < \sim [ to
      exercise [sports] (intr.)
ورزیدن [var.zi.dan] [\rightarrow] ورزیدن, varz] to
      exercise; to cherish (form.)
[vo.rud] arrival ورود
[va.sā.'el/va.sā.yel] pl. of وسائل /وسايل
```

```
إوسيله [va.si.le] means; instrument
      ( pl. وسائل , va.sā. 'el, or وسائل , و
      va.sā.vel)
   [~ -ye nagh.liv.ye] means
      of transport; vehicle
وضع [vaz'] situation (pl. اوضاع, ow.zā')
[va.tan] homeland
va.tan-fo.rush] traitor [to] وطن في و ش
      one's country]
(ww.ghāt) وقت [vaght] time (pl. وقت, ow.ghāt)
(که) [vagh.ti (ke)] when (conj.);
      also written joined: وقتكه
و کیل [vo.ka.l\bar{a}] pl. of و کلا
[va.kil] lawyer, attorney; deputy
      (pl. ≥ 9, vo.ka.lā)
   e maj.les] member وکیل مجلس
      of parliament
   [~ mo.dā.fe'] lawyer, و كيل مدافع
      defending attorney
[va gar ná] otherwise, if not so
[va.li] but (conj.) ولي
[vi.rā.yesh] editing ويرايش
   دن \sim [\sim kar.dan] \rightarrow > \sim [\sim kar.dan] to edit
[~ گير → [vi.zā ge.ref.tan] ويزا گرفتن ~]
      to get a visa
[hār.vārd] Harvard هار و ار د
هاى و هو [hā.y-o-hu] fuss; hubbub;
      ranting; ado
[ho.tel] hotel هتا
[hej.dah] eighteen
هدف [ha.daf] goal; target; objective;
      cause (pl. اهداف, ah.d\bar{a}f)
هدایا [ha.d\bar{a}.y\bar{a}] هدایا
هدل [hed.ye] gift, present (pl. هدله,
      ha.dā.yā)
[har] every
fear [هـ اسيدن → [ha.rās] هـ اس
هر اسيدن [ha.rā.si.dan] [\rightarrow] هر اسيدن, ha.rās]
      to fear (causative: هر اساندن)
```

[har che.ghadr] however much هر چقدر [ham-di.gar] each other [har-che] whatever; however much اهمراه ا [ham.rāh bā] together with [har.che bā.dā bād] هر چه بادا باد! همسان [ham.sān] alike; similar Come what may! Whatever will (form./lit.) be, will be! [ham.sā.ye] neighbor as soon as [~ zud.tar] هر چه زو د تر [ham.sar] spouse; wife or possible husband [polite language] [har do] both هر دو همکار [ham.kār] colleague; co-worker إهر روز [har ruz] everyday همكلاسي [ham-ke.lā.si] classmate [har ghadr] however much هر قدر [ha.me.gān] everybody (poet.) [har.gez] never (form.) هر گز همه [ha.me] all; everybody هزار [he.z $\bar{a}r$ ] thousand [ha.me jā] everywhere [he.zā.rān] thousands of [ha.me chiz] everything همه چيز [hasht] eight (8) هشت [ha.me kas] everyone همه کس [hash.tād] eighty هشتاد [ha.mi.she] always [hasht.sad] eight hundred هشتصد [ha.min] this same [haft] seven (7) هفت [~ ke] as soon as [haf.tād] seventy هفتاد [ha.min towr] in the [haft.sad] seven hundred هفتصد same way; also [haf.te] week as; while [~ ke] همنظور که [hef.dah] seventeen هفاده [ha.min.ja] right here ham] too; also هم [ha.min-ke] as soon as [ham . . . هـم . . . ] هند [hend] India (also هند, both ... and ... hendustān) همان [ha.mān] the same; that same [hen.de.vā.ne] watermelon هندوانه [ha.mān.jā] right there هند  $(hendust\bar{a}n] \rightarrow$ هند [ha.mān towr] in the [hen.di] Indian هندي same way [ho.nar] art; craft; skill [~ ke] as; while همانطور که [ho.nar-pi.she] actor or actress همانند [ha.mā.nand] alike; the same (form./lit.) [hen.gām/han.gām] time (lit.) هنگام همانند [ $\sim -e$ ] like; similar to [hen.gā.mi/han.gā.mi ke] هنگامی که (lit.) when (conj.); also written [ham.che.nān] still (lit.) همچنان هنگامیکه :joined as; while [~ ke] همچنان که [ha.nuz] still [adv.]; yet (in neg.) هنو ز (form.) [ham.che.nin] also (form.) [ha.vā] weather; air ن (lit.) همچو ن [ham-chon] similar to, like [ha.vā-pey.mā] airplane

```
[hush] intelligence هو ش
   باهوش [b\bar{a}- \sim] intelligent
[hich] none; nothing; at all
[hich-chiz] nothing هيچ چيز
هيچ جا [hich-j\bar{a}] nowhere
[hich-ko.jā] nowhere هيچ کجا
| hich-ko.dām | none (of ميحكدام
      neither (of)
هيچكس [hich-kas] no one, nobody
[hich-gāh] never (form./lit.) هيچگاه
hich-gu.ne] not of any sort/at
      all (form./lit.)
[hich-vaght] never
[hich-yek] none (of)/neither (of) هيچيک
\cup [v\bar{a}] or (conj.)
... \cup ... \cup [y\bar{a} ... y\bar{a} ...] either ... or ...
اباء نسبت [yā.'e nes.bat] attributive 'ج'
      or stressed -i suffix
یافتی \rightarrow [y\bar{a}b] یاب
الد [vād] memory
   [be yād mān.da.ni] به یاد ماندنی
      memorable
(به) اد* آمدن [(be) yād* ā.ma.dan]
      [\rightarrow \tilde{1} \sim] to occur to, to come to
      mind, to remember
[be yād ā.var.dan] (به) یاد اَوردن
      [\rightarrow] to remember, to
      bring (back) to mind
   [yād-ā.var sho.dan] یادآور شدن
      a to mention رُسُو →
[(be) yā.d-e...of.tā.dan] (به) ياد...افتادن
      [\rightarrow] to be reminded (of)
   (به) ياد* افتادن [(be) yād* of.tā.dan]
      [\rightarrow] to occur to, to come
      to mind
```

```
an.d\bar{a}kh.tan [\rightarrow انداز \sim] to
      remind (of)
(به ) [(be) yād* bu.dan] (به ) ياد* بو دن
      [→ باش ~] to remember
(به) یاد دادن [y\bar{a}d\ d\bar{a}.dan\ (be)] یاد دادن \sim
      to teach (sth. to so.)
(از) یاد رفتن [az yād raf.tan] (خ و برفتن) [az yād raf.tan] (از) یاد رفتن
      to be forgotten
   to forget [~] (از) یاد* رفتن
   [az yād na-raf.ta.ni] از یاد نرفتنی
      unforgettable
[be yād se.por.dan] (به) یاد سیر دن
      [\rightarrow سیر /سیار \sim] to commit to
[yād kar.dan (az)] یاد کر دن (از)
      [\rightarrow : \leq \sim] to mention
[yād ge.ref.tan (az)] یاد گرفتن (از)
      [\rightarrow] to learn (sth. from
ا از ده [yāz.dah] eleven
يات [y\bar{a}f.tan] يافتن [y\bar{a}b] to find
يخ [yakh] ice
يخچال [yakh.chāl] refrigerator, fridge
يعني [ya'.ni] meaning; it means; i.e.
\sim [yek] one (1)
   [ye.ki] someone; one
   [ye.ki az] one of
[yek-di.gar] one another;
      each other
[yek.sān] alike; similar (form.)
[yek-sham.be] Sunday کشنه
```

(به) ياد ... انداختن [(be) yā.d-e

## **INDEX**

[Numbers in square brackets refer to the volume Basic Persian]

```
adjectives [22]; abstractions with -i suffix
                                                conditionals [172-5]; 53-7; poetical/archaic
     [73]; as nouns [92]; before nouns 121;
                                                     178 - 9
     see also entries for demonstrative,
                                                conjunctions [187–8]; and subjunctive [154];
     comparative, superlative, -āne
                                                     48–9; in time clauses [192–9]; 132–5;
adjectival clauses 47
                                                     correlative conjunctions 126-7;
adverbs 111-14; with -āne 101-2
                                                     in subordinate clauses 128-36;
age [97-8]; 32-3
                                                     see also va, tā and ke
alphabet [1-14]; shapes [1-2]; vowels and
                                                connector ezāfe (see ezāfe)
     diphthongs [2-4]; consonants [4-9];
                                                consonants [4-9]
     all letters [5-7]; the four letters with
                                                contractions 181
     different functions [alef, vāv, hé, yé]
                                                count words (or measure words) [30-2];
                                                     134 (t\bar{a})
-āne with adjectives 101; with adverbs
     101 - 2
                                                days of the week [97]
archaic/old 181-2
                                                DDO \rightarrow r\bar{a}
arz kardan 167-8
                                                definite [66-8]; DDO-marker [DDO =
  arz vs. arze 168
                                                     definite direct object] [80–1, 207];
as . . . as . . . 118–19
                                                     25-8; not used with objective
as if 56
                                                     pronouns 18; definite and
as soon as 134
                                                     indefinite determiners used
attributive -i suffix [73–4]
                                                     together [81]
                                                demonstrative adjectives [32-3]
be- prefix: for imperative [104-9]; for
                                                demonstrative pronouns [32–3]
     subjunctive [149-53]
                                                difference 158-9
                                                digar 141-4
causative form of verbs 61-2
                                                   digari as pronoun 143
change 157-8
                                                   ham-digar/yek-digar 144
che (exclamative and in idioms) 109-11
                                                diphthongs [3]
cherā (پچر ا): as question word [93];
                                                direct and indirect objects [80]
                                                distributives [98-100]
     affirmative answer to negative
                                                double negative [98–100]
     question [49]
clothes (putting on, taking off) 80 (see state
                                                -e as definite marker in Tehrāni 173
     verbs also)
colloquial → Tehrāni
                                                -e/-i with quantifiers 32-3
common mistakes, examples 185-6
                                                enough to ... 48
comparative [89-91]; 116-18; with tā 117
                                                exclamative form 109-10
comparison of adjectives [89-91]; equal
                                                ezāfe: connecting nouns and adjectives
     comparison 118-20
                                                     [22-3]; with ordinal numbers [29-30];
compound verbs [81-3]; with dashtan ('to
                                                     possessive [38, 40, 41]; with khod
     have') [83] (also treated separately
                                                     15–7; with superlative 118;
```

dropped 121

with each tense); separability 86-7

Index

farmudan 166–7  Fārs/Fārsi 187  forget → remember  future (see tenses and moods)	numbers [26–30]; cardinal [26–8]; ordinal [29–30]; 32; with nouns [28]; fractions [29–30]; 32; as pronouns [30–2]
iditale (see tenses and moods)	old/archaic 181–2
gharār 156–7	optative 62–3
glide: for <i>plān</i> [21]; for <i>ezāfe</i> [22–3];	optutive 62 3
for the suffixed to be $[44-6]$ ;	participial formations 92-101
for present tense [56–7]; for past	passive [214–18]; 87–9
tense (neg.) [130]; for imperative	past and present stems (see <i>tenses and</i>
[105–6]; for subjunctive [150–1]	moods)
glottal stop [10–1]	past participle [138]; as verb 63–4
giottal stop [10-1]	past perfect tense (see <i>tenses and</i>
ham 144-6; in Tehrāni 171	moods)
hamin-ke [197–8]; 134	past progressive tense (see <i>tenses and</i>
hamze [10–1]; and [silent] hé [11]	moods)
hanuz 133; 141	perfect tenses (see tenses and moods)
$h\acute{e}$ (a) as final vowel (see <i>silent hé</i> )	personal pronouns [37]; as possessive adjective [38]
$-i$ ( $\zeta$ )-suffix: used as conjugational suffix	plural
[43, 45–6, 48, 56–7, 129–30; see Table	for politeness 164–5
on p. 129]; used as indefinite	with -ān [20–1]
determiner [69-72]; 24-9; in relative	with -hā [20-1]; 170 (in Tehrāni)
clauses [205–6]; attributive suffix	in compound nouns 29-30
(stressed) [73–4]; difference in stress	broken plural 30–1
[73–4]	possessive adjectives [38–40];
imperative (see tenses and moods)	possessive suffixes [38–40];
negative with ma- (archaic) 179	comparison of the two possessive
impersonals 69–73	types [40, 47]; in relative
indefinite and indefinite determiners	clauses [207–8]
[66–73]; 24–9; definite and indefinite	possessive pronouns
determiners used together [81]; 27–8	ān-e 181 (lit.)
indirect speech 1–8	māl-e [41–2]
infinitive [114–17]	prefixes and suffixes 101–5; see also
interrogative [42]; affirmative and negative	participal formations
answers to questions [49] intransitive [79]	prepositions [183–6]; in relative clauses [207–8]; in Tehrāni 176–7
Iran/Irāni 187	present perfect and present perfect
Tranvirani 107	progressive (see <i>tenses and</i>
ke (ک): in relative clauses [204–8]; as	moods)
emphasizing particle 54; replacing	present progressive (see <i>tenses and</i>
in time clauses [193–9];	moods)
noun clauses (اینکه vs. اینکه) 136;	present tense (see tenses and moods;
used to make آنکه and اینکه	see also to be and to have)
conjunctions [187–8]	pronouns [37]; objective pronouns 18-20;
conjunctions [107–0]	in Tehrāni 169, 172
magar 54-5	
meaning and to mean 160	quantifiers [98–100]; 113–15
modals 37-42	question words [92–4]
negative [42]; double negative	$r\bar{a}$ (1), the DDO-marker [DDO = definite
[98–100]; of compound verbs [82] (see	direct object] [80-1, 207]; 25-8; not
also the verbs to be and to have and	used with objective pronouns 18; in
each of the tenses)	Tehrāni 171; archaic 180
no and yes [49]	relative clauses [204–8]
nouns [19]; plural of [19–22]; in its	remember/forget 151-5
absolute form [66-8] (see also	reported speech → indirect speech
definite/indefinite)	resemblance 104-5, 120-1

In	
ın	

'self' 14-7	present perfect [139-42]; in indirect
silent hé [3, 8, 11, 12]; and plural suffixes	speech 2–3
[20–1]; and $ez\bar{a}fe$ [23]; and possessive	present perfect progressive [142]
suffixes [39]; and the verb to be	present progressive with dāshtan [58–60]
(copula) [45]; as suffix with quantities	subjunctive (simple or present) [149–58];
and time expressions 32–3; as Arabic	42–9
feminine ending [19]	subjunctive (perfect or past) [163-5]
simple past tense (see <i>tenses and moods</i> )	table of all tenses [166, 216]
simple present tense (see tenses and	tenses in indirect speech 1–8
moods)	tenses in time clauses [192–5, 197–8]
sokun (or jazm) [14]	wishes [175–7]
state verbs → verbs	time and age: telling the time [94–6]; times
subject-verb agreement [43]	of day [96–7]; days of week [97]; age
subjunctive (see tenses and moods)	[97–8]
subordinate clauses	time clauses [192–9]
of contrast/concession 129–30	to be (نو دن): present tense [43–7];
of purpose/cause/effect 128–9	differences of the two present tense
of result/consequence 130–1	versions [46–7]; imperative form
substitutes for to be, to do (not	[108]; subjunctive form [153]; other
recommended) 184	variants (not recommended) 184
suffixes and prefixes 101-5; see also	to be able to 81
participial formations	to have (داشتن): present tense [47–9]; used
superlative [90–1]; with ezāfe 118	as auxiliary for progressive [58–60]; in
1)	compound verbs [83]; imperative form
$t\bar{a}$ ( $\Box$ ): as count word [30–1]; as preposition	[108–9]; subjunctive form [153, 164–5]
[184]; as conjunction [199]; review of	to know 81–2
all functions 134–5	too to 47
ta'ārof 164–8	to take 186
tanvin [13]	to want 79, 81
tashdid [13]	to wear 80
Tehrāni (colloquial) 169–77	transitive and intransitive [79]
tenses and moods:	r j
conditionals [172–5]; 56–7	va ( ) (conj.) [28]
future tense [121–4]	va-gar-na (otherwise) 56
imperative [104–10]; 5	verbs in Persian [42–3]; person and number
modals 37–42	agreement in verbs [42–3, 47]; state
optative 62–3	verbs [140–2], 78–80; position 77;
past (simple) [129–31]; 79–82; in indirect	verbs that need subjunctive 42-6;
speech 2–3	deleting a verb 64–5; causative form
past perfect [142–3]; in indirect speech	61-2; change from irregular to regular
2–3	65; changes in Tehrāni 174–6; see also
past progressive [131–3]; 79–82; in	the entry for tenses and moods
indirect speech 2–3	vocative 34
past progressive with dāshtan [133]; in	vowels [2–4]
indirect speech 2–3	
present [55–8]; of to be [43–7];	wishes [175–7]
of to have [47–9]; of compound	-
verbs [81–3]	$y\bar{a}d \rightarrow \text{remember/forget}$
present and past stems [55, 105, 115–16]	'ves' and 'no' [49]